P[illegible]2.9
F7D28
1804
v.2

THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

GIFT OF

Mrs. Domenico Saudino

NATURE DISPLAYED.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/naturedisplayedi02dufirich

NATURE DISPLAYED,

IN HER MODE

OF

TEACHING LANGUAGE TO MAN;

OR,

Thos. O. Taylor

A NEW AND INFALLIBLE METHOD

OF

ACQUIRING A LANGUAGE IN THE SHORTEST TIME POSSIBLE,
DEDUCED FROM THE ANALYSIS OF THE HUMAN MIND,
AND
CONSEQUENTLY SUITED TO EVERY CAPACITY.

ADAPTED TO THE FRENCH.

BY N. G. DUFIEF,
OF PHILADELPHIA.

Languages were not made by rules or art, but by accident, and the common use of the people. LOCKE.

Il y a eu des poëtes & des orateurs, avant qu' on imaginât de faire des grammaires, des poëtiques & des rhétoriques. CONDILLAC.

On ne peut apprendre la grammaire d' une langue quelconque, même celle de son pays, que quand on sait parler, que quand on sait causer. SICARD.

VOL. II.

CONTAINING

THE PHILOSOPHY OF LANGUAGE, AND SYNTAX MADE EASY.

PHILADELPHIA:
PRINTED BY THOMAS S. MANNING,
FOR THE AUTHOR, NO. 47, NORTH THIRD STREET.
……………
1804.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

SECTION THE FIRST.

PHILOSOPHY OF LANGUAGE.

Conversations.		PAGE.
I.	Of Words.	1
	Sounds of the Vowels.	6
	—— of the Diphthongs.	8
	—— of the Consonants.	9
II.	Of the Noun.	11
	Notes on the Noun.	20
III.	Of the Adjective and Abstract Noun.	25
	Note on the Adjective.	35
IV.	Of the Article.	38
	Note on the Article.	45
V.	Of other Articles.	47
VI.	Of Pronouns.	54
	Note on the Origin of Pronouns.	64
VII.	Of Nouns, generally received as Pronouns.	65
VIII.	Of the Verb.	67
	Necessity and Origin of the Verb.	72
	Formation of the *Elliptical* or *Adjective* Verbs.	74
IX.	Of Moods and Tenses.	76
	Conjugation of the *Auxiliary* Verb *Avoir*, to have.	82
	——— of the *Abstract* and *Auxiliary* Verb *Etre*, to be.	108
	EIGHT REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.	
	1st. In *er* exemplified in *Porter*, to carry.	117
	Conjugation of the *Reflective* Verbs, exemplified in *S' habiller*, to dress one's self.	120
	A List of Verbs reflective in French, and not in English.	133
	Conjugation of the Verb *Aller*, to go.	134
	——— of *Geler*, to freeze.	138

Conversations. PAGE.

IX. 2d. In *ir*, exemplified in *Punir*, to punish. . . . 140
3d. In *tir*, *vir*, or *mir*, exemplified in *Sentir*, to feel. 144
Verbs Conjugated like *Sentir*. 147
4th. In *enir*, exemplified in *Tenir*, to hold. . . 148
Verbs Conjugated like *Tenir*. 151
5th. In *evoir*, exemplified in *Recevoir*, to receive. . 152
Verbs Conjugated like *Recevoir*. 156
Conjugation of the *Irregular* Verb *Falloir*, to be necessary. 156
6th. In *re*, exemplified in *Vendre*, to sell. . . 158
Verbs Conjugated like *Vendre*. 161
7th. In *Uire*, exemplified in *Traduire*, to translate. 163
Verbs Conjugated like *Traduire*. 166
8th. In *Indre*, exemplified in *Craindre*, to fear. . 167

EIGHT CLASSES OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

1st. As *Offrir*, to offer. 172
Verbs Conjugated like *Offrir*. . . . . *ib.*
2d. As *Courir*, to run. 173
Verbs Conjugated like *Courir*. 174
3d. As *Connaître*, to know. . . . . . *ib.*
Verbs Conjugated like *Connaître*. . . . 175
4th. As *Mettre* to put. 176
Verbs Conjugated like *Mettre*. . . . . *ib.*
5th. As *Prendre*, to take. 177
Verbs Conjugated like *Prendre*. 178
6th. As *Faire*, to do, or to make. . . . *ib.*
Verbs Conjugated like *Faire*. 179
7th. As *Ecrire*, to write. 180
Verbs Conjugated like *Ecrire*. . . . . *ib.*
8th. As *Dire*, to say, or to tell. 181
Verbs Conjugated like *Dire*. 182
Irregular Verbs that could not be classed. . . *ib.*
A Table of the Terminations of every French Verb. 190

X. Final Remarks on the French Conjugation. . . 191

XI. Of Prepositions. 195
An Alphabetical Table of Relations, commonly expressed by Prepositions. 201

XII. Of the Adverb. 208

XIII. Of the Conjunction. 215

XIV. Of *Elliptical* and *Combined* Conjunctions. . . 221
Combined Conjunctions governing the *Indicative*, exemplified. 224
Combined Conjunctions governing the Subjunctive. 227

XV. Of the Interjection. 229

SECTION THE SECOND.

Instructions.

I. Of Syntax. 233

II. Of the Article. 235
A Table of French Verbs, immediately followed by Nouns, (which are their Complement), without being connected with them, by an Article or Preposition. 254

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Instructions. PAGE.
III. Of the Noun. 267
A Table of Nouns, whose gender varies according to their number, acceptation, &c. 280
IV. Of the Adjective and Numbers. 291
V. Of the Possessive Articles. 304
VI. Of the Demonstrative Article, &c. 310
VII. Of the Conjunctive Elliptical words *Qui*, *que*, &c. 318
VIII. Of the Elliptical terms *Qui*, *Lequel*, &c. 326
IX. Of the Active Pronouns. 331
X. Of the Passive Pronouns. 337
A Table showing the union of Pronouns and Verbs, in their *affirmative*, *interrogative*, or *negative* sense. 342
XI. Of the Disjunctive Pronouns. 343
XII. Of the use of the Pronouns *leur*, *lui*, *eux*, *elle*, *elles*, *se*, *lui-même*, *soi*. 348
XIII. Of some Difficulties in the French language. 352
XIV. On the use of the tenses and their correspondence with each other. Indicative mood. 362
XV. On the Subjunctive. Of Adjectives, Nouns, and Verbs, which impose the Subjunctive form on the next Verb. 368
XVI. On the Complement of Verbs. 377
XVII. On the Infinitive. 382
XVIII. Remarks on Complements. 391
XIX. On the Participle *present*. 394
XX. On the Declinability or Indeclinability of the *past* Participle. 397
XXI. On the proper choice of the *Auxiliary*. 408
XXII. On the Preposition. 415
XXIII. On the Adverb. 422

SECTION I.

PHILOSOPHY OF LANGUAGE.

CONVERSATION I.

OF WORDS.

NATURE BEGINS......REASON COMPLETES.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT are words ?

MASTER.

The signs of our ideas and thoughts ; that is to say they serve to represent our ideas and thoughts.

SCHOLAR.

What do you call an idea ?

MASTER.

The image or representation of an object or quality in the mind.

SCHOLAR.

How are objects represented in the mind ?

MASTER.

By the *Sensations* or *Impressions* † they make on any of the five Senses, or Organs which the wise disposer of all things bestowed on man, to enable him to come to the knowledge of external objects. Those *Sensations* kept up and present to the recollection, are ideas ; we connect

---

† In familiar language the words *Impressions* and *Sensations* are often used as synonymous terms ; but in Metaphysics, the language of which should be that of precision itself, they are far from being so : the first of these referring to *Matter* and the latter to *Spirit*. Their difference may be seen in the following Table, which also contains explanations of other terms often used.

IMPRESSION.	Is any change in the human body by the action of some external object on the organs of sense.

them with words without which, *ideas, alternately rising and vanishing on the mind, would leave no more vestige on the brain than the transient waves of a flood leave on the eye.*

SCHOLAR.

What difference is there between an idea and a thought?

MASTER.

The following: an idea is merely, as we have said, the representation or image of an *object*, as that expressed by *house*, *garden*, &c.

A thought is an idea considered under certain relations, as *a large house*, *a beautiful garden*.

SCHOLAR.

What are words composed of?

SENSATION	Is an *impression* received, felt and known by the Soul through the medium of some of the senses.
An IDEA	Is the *consciousness* of an *impression* felt or past kept up by recollection.
ATTENTION	Is the exclusive *consideration* of an object or idea.
COMPARISON	Is the *consideration* of two ideas or things in order to discover their relations to each other.
JUDGMENT	Is that faculty of the mind whereby the *agreement* or *disagreement*, the *suitableness* or *unsuitableness* of things, or ideas is perceived after the *consideration* thereof.
A PROPOSITION	Is the *manifestation* of our judgment of that *agreement* or *disagreement*, *suitableness* or *unsuitableness*, expressed by *signs* appropriate to some of the five senses.
REFLECTION	Is an operation of the mind whereby *attention* is given to the different parts of on object, in order to obtain an accurate knowledge of it, or to various things or ideas, in order to compare and judge of them successively; and as *attention* is thus *reflected* from one object, or from one idea to another, that operation has been properly denominated *Reflection*.
REASONING	Is an operation of the mind whereby it discovers a judgment contained or hidden in another it had previously made.
REASON	Results or springs from the operations we have just noticed, judiciously directed or combined. No man can be said to possess this faculty in the highest degree. The Philosophers that seem to have approached the nearest to that perfection, are *Hippocrates, Archimedes, Newton, Locke, Montesquieu, Condillac and Euler.*

MASTER.

Of *sounds* in *Speech* and of *letters* which are *written characters* when they represent those *sounds* to the eye.

The useful art of representing Speech in written characters is called *writing*, the invention of which is ascribed to *Cadmus* and celebrated by *Brébeuf* in the following beautiful lines.

> " C'est de lui que nous vient cet art ingénieux,
> " De peindre la parole & de parler aux yeux ;
> " Et par les traits divers de figures tracées,
> " Donner de la couleur & du corps aux pensées."

The following version will not, I imagine, be unacceptable to the English reader.

> " From him this art descriptive took its rise,
> " Of holding converse with the wond'ring eyes ;
> " The various figures, by his pencil wrought,
> " Gave colour and a body to the thought."

SCHOLAR.

How many kinds of sounds are there ?

MASTER.

Two : *inarticulate* and *articulate ;* the former are so called from their formation by the voice, unassisted by the *tongue* or *lips ;* the latter are formed by the voice, modified by the *lips*, *teeth*, *throat*, *tongue*, *palate* or *nose*. The first are also called *vowels*, the second *consonants*.

SCHOLAR.

What are the letters called which represent the *inarticulate* sounds ?

MASTER.

Vocal letters, or simply, vowels ; there are five of them, viz. *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*.

SCHOLAR.

What are those termed, which describe the *articulate ?*

MASTER.

Consonants, and make eighteen in number, viz. *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *x*, *z*. They are called consonants from the Latin words *cum*, with, and *sonare*, to sound, to signify the necessity of their junction with the vowels, to express those sounds, which, alone they could not. If you add to the foregoing letters the consonant *h* to denote aspiration, and the letter *y*, which generally describes the sound already represented by *I*, and sometimes by *I I*, pronounced as rapidly succeeding each other, all the above letters, twenty-five in number, compose our French Alphabet, in which, as you may observe, the W has not been found necessary.

SCHOLAR.

What general name do you give the various sounds which constitute a word?

MASTER.

Syllables, which, like the Vowels or Consonants, are expressed or written.

SCHOLAR.

Of how many letters is a written Syllable composed?

MASTER.

Sometimes of a single letter only, which must be Vowel; and sometimes of several, one of which must also be a Vowel.

SCHOLAR.

Are there no more than five *Vowels?*

MASTER.

No: but there should be many more, as these five letters could not represent all the sounds, which the voice, not modified by any motion of the Organ of Speech, may utter by the simple emission of the breath. To obviate this difficulty, we have recourse to various means to express different sounds, without resorting to additional letters or characters, which would swell our Alphabet.

First; we use three Marks, called Accents, placed over the Vowels, to render their sounds more or less forcible: they are described thus; *acute* ´, *grave*, ` and *circumflex* ^. Their application is exemplified in the following words, *â*, p*â*te; *é*, unit*é*; *è*, proc*è*s; *ê*, temp*ê*te; *ô*, c*ô*te; *î*, g*î*te; *û*, fl*û*te.

Secondly; we combine several Vowels, and term their combination a compound Vowel; in French they are *ten* in number; as *ea*, il mang*ea*; *ai*, j'*ai*; *eai*, je mang*eai*; *au*, *étau*; *eau*, chap*eau*; *eu*, heureux; *œu*, v*œu*; *eo*, geolier; *œ*, *œ*sophage; *ou*, *ou*vrier. I must observe here, *as imperfection is common to every language*, an imperfection in the French Orthography; which is, that all the above compound Vowels, except the last, describe no different sounds from those before represented by the five simple Vowels with or without accents.

Thirdly; to express the simple sounds passing through the nose, *m* or *n* is subjoined to the Vowels, whether *simple* or *compound*, and this subjunction is termed in the singular a *Nasal*, and in the plural *Nasals;* viz. *am*, Ad*am;* *an*, enf*ant;* *aen*, C*aen;* *ean*, veng*ean*ce; *em*, *em*placement; *en*, *en*semble; *aim*, f*aim;* *ain*, p*ain;* *ein*, dess*ein;* *im*, *im*possible; *in*, enf*in*; *om*, s*om*bre; *on*, c*on*f*on*du; *eon*, mang*eons*; *eun*, j*eun;* *um*, h*um*ble; *un*, trib*un*. The same imperfection in the mode of representing Vowels by compound Vowels is also observable here.

SCHOLAR.

What do you call a Diphthong?

MASTER.

The distinct sound of two Vowels, the first of which is nearly lost in the second: this double sound though expressed by several Vowels, like the *compound*, is essentially different. In French there are nineteen: to wit; six simple, as *ia*, in d*ia*mant; *ié*, in pit*ié;* *io*, f*io*le; *oe*, m*oe*lle; *oi*, m*oi;* *ui*, n*ui*t: seven compound, as *iai*, je conf*iai;* *iau*, m*iau*lement; *ieu*, ad*ieu;* *iou*, ch*iou*rme; *oua*, r*oua*ge; *ouai*, je j*ouai;* *oui*, enf*oui;* and six nasals, as *ian*, v*ian*de; *ien*, b*ien;* *ion*, ambit*ion;* *oin*, s*oin;* *ouin*, mars*ouin;* *uin*, j*uin*.

The above will give you an idea of the mechanical plan adopted in the written language to fix the fugitive sounds of the voice. I might indeed have dwelt a great while on the subject, and have written almost a folio on the numberless *irregularities* of French pronunciation, complicated with rules, the greater part of which, you could never retain.

Instead of incumbering your mind with unnecessary matter, I will lead you to the proper French pronunciation by the simple and easy method mentioned in my preliminary discourse, and which *Nature* daily displays to us. And in order to promote that object, you will find annexed to this Conversation three comprehensive Tables, in which the pronunciation of the Vowels, Diphthongs and Consonants is exemplified in familiar easy words which you will pronounce daily after your Master, in the same manner with those of the *Practical* part, till you become familiar with them. You will not proceed to the second Table, till you have a full command of the first, to obtain which, I hope, will not require more than three attentive readings.

TABLE I.

SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

Open A.

EXAMPLES.

A. Le p*a*ge *a* c*a*ché m*a* c*a*ge. L*a* masc*a*r*a*de *a* fait t*a*p*a*ge.

Broad or circumflex *â* is pronounced broad.

â. Je vous bl*â*me de m*â*cher du pl*â*tre. Le p*â*tre est au p*â*turage.

Slender or acute *é* is pronounced by keeping the teeth almost close. So are sounded *er*, *ez*, *ai*, in the final syllables of Verbs—*oit* in the third person singular of the Present anterior of the Indicative and the conditional Present of Verbs spelt after the *old* Orthography.

E. Je pr*é*f*è*re l'*été* le th*é* au caf*é*. Il a bien mérité de la société.
er. Il faut aim*er*, chant*er*, dans*er*, jou*er*, & bien s'amus*er*.
ez. Vous aim*ez*, chant*ez*, dans*ez*, jou*ez*, & vous vous amus*ez*.
ai. J'aimer*ai*, je chanter*ai*, danser*ai*, jouer*ai*, & m'amuser*ai*.
oit. Il dis*oit* & assur*oit* qu'il lir*oit*, causer*oit*, chanter*oit* & danser*oit*.

Open or grave *è*.—This vowel is pronounced strongly and by opening the mouth widely; in the same manner are pronounced *ai* and *ei* in the first and middle syllables of words—*et* in final syllables of words—*e* not accented but followed by two consonants or a final *c*, *f*, *l*, *r*, which must be strongly pronounced.

E. J'admirais le bon caract*è*re du p*è*re, de la m*è*re & du fr*è*re.
ai. Vr*ai*ment, j'*ai*me à pl*ai*re. Le sal*aire* d'une v*ai*ne gramm*aire*.
ei. La v*ei*ne est pl*ei*ne. Il demeure à l'ens*ei*gne du p*ei*gne.
et. Il m*et* le bid*et* du cad*et* dans le bosqu*et*.
ett. ess. &c. Sa belle dentelle est sur sa toil*ette*. Plus de sag*esse* and moins de prou*esse*.
Final. ec. ef. el. er. Ce ch*ef* Grec maudit du ciel est en enf*er*.

Broad or circumflex *ê*:—This Vowel is pronounced still more openly than the *è*: one must therefore lay a stress upon it and prolong the sound thereof. *Ai*, *aie*, *ais*, *aix*, and *ois*, *oient* in the Present anterior of the Indicative and the conditional Present of Verbs spelt after the old Orthography, as well as *ets*, *aits*, *es*, are pronounced in the same manner.

E. La temp*ê*te emp*ê*cha la conqu*ê*te. Cette f*ê*te est bien b*ê*te. Elle n'a point de t*ê*te.
aî. aie. N*aî*tre sans m*aî*tre. Je suis *ai*se que sa pl*aie* soit guérie.
ais, aix. Je ne v*ais* jam*ais* au Pal*ais* sans désirer la paix.
ois. *oient*. J'étudi*ois* & je lis*ois* pendant qu'ils ri*oient* & s'amus*oient*.
ets. aits. Mes proj*ets* m'ont donné bien des regr*ets*. Ces portr*aits* sont imparf*aits*.
ès. Ses exc*ès* & ses acc*ès* de fureur ont nui à ses progr*ès*.

The Guttural *e* at the end of monosyllables and in the composition of words.

This vowel is so called because it is pronounced from the throat; the finals *eu, œu, eus, eû, œux,* *euse* are pronounced nearly alike, though much graver, especially the three last.

E. *Je me le* représentais tout autr*e*ment qu*e* c*e* qu*e* vous dites.
eu. œu. Ce j*eu*ne homme obtiendra p*eu* à p*eu* le v*œu* du p*eu*ple.
œux. eû. eux. J'ai fait des v*œux* pour *eux* pendant les d*eux* jours de j*eû*ne.
eus, euse. Elle a les yeux bl*eus*. Elle est hont*euse* & peur*euse*.

Silent *e*. It gives a full sound to a final consonant which otherwise would almost be silent, and the syllable which precedes it becomes long.

E. Un vase plein & une bouteille pleine. Le médecin ordonna une médecine.

Slender *i*.

I. L'*i*dée de l'ind*i*v*isi*b*i*l*i*té est r*i*d*i*cule. L'inf*ini*té de l'étern*i*té.

The Broad, or circumflex *î*. This vowel is pronounced by drawing the teeth close. It has, if I may be allowed the expression, the sound of a whistle.

I. On nous apporte à d*î*né dans ce g*î*te. Nous le v*î*mes & lui d*î*mes.

The open *o* and *au* at the beginning and end of polysyllables are sounded alike.

o. au. Les Polonais sont économes. Son table*au* représente un cote*au*.

Broad *ô*.— *os*, *ots*, *aux* at the end of words and *au* in monosyllables are sounded alike. It is to be observed that the letter *s* or *x* when added to substantives or adjectives to denote the plural, serve besides *in general*, to make the preceding syllables long.

ô. Les Ap*ô*tres donnaient l'aum*ô*ne. Mon bouquet d'anemones & le v*ô*tre.
os. ots. Nous étions d*os*-à-d*os*. A prop*os* où sont les p*ots* d'abric*ots*?
aux, au. Deux be*aux* chev*aux*. La p*eau* d'un b*eau* v*eau* & un s*eau* d'*eau*.

open *u*.

u. Elle a perd*u* son *u*s*u*fruit. Le merc*u*re fait de belles c*u*res.

Broad *û*.

û. Les m*û*res ne sont pas m*û*res. Je br*û*le, tu br*û*les, il br*û*le, &c.

ou.

ou. Il v*ou*s faut beauc*oup* de c*ou*rage p*ou*r s*ou*tenir son c*ou*p d'œil.

NASAL SOUNDS.

un and um.

on, um. Chac*un* est je*un*. C'est *un* import*un*. *Un* parf*um* exquis.

on and om.

on, om. On rac*on*te que s*on* ball*on* est t*om*bé c*on*tre la p*om*pe.

in im, ein, ain, aim, are sounded alike:

in. C'est un mal*in* coqu*in*. J'ai compté qu*in*ze d*in*dons.
im, ein. L'*im*pôt du t*imbre*. Le ser*ein* tombe sur son s*ein*.
ain, aim. Dem*ain* nous aurons du p*ain*. La f*aim* chasse le d*aim* du bois.

an, am, en, em, ent, aon.

an. Le Sult*an* en par*lant* au Div*an* comme un tyr*an* fit maudire son r*ang*.
am, en, em. L'*Am*bassadeur était dans sa ch*am*bre. Nous partirons *en*s*em*ble au print*ems*.
ent, aon. Il fait souv*ent* grand v*ent*. Le p*aon* & le f*aon* jouent dans la cour.

N. B. 1. When after *m* or *n* follows an *e* mute in the same syllable, or another *m* or *n* with a vowel in the following syllable, the sound ceases to be nasal: Ex.

Parfum, parfumer. Importun, importuner. Coquin, coquiner. Don, donne. Vain, vaine.

2dly. *ent* is silent in the third person plural of Verbs, but the preceding consonant has a very full sound. Ex. Ils march*ent*, elles vienn*ent*, &c.

Y, by itself, at the beginning of words, and between two consonants sounds exactly like *i*; it is generally used to point out the Etymology of words derived from the Greek.

y. Assis à l'ombre d'une *y*euse il *y* jouait de la lyre. Il est h*y*dropique. La ch*y*mie & la Métaph*y*sique.

y, Between two vowels sounds *ii*.

y. Emplo*y*ez un cito*y*en ami de son pa*y*s & le pa*y*ez généreusement.

TABLE II.

SOUNDS OF THE DIPTHONGS.

	Formed from the Vowels.	*Examples.*
iou,	i *and* ou;	La ch*iou*rme rama vers Coll*iou*re.
iu,	i —— u;	Les Confuc*ius* & les Fab*ius*.
ieu,	i —— eu;	Ad*ieu*, mons*ieur* le r*ieur*.
ieux,	i —— eû;	C'est un v*ieux* luxur*ieux*.
iai, ié,	i —— é;	Je me conf*iai* à son amit*ié*.
iè, iait,	i —— è;	Ma n*iè*ce est v*ie*ille; il étud*iait*.
iaient, iais,	i —— ê;	Ils se f*iaient* à ce n*iais*, & je m'en déf*iais*.
ia,	i —— a open;	Un d*ia*dême orné de d*ia*mans.
ia, ias,	i —— a broad;	Au d*iable* ton galimat*ias*.
ian,	i —— an;	Ce négoc*iant* est trop conf*iant*.
ion,	i —— on;	Ses pass*ions* le font rugir comme un l*ion*.
in, *always in verbs, and in some nouns.*	i —— ain;	Ce l*ien* ne t*ien*t à r*ien*.
ien, *in nouns,*	i and ain; and i —— an;	Le maint*ien* d'un cl*ient*; le sout*ien* d'un pat*ient*.

	Formed from the Vowels.	*Examples.*
oueu,	ou and eu ;	C'est un grand *joueur.*
oueux,	ou ——eû ;	Des chemins b*oueux.*
oui,	ou ——i ;	L*oui*se est ébl*oui*ssante ; il est réj*ouis*sant.
oué,	ou ——é ;	Vous êtes très enr*oué;* il est tr*oué.*
ouet, ouait,	ou ——è ;	J*ouet,* souh*ait,* il l*ouait.*
oi, oit, oè,	ou ——è ;	Ma *foi,* il cr*oit* que c'est de la m*oe*lle
ouaient, ouais, ouets,	ou ——ê ;	Ils l*ouaient,* je l*ouais,* des j*ouets.*
ois, oient,	o ——é ;	Que les r*ois* s*oient* justes.
ouas, ouât,	ou ——â ;	Tu j*ouas* afin qu'il j*ouât.*
oua,	ou ——a open ;	Ce r*oua*ge va très-mal.
ouon,	ou ——on ;	Nous j*ouons,* nous l*ouons.*
ouin,	ou ——in ;	Il fait son joujou d'un bab*ouin.*
oin,	o ——in ;	Je vis dans mon c*oin* sans s*oin* ni bes*oin.*
ouan, ouen,	ou ——an ;	Il vit en j*ouan*t la ville de R*ouen.*

	Formed from the Vowels.	*Examples.*
ueu,	u and eu ;	A la l*ueu*r des étoiles.
ueux,	u ——eû ;	Son front respect*ueux.*
ui,	u ——i ;	Donnez-lui un bisc*uit.*
ué,	u ——é ;	Cette n*ué*e a rem*ué* vers le sud.
uait, uet,	u ——è ;	Il rem*uait ;* un langage m*uet.*
uais, uaient, uets,	u——è ;	Je le sal*uais ;* ils t*uaient ;* des bl*uets,*
ua,	u——a open ;	Il contin*ua* d'observer le n*ua*ge.
uas,	u——â broad ;	Tu contin*uas ;* tu substit*uas.*
uon,	u——on ;	Nous nous sal*uons ;* nous contin*uons.*
uin,	u——in ;	Les liqueurs s*uin*tent en J*uin.*
uant,	u——an ;	Il a l'air d'un chat-h*uant.*

TABLE III.

SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

	like	
B has two sounds ; the first	*b.*	Voilà un *b*eau *b*ouquet qui sent *b*ien *b*on
Sometimes it has almost the sound of *be* in French. One must however avoid laying much stress upon the *e.*		Une o*b*servation a*b*straite. Il o*b*tint un pouvoir a*b*solu.
C has three sounds ; before *a, o, u,*	*k,*	On mit le curieux au cachot pour le récompenser de son caquet.
Before *e, i,* or with *ç,*	*s,*	*C*ette cire est au citron. Une leçon de Français.
In a few words, nearly	*g,*	Secondement ou en second lieu, un lieu secret, une bécasse & trois bécassines.

N. B. In the following words it is not pronounced: *Almanach, lacs* (de soie) *marc* (d'or ou d'argent).

CH has two sounds;	*sh*,	On *ch*argea de *ch*aînes le *ch*evalier de *Ch*irac.
In some words;	*k*,	L'é*ch*o de la voix des Bac*ch*antes retentissait; une notion ar*ch*étype.
D has the sound of before a vowel or an *h* mute.	*t*,	Il répon*d* en furibon*d* à ce gran*d* homme.
F has generally the sound of	*v*,	Il a employé neuf hommes pendant neuf ans.
before a vowel or an *h* mute.		Un esprit vindicatif & jaloux.
G keeps its natural sound before *a, o, u.*	*g*,	Que *g*agne *G*uillaume à faire le *g*oguenard?
Before *e, i,* is sounded like	*j*,	Ce *g*énéral est une vraie *g*irouette.
Final in some words before a vowel, like	*k*,	Il sue san*g* & eau. C'est un lon*g* îlot.
Gn is generally liquid,	*gnia, gnio,*	Les vi*gn*obles de la Champa*gn*e & de la Bourgo*gn*e.
Sometimes not liquid,	*gna, gno,*	Voilà des eaux sta*gn*antes. Il étudie la *gn*omonique.
H is sometimes pronounced		Ce *h*ousard se croit un *h*éros avec sa *h*allebarde. Il se *h*âta *h*ardiment de gravir la *h*auteur.
On other occasions it is not pronounced.		Cet *h*omme sans *h*onneur est fils d'une *h*éroïne.
K is sounded before *a*,	*c*,	Le *K*an des Tartares; les al*k*alis sont très en vogue.
Before the other vowels,	*qu*,	Le *K*ermis ne guérira pas son *k*yste.
L has two sounds; liquid,	*glia, glio,*	Ce Solei*l* bri*ll*ant me blesse l'œi*l*,
Not liquid,	*le, la, lo,*	*L*a Pucel*le* d'Orleans éga*la*it Achi*lle* en va*le*ur.
It is not pronounced in the following words.		Bari*l*, cheni*l*, couti*l*, feni*l*, fusi*l*, gri*l*, outi*l*, sourci*l*, genti*l*, (joli).
M has three sounds; the 1st, natural,	*m*,	*M*enez-*m*oi chez *m*a *m*ère.
2d, nasal,	*n*,	Je sais son no*m* & son surno*m*.
3d, like	*me*,	Se*m*, Jerusale*m*, Seli*m*, Ephrai*m*,
N has three sounds; the 1st nasal,		Ce vaurie*n* est bien mali*n*.
2d open,		L'e*nn*emi est a*n*éanti.
3d like *aine*,		L'amour & l'Hyme*n*; il dit ame*n* à tout.
P has but one sound;	*p*,	*P*auvre *p*etit *p*laideur *p*rend *p*atience.

Q has three sounds ; 1st, like and the *u* following is mute.	*k*,	Il a reçu le *q*uatorze en *q*uantité du *q*uin*q*uina de bonne *q*ualité.
2d. The *u* is pronounced, and has the sound of	*cou*,	C'est un *qu*adrupède a*qu*atique. Il a écrit un in-*qu*arto sur la *qu*adrature du cercle.
3d. In some words, like	*cu*,	Il a été mis à-*qu*ia ; le *qu*intuple de vingt.
R, 1st, keeps its natural sound, as in		Il a *r*eçu *r*écemment le *r*este de la *r*ecette.
2d. Is sonorous in		Mettez dans cette cuill*er* de f*er* quelques gouttes d'am*er*.
3d. Is strongly pronounced in final syllables in	*eur*,	L'err*eur* de ce procur*eur* guérit le taill*eur* & ce vol*eur* de fourniss*eur* de l*eur* terr*eur*.
4th. Is mute in the Infinitive of verbs, when followed by a *consonant*.		Je vais demand*er* permission d'aller la trouv*er* demain.
5th. Is on the contrary sounded in the Infinitives of verbs when followed by a *vowel*.		Il faut lui parl*er* avant de cherch*er* un domestique.
6th. Is mute in familiar discourse, in *tre*, before a consonant.		Vo*tre* père a un au*tre* projet.
S has two sounds ; 1st,	*s*,	*S*usanne *s*oyez *s*age & *s*achez *s*ouffrir.
Generally between two vowels,	*z*,	Ro*s*ette a perdu son fu*s*eau en allant à l'égli*s*e.
T has two sounds ; 1st. its natural sound,	*t*,	Le *t*onnerre *t*'a fait *t*ourner la *t*ête.
It is pronounced like *s*,		
In substantives in *tion*,		L'ambi*tion* de cette na*tion* cause sa destruc*tion*.
— proper names in *tien*,	*s*,	Le Ti*tien* & Dioclé*ti*en étaient de grands hommes.
— adjectives in *tial*, *tiel*, *tieux*, *tient*, and their derivatives.		Il est essen*tiel* d'être impar*tial*. Les ambi*tieux* sont rarement pa*tients*.
V has but one sound ;	*v*,	*V*iendrez-vous me *v*oir *v*endredi ?
X has four sounds ; 1st, like	*ks*,	Les coiffeuses ta*x*ent le beau se*x*e.
2d,	*gs*,	L'e*x*aminateur e*x*aspéré e*x*ige un e*x*emple.
3d, as *ss* in hiss,		De Cadi*x* je me rendis à Bru*x*elles en soi*x*ante heures.
4th, before a *vowel* or an *h* mute	*z*,	J'ai mangé deu*x* œufs & si*x* huîtres.
Z has besides its natural sound, as,		Malgré son *z*èle, il est entre le *z*iste & le *z*este.
The sound of *s* in final syllables,	*s*,	Je vais à Met*z* & puis à Rhode*z*.

SCHOLAR.

How many kinds of words do you distinguish?

MASTER.

Nine: viz. The *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Article* or *determining word*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, so called by way of eminence, *Preposition*, *Adverb*, *Conjunction* and *Interjection*, which are adequate to the full expression of all our ideas, thoughts, and sensations, and will become the subject of the following conversations.

CONVERSATION II.

OF THE NOUN.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT do you mean by the word termed by Grammarians a Noun?

MASTER.

A word which presents to the mind the idea of any object, being, or thing whatever: such is its magnetic power over the human mind, that the instant it is expressed, we are in a great degree feelingly alive to the perception of the object, as if it stood before us.

SCHOLAR.

How many kinds of Nouns are there?

MASTER.

Three. First; The *Proper*, which relates to an individual person or thing, as *Bonaparte*, *Nelson*, *Paris*, *Philadelphia.* Second; The *Common*, relative to a class, more or less numerous, of similar persons or things, as Animal, *animal;* man, *homme;* philosopher, *philosophe;* house, *maison;* room, *chambre;* and Third, The *Abstract* Noun, which represents a quality or an abstraction, as if it were an existing object, though it only exists in the mind, as Courage, *courage;* patriotism, *patriotisme;* love, *amour*, birth, *naissance;* time, *tems;* eternity, *éternité;* reward; *récompense.*

SCHOLAR.

Can you trace those Nouns to their original source?

MASTER.

I will endeavour to do so. In the dawn of Society, when the family of mankind was but small, man strongly felt the necessity of living in a state of union, as well to shield himself from the attack of the ferocious animal that roamed for prey through the wilderness, as to assist by social intercourse, in procuring the necessaries of life, and providing against the cravings of hunger and other imperious wants. He, therefore, had recourse to every means in his power, to form the *social compact*, by an interchange of kind offices and communications, upon which his safety and *well-being* so much depended. Endowed with flexible arms, it was natural that he should exercise them in order to point out such objects as he was desirous of obtaining, expressing, at the same time, by the various attitudes of the body, and quick intelligence communicable by the eye, the degree of his wants and the ideas conceived of those objects. Experience, however, ere long, made him sensible how inadequate the language of the eye only was to the complete expression of his sentiments and ideas, which would be more forcibly experienced in the hour of danger, when enveloped in the gloom of night. A substitute now anxiously sought after, for signs made invisible by the profound darkness of night, was readily discovered in the power of speech, that wonderful gift conferred by the Creator on man!

Alive to the feelings of pain and pleasure, man had observed that cries never failed to succeed certain sensations: these, frequently repeated, became associated expressions and *vocal* signs of such sensations (1); and when he wanted to give an account of the sufferings witnessed in his fellow-creature, he had only to imitate the cries of the sufferer, and, by making certain gestures necessary to unfold circumstances relative thereto, he was instantly understood.

Having proceeded thus far in his observations, in order to give names to those visible objects which were the most interesting to him, he was led by Nature, that had assisted him in his cries, to the expression of the *most* lively sensations. The organ of speech, rendered flexible by constant and repeated exercise (2), supplied him with a sufficient variety of articulate sounds, which, connected into words, were always equal to the expression of his wants; and different sounds were of course imposed to signify different objects (3).

The habit of giving names to visible objects becoming familiar to mankind, a name was bestowed on whatever was useful to be known or worthy to be remembered ; but in the course of this *distribution*, they discovered a great similarity between some objects. For instance ; having called an object connected with the earth by a number of small parts extending into it, uniting into a common trunk, and from thence ascending and variously ramifying, *Tree*, (which was, at first, meant to express a solitary and particular object) and observing many others exactly corresponding to this description, (so natural is it for man to generalize) (4), he soon gave the same name to all those large vegetables consisting of branches growing from a common trunk, which was termed a noun *common* of *kind*. Not confined to certain appearances common to all trees, on account of their special properties, it became necessary to arrange them into distinct classes. Hence proceeds the noun *common* of *species*, such as *Apple*-tree, *Pear*-tree, &c. (5)

The narrow province of the human memory, the boundaries fixed by an Almighty hand to the human understanding, will not permit us to retain a proper name for every object, nor is it material we should ; thus, our incapacity, not to mention the inutility of distinguishing by a different name what in the nature of things may be considered a mere shade of difference, has necessarily introduced into language nouns *common* both of *kind* and *species*.

The names that have invariably remained *proper*, are those of particular persons (6), countries, cities, rivers, mountains, &c. besides the following *two*, which denote, in every language, two objects *alone* in their species, viz. the *sacred* name of *God*, Dieu, and that of his *glorious* work, le SOLEIL, the Sun, derived from the Latin *Sol* and hence the adjective *solus* (alone), because he shines alone the king of light.

The Abstract Nouns will now properly come under consideration after the Adjectives from which they are derived.

SCHOLAR.

Are there not some other particulars, as well as the name of objects, deserving attention ?

MASTER.

Yes ; two essential ones : The *first* relates to the Gender of nouns which are either *masculine* or *feminine*, in French ; and the *second* respects the manner of forming their plural. Their *Gender*, as being intricate and arbitrary, will now exclusively occupy our attention ; and their *number* shall be investigated afterwards. Without giving you the trouble of a further inquiry on the subject, I shall immediately proceed to acquaint you with the probable origin of this distinction of nouns.

Man being of an inventive scrutinizing genius and giving names to the objects of his wants, must have early observed, that Nature had divided his own species into two *Sexes* †, the *Male* and *Female :* and her division would not have been respected, had he called the female by the same name as his *fellow-man*, or, in other words, had he given the appellation of *man* to *woman*. He, therefore, soon devised a term, by which the *female* of his species was to be designated, and thus, he called her *woman*, Femme.

But animals also had their sex. The *Cow*, that supplied him with wholesome and nutritious milk ; the *Hen*, that furnished his table with a luxurious food ; and the *Sheep*, that defended him from the inclemencies of winter with her warm fleece, were severally entitled to distinct names for the discrimination of their sex : and man, inspired with reason and actuated by gratitude, formed the judicious and laudable distinction. With respect to animals less important to him, or less worthy his attention, he was not so particular ; and instead of imposing a name on the *female*, entirely different from that of the male, he framed a specific name for the former, by a slight change in the termination of the latter, as, in French, from the masculine terms *chat*, a cat ; *chien*, a dog ; *loup*, a wolf ; he derived the femines, *chatte*, *chienne*, *louve*.

Nothing appears more reasonable than this distinction, which the God of nature had wisely marked by drawing with an unerring hand the *sexual* line. But man soon deviated from the path of reason, in rendering every object, even the inanimate things of his own creation, *male* or *female*, by arranging their names in the class of masculine or feminine nouns. The cause of this erroneous principle in language may be thus accounted for. In the infant state of Society, when his condition was precarious and circumscribed, the sex of all animals could not be discovered. Some that were dangerous and terrific to him, he carefully avoided : some that viewed him with dread, sought the deepest recesses of the forest for safety; and others, expressing their fear, with fluttering pinions, launched into the vast regions of the air, far beyond his observation. Notwithstanding those obstacles in the road to improvement; and as no law of nature, nor intellectual exertion, could direct him in his course, such was the ardor of his inclination to use the faculty of speech, now become familiar, that he gave names to animals of the same species, as if conscious, that they were all absolutely *Males* or *Females*. This will account for the *Elephant*, *Leopard*, *Bear*, *Rat*, *&c.* having, for instance, the name of the *male* only, in French; and for the *Panther*, *Wasp*, *Adder*, *Mouse*, &c. having no discriminating name for the *male* species. Thus were fear and weakness the authors of error. By judging too hastily, the mind was misled ‡; and man, in early Society, leaving the path of nature to take that of caprice, and easily biassed in his judgment, erred now so much as to impose names even on *inanimate things*, as if they had been of the *Male* or *Female* sex (7).

---

† Derived from the Latin word *Secare* to *cut*, to *divide*.

SCHOLAR.

Is the English the only language, in which inanimate objects or things are confined to a certain Gender called the *Neuter*?

MASTER.

Yes: (I believe) at least, in Europe (8): and this is an advantage, which indubitably renders it, not only more simple, but more easily acquired by foreigners; yet it must be acknowledged, that the application of various Genders to different things, (however introduced in the beginning) tends in a great degree, to yield grace, harmony, animation, and often precision to language. You will be convinced of the truth of this assertion, as you advance in the acquisition of the French tongue; you must therefore endeavour to acquire a knowledge of the right Gender of every *Noun*, without which, you will be continually exposed to blunders and to the ridicule even of the *unlearned* of the French.

SCHOLAR.

In order to avoid *blunders* and *ridicule* how am I to obtain this essential information, respecting the Genders of Nouns?

---

‡ The Articles the invention of which, as we shall show in treating of that part of Speech, was of a very early date, contributed to render the error irremediable.

MASTER.

By attending to the Vocabulary prefixed to this work, and committing to memory the *Familiar Phrases*, in which the principal words exemplifying the Genders of Nouns are exhibited, and for this purpose also many of these phrases were composed.

When you wish to increase your stock of information relative to the Genders, beyond what is contained in this collection, you may consult the Dictionary of the French Academy. However, to call forth your exertions, and encourage your researches in the discovery of exceptions, I here present you a few rules, by which the Gender of a Noun may be nearly ascertained.

RULES.

Nouns ending in *e* mute, *é* and *ion*, are commonly feminine, as *prudence*, prudence; *humanité*, humanity; *religion*, religion.

The terminations *ble*, *cle*, *fle*, *gle*, *ple*, *dre*, *gre*, *tre*, *vre*, *sme*, *ste*, *eige*, *oge*, *uge*, are exceptions to this rule.

Nouns ending in consonants, which are by far the most numerous, are masculine, with few exceptions.

The terminations *ere*, *eure*, *ire*, *me*, *phe*, *one*, *oire*, are nearly common to both Genders.

The names of winds, rivers, mountains, trees, and shrubs are less arbitrary, being, for the most part, masculine.

The names of flowers and roots are commonly of the feminine Gender.

SCHOLAR.

Having fully explained the Gender, you will be kind enough to give me an idea of the Number.

MASTER.

With pleasure. In French there are two Numbers; the singular and the plural: the former relates to one object or thing; the latter to several. The necessity of using the plural was, at an early period, readily conceived. Suppose, for a moment, that a vocal sign or sound to distinguish the *singular* from the *plural*, had not yet been invented; how could you inform me that you had seen *birds* without specifying the number with which, I must imagine, you were unacquainted. You would have no other means of informing me of it, but to repeat the singular word *bird* several times, and in order to make me sensible that you had seen *more birds* than you had repeated the term, you would make rapid signs with your fingers, to signify they were still more numerous. You would continually feel the necessity of using an additional sign to express the idea of plurality ; and in order to convey such idea to the mind, your ingenuity might prompt you, at last, to give a new sound to the Noun by adding thereto the letter *S* (†).

The French, as well as the English, have adopted the letter *S* for the same purpose, with this difference, that the latter always pronounce it, but the former do not, unless the following word begins with a vowel ; and then *S* is softened into *Z*, which, forming a syllable in combination with such vowel, links the two words together ; so that *S* is never sounded *S* but sometimes *Z*, and may be considered rather a sign for the *eye* than for the *ear*.

SCHOLAR.

Why do you make the singular undergo an alteration, and scarcely make use of it afterwards ? Is there not something whimsical in this mode of proceeding ?

MASTER.

Apparently so ; but not in reality. It is highly probable that the original framers of the French language pronounced the *S* at the end of words (‡) when it was first introduced, for men in those days did not, like the moderns invent difficult things, which were soon after consigned to oblivion ; but, as the language improved, articles were devised, which received laws from the Noun to which they were subject : they wore (if I may use the expression) its livery ; and became masculine or feminine, singular or plural, according to the nature thereof. The number of the Noun being always determined by the Article, which precedes it, there can be no occasion to use the hissing sound of *S* when it can, without trespassing on propriety, be avoided.

---

† I think a letter better calculated for a mark of the plural could not have been selected ; for by the peculiar hissing sound of it, words may be lengthened at pleasure and thereby better fitted to give an additional force, to signify that apparent expansion of one object into many, which is the essence of plurality.

‡ In confirmation of this conjecture several French Gentlemen, with whom I have conversed on the subject, informed me they had observed that the inhabitants of several parts of France still pronounce the *S* at the end of many Nouns.

I shall now explain to you why *S* softened into *Z* is pronounced before a word beginning with a vowel. Taste and judgment have happily produced this change, for the sake of harmony and to prevent an hiatus or clashing of vowels, which grates on the ear, and occasions a gaping barbarous sound; as if we were to say in English *a ass*, *a art*, or in French *trois ânes*, not sounding the letter *S* as is done before a word beginning with a Consonant, as we have before observed. To guard against this inconvenience, the agreeable sound of *Z* is introduced between the two vowels, in order to promote a connection that prevents a harsh pronunciation.

SCHOLAR.

Are there no exceptions to this rule of forming the plural of French Nouns by the addition of *S*?

MASTER.

Yes: Four, which are as follows:

First. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* do not admit of it, in the formation of the plural. Example; *le méchant fils*, *les méchans fils;* the wicked son, the wicked sons: *la belle voix*, *les belles voix;* the fine voice, fine voices: *le gros nez*, *les gros nez;* the big nose, big noses.

Second. Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *ieu* and *ou*, admit of an *x* to form their plural, as, *un grand chapeau;* a large hat: *de grands chapeaux;* large hats: *un feu allumé;* a kindled fire: *des feux allumés;* kindled fires: *ce lieu est élevé;* this place is elevated: *ces lieux sont élevés;* these places are elevated: *voici un caillou bien dur;* here is a very hard flint: *voilà des cailloux bien durs;* there are very hard flints.

Third. Nouns ending in *ail* or *al*, change their terminations into *aux*, in the plural; thus, *un travail assidu;* a diligent labour: *des travaux assidus;* diligent labours: *son cheval est fougueux;* his horse is unruly: *ses chevaux sont fougueux;* his horses are unruly.

Fourth. Nouns of several syllables ending in *nt*, convert the *t* into *s*, in their plural; as, *je récompense un enfant obéissant*; I reward a dutiful child: *je punis les enfans désobeissans;* I punish undutiful children.

All monosyllables, except *gent*, people (which makes *gens*, in the plural), follow the general rule; as, *le vent est violent;* the wind is boisterous: *les vents sont favorables;* the winds are favorable.

The following Nouns may be called exceptions to the second and third exceptions immediately preceding, as they take an *S* to form their plural, instead of *x*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Bijou, *cou*, *clou*, *filou*, *hibou*, *licou*, *fou*, *trou;* jewel, neck, nail, pick-pocket, owl, halter, madman, hole : *bal*, *carnaval*, *régal*, *bocal;* ball, carnival, treat, decanter ; *attirail*, *détail*, *éventail*, *épouvantail*, *gouvernail*, *mail*, *portail*, *sérail;* apparatus, detail, fan, scare-crow, helm, mall, church-gate, seraglio. *Bétail*, cattle ; *œil*, eye ; *ciel*, heaven ; and *ail*, garlick, are quite irregular, and make *bestiaux*, *yeux*, *cieux* and *aulx* in the plural.

NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS TO THE CONVERSATION ON THE NOUN.

(1.) Those cries are composed of Interjections with which *Nature* has furnished men for the expression of feelings or affections, in common with each other. Before we have learned to articulate a single word we already know to communicate our feelings to each other, with an undeviating certainty, through the medium of those natural signs ; witness the *language of a child*, which, before he can articulate, is entirely composed of interjections. Hence it appears that man by uttering the interjection was first taught his capacity for the various modulations and inflexions of the organ of speech, and the advantages of more correctly communicating his feeling to his fellow, to be derived therefrom, as there is but one step from noting what are now called interjections, as the natural signs of man's feelings, to imposing, as their representatives, marks or signs on the objects most useful to be remembered ; therefore, we cannot refuse, as some Grammarians have done, to rank the interjection, the mother of language, among the parts of speech.

(2.) At first, the progress of this language was nevertheless very slow. The organ of speech was so inflexible that it could not easily articulate any other than a few simple sounds. The obstacles which hindered them from pronouncing others, prevented them even from suspecting that the voice was susceptible of any farther variation beyond the small number of words which they had already devised.

" Let us suppose *the two first inhabitants of the world* to have had a child, " who, being pressed by wants which he could not without some difficulty " make known, put every part of his body into motion. His tongue being " extremely pliant, made an extraordinary motion and pronounced a new " expression. As those wants continued to press the child, this occasioned " a repetition of the same efforts ; again he moved his tongue in the same " manner as at first, and articulated the same sound. The parents surprised, " having at last guessed his meaning, gave him what he wanted ; but tried, " as they gave it him, to repeat the same word. The difficulty they had to

" pronounce it, showed they were not of themselves capable of inventing it." (Origin of Human Knowledge.)

This conjecture is happily verified by the extreme difficulty Savages, whom we endeavour to civilize, find in pronouncing a great many words which our children have been taught to pronounce without the smallest trouble. Add to this the ease with which they attain the pronunciation of every foreign tongue they have to learn. Hence it appears that children have much contributed to promote the progress of language: a new reason for admiring the happy dependence which Providence has, in his wisdom established, between parent and child: a dependence which unfortunately for their mutual happiness is but too often lost sight of.

(3.) It is an error to think that the first articulate sounds have been the result of a blind choice. Nature first guided us, then analogy made us invent some others, when they became necessary. To corroborate this observation concerning the choice of words, I will mention but a single fact, which is incontrovertible. The words *mama* and *papa* which are probably among the first invented (for they are dictated by nature to children who utter them,) are found, with the same meaning connected with them, in a great many languages, some of which do not appear to have received them from others. Thus the words *abba*, or *baba*, or *papa*, and that of *mama* of the ancient oriental languages, which, with a very slight difference, belong to most of the European languages, are also common to a great many nations of South America (the languages of which are very different), and particularly to the language of the Omoga nation inhabiting the center of that continent.

The great principle of the formation of languages when studied, with reason, in the child of the primordial family, is, that imitation has been the primary cause of the first grammar: new and artless beings developing themselves in the presence of nature, could not be moved but by the physical objects which exercised an influence over them.

The more their senses were struck by those objects, the more they were tempted to imitate them. Their voice becoming through habit more and more flexible, must have expressed, though imperfectly at first, the various cries of animals, the whistling of the winds, the murmur of waters, and even the roar of thunder and stupendous cataracts; thus, language, in its first progress, must have been a collection of *onomatopées*, or imitative words.

(4.) As it is easier for man to use a name he knows, than to learn a new one, he generalizes without having formed the design of generalizing, and without even observing he is generalizing.—" A child that is just learning to " speak (says Adam Smith), calls every person who comes to his house its " *papa* or its *mama*; and thus bestows upon the whole species those names " which it had been taught to apply to two individuals." Having several times myself, made this observation, I cannot help expressing some surprise that it could have escaped the observation of the profound and eloquent J. J. Rousseau, who remarks in his discourse *sur l'origine de l' inégalité*, &c. Part I. " That man having called an oak A, called a second one B, &c."

(5.) Our ideas begin, therefore, from individual, and become at once as general as possible, and afterwards we distribute them in various classes only in proportion as we feel the necessity of distinguishing them; such is the order of their generation.

(6.) The attentive reader must remember that the first names invented by men, were, in the beginning, peculiar to individual objects. From this circumstance he may accuse us of a contradiction, which is however only apparent, when we maintain that every proper name of individuals is derived from some words having a general appellation or common meaning. It is very true that several may be found that can not be traced to their original source, and for the same reason our proposition cannot be disproved: while every proper name whose origin can be traced, is clearly proved to be derived from such a source. To support this assertion we shall have recourse to the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, German, French, and English languages, when the universality of this principle will be no longer doubted.

In the Hebrew, for instance, *Adam* means red, and particularly the father of mankind; *Eve*, the mother of the living; *Abel*, affliction; *Shem*, name, (probably from his being the first named of the family of Noah); *Ham*, heat, for he inhabited Africa or Egypt; *Canaan*, merchant; *Peleg*, division; it was in the time of that Prince men began to divide the earth; *Moses*, saved from the waters; *Aaron*, strong mountain; *Pharaoh*, king; and so on for every other Hebrew name.

In Greek, *Philippus* means fond of horses; *Alexander*, a powerful auxiliary; *Aristotle*, optimus finis, the best end; *Plato*, broad shouldered; *Acheron*, the river of pain; *Africa*, absence of cold, &c.

In Latin, *Lucius* means born at day-break; *Tyberius*, born near the Tyber; *Servius*, born in bondage; *Piso* is derived from *pisum*, a pea; *Cicero*, from *cicer*, a kind of pea. *Fabius* means the bean-man, from *faba*, a bean; *Scipio*, a stick; *Catullus*, a little dog; and so on for an immense number of other proper names.

In the German language a great many families go by such names as *Wolf*, a wolf; *Bar*, a bear; *Hoffman*, a courtier, &c. That language has furnished the French with a great many proper names all derived from that fruitful source *appellative nouns*, with and without epithets, viz. *Bernard*, meaning a courageous man; *Léonard*, courageous like a lion; *Gérard*, brave in war; *Sigebert*, illustrious by victories; *Dagobert*, an illustrious warrior; *Léopold*, bold as a lion, &c. Other proper names originate in the French language itself, as *le Blanc*, *le Noir*, *le Rouge*, *Deschamps*, *le Maître*, *Coutelier*, *Pelletier*, *le Fer*, *Marchand*, *Grand-mont*, *Maréchal*, *Dubois*, *Potier*, *Chateau neuf*, *Moreau*, *&c.*

In English, we find among proper names the words *Black*, *White*, *Field*, *Smith*, *Skinner*, *Potter*, *Page*, *Hall*, *Cook*, *Shoemaker*, *Butcher*, *Bridge*, &c.

In the language of every Indian tribe of North-America the individuals of each are designated by nouns common.

The circumstance of every language taking, in every age, their proper names from epithets and appellative nouns, proves, beyond a doubt, it is a suggestion of nature, well suited to analytical views and the invariable mode of proceeding of the human mind.

The uniformity in the proceedings of the human mind is a circumstance which cannot fail to attract the notice of the attentive observer. In every step towards any improvement, it never fails to proceed on the same principles and to observe the same rules, and should any real improvement result from its progress, it is not so much from conceiving new rules, as from simplifying those with which it was before acquainted.

(7.) It is always contrary to the interest of a new doctrine, however well grounded its principles may be, to be opposed to an ancient one supported by illustrious names. It is unfortunately the case with ours. Our account of the origin of gender in language for the names of *things* or *inanimate* objects, differs very materially from that given by eminent Grammarians, among whom *Harris* and *Gebelin* stand most conspicuous. Those writers seem persuaded that men perceived a kind of logical foundation for making those names *Masculine* or *Feminine*. The ingenious reasons with which they attempt to support their hypotheses afford sufficient ground, without even having recourse to material proofs, to contradict openly their own system; for mankind in the infancy of society, pressed by and surrounded, as they were, with dangers of every kind, a prey to imperious wants, possessing the faculties of the mind only in embryo (as language, the great promoter of *human reason*, was then forming by almost insensible steps), could not have proceeded, as the metaphysicians and philosophers of the present day could have done, with every requisite advantage. As the theory of the two grammarians we have just mentioned, appears countenanced by facts, let us oppose facts to facts, and, to do it with more success, let us oppose to these they have adduced in support of their doctrine those very facts themselves, but better explained.

Harris, whose *Hermes* is in the hands of every English scholar, will furnish us with the very means of overturning his own system. Hermes contains many proofs of its fallacy, among these we shall mention only two, which, as he seems particularly fond of dwelling on them, we trust, will prove amply sufficient to clear up every doubt to the entire conviction of the impartial reader.

" We may conceive (says he) such substantives to have been considered " as *Masculine*, which were conspicuous for the attributes of imparting or " communicating; or which were by nature active, strong and efficacious, and " that indiscriminately whether to good or to ill; or which had claim to emi" nence, either laudable or otherwise."

" The *Feminine*, on the contrary, were such as were conspicuous for the " attributes, either of receiving, of containing, or of producing and bringing " forth; or which had more of the passive in their nature, than of the ac" tive; or which were peculiarly beautiful and amiable; or which had respect " to such excesses as were rather feminine than masculine."

" Upon these principles the two greater luminaries were considered, one " as *Masculine*, the other as *Feminine*; the Sun, as *Masculine*, from commu" nicating light which was native and original, as well as from the vigorous " warmth and efficacy of his rays; the Moon, as *Feminine*, from being the " *Receptacle* only of another's light, and from shining with rays more deli" cate and soft, &c. &c.

The reader, who may expect we are now about opposing our own authority to Mr. Harris, will no doubt feel himself obliged to us for disappointing his expectations, in presenting him with a quotation suitable to our purpose, from that justly celebrated philologist, Mr. Horne Tooke.

" Mr. Harris (says he) is very unfortunate in the very outset of that *sub" tle kind of reasoning*, (as he calls it) which discerns even in things with" out sex, a distant analogy to that great natural distinction."

" For his very first instances—the *Sun* and the *Moon*—destroy the whole " subtility of this kind of reasoning. For Mr. Harris ought to have known that " in many Asiatic Languages, and in all the Northern Languages of this part " of the globe which we inhabit, and particularly in our Mother-Language, the " Anglo-Saxon, (from which *Sun* and *Moon* are immediately derived to us.) " Sun is *Feminine*, and Moon is *Masculine*. So feminine is the *Sun*, that our " northern Mythology makes her the *Wife* of *Tuisco*," &c.

Instead, therefore, of attributing the origin of gender for inanimate things to this *subtle kind of reasoning* of man in his *infant state*, we have attempted to shew how this error in the formation of language originated in the constitution of the human mind itself.

(8.) Here perhaps it may be thought well worth spending some time in inquiring, why the English language should stand alone among those of Europe, in assigning neither the *Masculine* nor *Feminine* gender to *inanimate* objects. The hazarding a few conjectures on this subject appears to me the more necessary, when it is considered that such grammarians as have discovered the greatest acuteness in their researches, have passed it by in silence.

To explain this singular deviation from the nature of other languages, I shall have recourse to that fruitful principle of the progress of the human mind, called, *the association of ideas*. Whoever is acquainted with the English, knows that by the help of the pronouns *he* and *she* prefixed to certain nouns of animals, the *male* or *female* thereof are clearly designated; thus they say, a *he* or *she* cat; a *he* or *she* goat; a *he* or *she* wolf, &c.

In the origin of the English language there was no room for error, as we have shown there was in those languages that impose genders on the names of things, as when giving names to animals, the framers of this language were always able to make such names *masculine* or *feminine* by the addition of those monosyllabic terms; terms that were, perhaps, first devised to express an idea of *sexuality*. Whenever it was necessary to impose names on things without sex, in speaking of them, they could never have made use of the words *he* or *she*; for these words, having been placed before nouns of animals to designate sexuality in the beginning, could not fail to awaken in the mind the idea of one or other sex. Natural good sense, as yet unimpaired, could not think of employing them, when discoursing of things without sex. The genius of invention, directed by reason and stimulated by necessity, discovered the word *it*.

An exception among the names of things has been made in favor of a *ship*, *brig*, *snow*, &c. as the feminine gender has been conferred upon such nouns. This seems to have been established prophetically, as if with a view of personifying those objects to which the English nation should be indebted for so much glory and prosperity.

A gender having thus been so justly denied to names of things, it would have been the height of absurdity to allow names of qualities or adjectives to have genders, as quality is evidently without sex: and quality being *simple* and not *complex*, its name could never have logically been made *plural*. Hence the English adjective has neither *gender* or *number*; and forms thereby a remarkable contrast to the adjectives of other languages.

CONVERSATION III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE AND ABSTRACT NOUN.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT is an Adjective?

MASTER.

A word joined to a Noun, to signify that the object represented by the Noun is possessed of some property or quality; as, a *round* table, une table *ronde;* a *red* coat, un habit *rouge;* the words *round* and *red* are Adjectives, because they denote the figure and colour of the objects *table* and *coat.*

SCHOLAR.

What gave rise to the use of Adjectives?

MASTER.

The comparison of objects which, more or less, resembled or differed from one another. When man wanted to impart this resemblance or difference to his neighbour, he had, at first, no particular terms for the purpose; but, inspired by his wants, he happily and naturally came to introduce into language a new kind of words, which have been called *Adjectives*, a word derived from the Latin *adjectus*, which means *added to.*

SCHOLAR.

Could Adjectives be dispensed with?

MASTER.

No: for without them language would no longer exist. Nouns would only represent objects disrobed of all those qualities, properties, forms, and actions which render them so highly interesting in the communication of our sentiments. Without the assistance of Adjectives, the loveliest objects of nature would sink into indifference, and the finest subjects of imagination would be consigned to oblivion: we should, in fact, be deprived of the faculty of reasoning, as the mere repetition of solitary words to represent certain objects, would be of no avail to express any of the conceptions of the human mind.

The simplicity of language is divine and admirable; and, as there is some relation between an object and its qualities, which flow from the very nature of the object itself, the *Adjective* may also be said to be derived from the *Noun*, as the latter gave rise to the former.

SCHOLAR.

Favour me with some further explanation on this subject.

MASTER.

By all means. Some objects possess qualities in such an eminent degree, that the very mention of them instantly conveys to the mind the idea of those qualities. For instance; as a mountain is a very striking emblem of height and magnitude, a person who would inform his companions that he had seen a very tall or gigantic man, would have said that he had seen a *mountain man*; for, had he used the word *tall* to convey that idea, he would not have been understood, until he had explained to them the meaning which he intended to convey by this word. He was, therefore, in order to make himself intelligible, obliged to resort to a *Noun*, which was already associated in their minds with his prototype; or, suppose he were desirous of extolling the beauty of a fine woman, he might happily express himself by saying, that her shape was an *arrow* (meaning *straight* or *slender*)—her complexion, *snow* (meaning *white*)—that her eyes were *heaven* (that is *blue*)—her cheeks, *roses* (*red*)—and her lips *cherries* or *strawberries* (meaning *ruddy*).

SCHOLAR.

By what means would he have represented a gentle and docile child?

MASTER.

Probably by the word *lamb;* as, a *lamb* child; but this is a very imperfect mode of expressing the quality. The idea of size conveyed by the word *mountain*, is far superior to that of the tallest man. No woman's complexion, however fair, has ever equalled the matchless white of *snow*.

Such nouns as, at first, gave to savage man a rude idea of the qualities discovered in certain things, were gradually replaced, when he came to aim at precision, by the words now called *Adjectives*, which were nothing but Nouns themselves, that had undergone various modifications (1) the better to distinguish the quality from the objects, which man, by comparing them, in order to discover their relations, had learned to separate or abstract from them. This alteration in the Noun to signify the quality, greatly improved the faculty of thinking, as by this means different names were given to different things; order and regularity began to be established in the understanding of man, and this was the result of the faculty called *abstraction*, by which alone mankind are placed so far above the brute creation.

SCHOLAR.

Does the French Adjective differ from the English?

MASTER.

Yes, materially.

First. The English Adjectives have neither *Gender* nor *Number:* but those of the French *agree* with their Nouns in both *Gender* and *Number*.

Second. The English Adjective *precedes* the Noun; the French, with some exceptions, generally *follows*.

SCHOLAR.

You have already explained to me how Nouns became masculine or feminine; but I cannot conceive how a quality can be said to have gender or number, as it has no sex, and is perfectly *simple?*

MASTER.

A good observation. A quality, indeed, should have neither *gender* nor *number*. Without sex or quality, it only expresses the mode of an object; and is, in fact, nothing more than a mere *abstraction*, a creature of the mind.

The *gender* and *number* of Adjectives have been introduced into some languages, to manifest more immediately their dependence on the noun with which they are connected. Hence proceeds that grammatical harmony, termed by the Latins, *Concordance*, which the French observe with great exactness.

SCHOLAR.

How do you form the *feminine* Gender of French Adjectives?

MASTER.

The *feminine* Adjectives must always end in *e* mute; hence it happens, that Adjectives ending in *e* mute in the *masculine*, have no occasion to change that termination to denote the *feminine;* so they say, un homme *aimable*, une femme *aimable;* an amiable man, an amiable woman: des hommes *aimables*, des femmes *aimables;* amiable men, amiable women. Adjectives ending differently, admit of an *e* mute, to form the *feminine;* as, un homme *savant*, une femme *savante* (learned); un *joli* homme, une *jolie* femme (pretty).

With some Adjectives, the mere addition of an *e* mute to the *masculine* will not form the *feminine.* By attending to the following observations, you will soon become acquainted with those irregularities.

First. Of Adjectives ending in *c*, and which are seven in number, three require the addition of *he* to the *masculine* to form the *feminine;* as blanc, blanc*he*, *(white);* franc, franc*he (sincere);* sec, sec*he (dry):* Three change the *c* into *que;* as, public, publi*que (public);* Turc, Tur*que (Turk);* caduc, cadu*que (decayed)*:and the last receives the addition of *que;* as Grec, Grec*que (Greek).*

Second. Adjectives ending in *f* form the feminine, by changing *f* into *ve;* as, un homme vif & naïf (a lively and ingenuous man); une femme vi*ve* & naï*ve* (a lively and ingenuous woman).

Third. Adjectives endin gin *eur* or *eux*, changet heir terminations into *euse*[†]; thus, cet homme est menteur & peureux (this man is false and cowardly); cette femme est menteu*se* & peureu*se* (this woman is false and timid).

Comparative Adjectives such as *meilleur*, better; *supérieur*, superior; follow the general rule of forming the *feminine*, by adding *e* mute to the *masculine*; as, cet homme est meilleur, cette femme est *meilleure.*

Fourth. Adjectives terminating in *l* preceded by *e*, *u* or *ei*, admit the addition of *le* to form the *feminine;* as,

---

[†] Many Nouns, some of which may be used *adjectively*, change the termination *eur* into *rice.* They are the following: Accusateur, acteur, administrateur, admoniteur, adorateur, adulateur, ambassadeur, approbateur, auditeur, bienfaiteur, calomniateur, coadjuteur, compétiteur, conciliateur, conducteur, conservateur, consolateur, coopérateur, corrupteur, curateur, débiteur, délateur, destructeur, dictateur, directeur, dispensateur, dissipateur, dissimulateur, distributeur, donateur, électeur, émulateur, exécuteur, fauteur, fornicateur, générateur, instigateur, inoculateur, introducteur, instituteur, inventeur, lecteur, législateur, libérateur, modérateur, moteur, opérateur, persécuteur, perturbateur, procurateur, protecteur, réconciliateur, réformateur, spectateur, séducteur, testateur, tuteur, violateur, usurpateur, zélateur.

In the following few, the feminine terminates in *resse;* as pécheur, péche*resse;* enchanteur, enchante*resse;* vengeur, venge*resse;* and the two following (which are law terms) demandeur, demande*resse;* défendeur, défende*resse.*

Gouverneur makes gouvern*ante.* Empereur makes Impér*atrice.* Orateur, amateur and auteur are used for both genders.

cruel, *cruelle* (cruel); *nul*, *nulle* (null, or void); *pareil*, *pareille* (similar). When *l* is not preceded by those *vowels*, they follow the general rule; as *fatal*, *fatale* (fatal) &c.

Fifth. Adjectives ending in *n* preceded by *o* or *ie* double the *n* and add *e* mute thereto, in forming the *feminine;* as, un *bon* homme (a good man); une *bonne* femme (a good woman); un usage *ancien* mentionné dans l'histoire *ancienne* (an ancient custom recorded in ancient history).

Others ending in *n* follow the general rule; as, un habit *brun* (a brown coat); une redingote *brune* (a brown great-coat).

Sixth. Adjectives terminating in *t* with *e* or *o* going before it, double that consonant and take *e* mute in the formation of the *feminine*, as in the fifth rule relative to *n* following *o* and *ie*.

EXAMPLE.

Ce verre est *net* (this glass is clean); la rue est *nette*, (the street is clean); un *sot* discours, (a foolish discourse); une *sotte* demande, (a foolish question).

Secret, *complet*, *cagot*, *bigot*, *devot*, *idiot*, are exceptions to this particular rule, and follow the general one, as they make in the feminine, *secrète*, *complète*, *cagote*, *dévote*, *idiote*.

Others ending in *t*, follow the general rule, as, *petit*, *petite* (small or little); *brut*, *brute* (rough); *plat*, *plate* (flat).

There are a few exceptions to some of those rules, which, as they would tend to impede our progress, and as the principal part of them more aptly occur among the Adjectives in the *Practical Part* of this work, we shall pass over.

SCHOLAR.

By what rules do you form the *plural* of Adjectives, which, as you have already observed, agree in *number*, with the Nouns, they attend?

MASTER.

I am glad to inform you that the same rules (if you recollect them) prescribed for forming the *plural* of *Nouns*, will serve you, without exception, for that of the *Adjectives*.

The greatest part of the *Adjectives* ending in *al* have no *masculine* in the *plural;* as, *adverbial*, *austral*, *automnal*, *boréal*, *canonial*, *conjugal*, *fatal*, *final*, *frugal*, *idéal*, *jovial*, *littéral*, *naval*, *pascal*, *pastoral*, *pectoral*, *trivial*, *vénal;* But they are used in the feminine *plural;* so one may say, des batailles *navales*, (sea fights): des dépenses *frugales*, (frugal expenses).

SCHOLAR.

You observed, I remember, that the place of the Adjective must be attended to. What matters it, whether it goes before or after the Noun?

MASTER.

Very great, with regard to particular Adjectives; for instance, the French adjective *honnête* placed *before* a noun signifies *honest;* and *after* the noun it implies *civil* or *polite;* as, c'est un *honnête* homme, (he is an *honest* man); c'est un homme *honnête*, (he is a polite man). Happily, however, but few Adjectives change their meaning with their situation. In the *Practical Part* of this Treatise, you might have observed a list of such as chiefly merit attention.

With regard to those which, contrary to the genius of the English language, *follow* their *Nouns*, they are considerably the most numerous. Some of these latter, however, without altering the sense, may be placed *before* their *Nouns*. The poets enjoy this privilege in a greater latitude than the prose-writers, and call their deviation from the beaten track of language *a poetical licence*, licence poëtique. Your taste gradually improved by reading the most elegant French writers, and attending to polite custom, in that particular, will be your best guide.

SCHOLAR.

To the best of my recollection, in the definition of the *Noun*, I think that you observed that the *abstract* Noun proceeded from the *Adjective;* and you have already shown me how the common Noun generated the Adjective. I cannot help admiring this reciprocal action and reaction of the two principal parts of speech, on each other, and am very anxious to know how the Adjective could have produced the *abstract* Noun.

MASTER.

Men observing that *white* objects made a peculiar impression on the organ of vision, called those objects *white*, blanc; but afterwards, in order more particularly to mark the point by which all white things resembled one another in common, they invented the word *whiteness*, blancheur, from the Adjective *white*, blanc; but observe, that there is no such external being as *whiteness*; it is only a creature of the mind that receives a kind of nominal existence from the abstraction of our common resemblance of things, by which it becomes an object of our thoughts or conversation. Thus a term denoting an *ideal* existence, becomes a *Noun*, and mixed with those expressing the *objects* of our *senses*, it adopts a similar termination, in the same manner as a man becomes a *soldier* by assuming the *uniform* of a regiment.

Here follow some examples in the French language.

Rouge,	Red, produced	*Rougeur*,	Redness.
Long,	long,	*longueur*,	length.
Large,	wide,	*largeur*,	width.
Fort,	strong,	*force*,	strength.
Brave,	brave,	*bravoure*,	bravery.
Vertueux,	virtuous,	*vertu*,	virtue.
Sage,	wise,	*sagesse*,	wisdom.
Généreux,	generous,	*générosité*,	generosity.

SCHOLAR.

I can pretty easily trace, with the help of analogy, the *abstract* Nouns to their origin in *Adjectives ;* but there are many that I cannot, in spite of the most diligent endeavours, trace to the Adjectives that generated them. As you have established as a general principle, that the *abstract* Noun sprung from the *Adjective*, I request you may place its universality beyond all doubt, by showing me the origin of some *particular abstract* Nouns from their *respective* Adjectives ; for example, of *don*, a gift ; *dette*, a debt : *amour*, love ; *haine*, hatred.

MASTER.

I am really indebted to you for the difficulty you propose to me, as the solving it will throw some light on the nature of the *Adjective* and the *Verb*, which will soon be the object of our investigation.

There are three kinds of Qualities in the objects of nature : The first may be denominated *Declarative ;* the second *Active ;* the third *Passive*. The *Declarative* Qualities are *permanent* in objects, because they are derived from their very nature, these constitute the forms and appearances thereof; such are those expressed by the words, *blanc*, *rouge*, *gris*, *long*, *large*, *carré*. The *Active* Qualities are *transitory* and *instantaneous;* such as belong to mankind, for no action can be everlasting, unless it is supposed to exist in an Eternal Being; such are those expressed by the *active* Adjectives, or *Participles* present; a *donnant*, giving; *devant*, owing; *aimant*, loving; *haïssant*, hating, &c,

I have explained to you how men came to form such words as *blancheur*, and the like. Following the same process they greatly enriched the nomenclature of their abstract Nouns, by deducing from their *active* Adjectives or *Participles* present a numerous host of abstract Nouns; so *don* was generated by *donnant; dette* by *devant; amour* by *aimant; haîne* by *haïssant*, &c. I must observe to you, that were it not for the invention of such terms, it would have been impossible for mankind to make the general qualities of whatever exists the object of their comparison, investigation, or reflection, and thereby to come at the discovery of their use, properties, &c. As the existence of those qualities apart from the objects with which they really coexist, is the work of the mind alone, and has no other support but the denominations themselves by means of which the mind takes hold of them, just as we do of a *pitcher* by means of its *handle*.

The *Passive* Qualities, which are the last we notice in the objects of nature, are *transitory* like the *Active* ones, the result of which they are; as there can be no action without some object in view to act upon, which receiving (if I may be allowed the expression) the *blow* of the action, may therefore be denominated *Patient* or *Passive;* such is the meaning of the *passive* Adjectives, *donné*, given; *dû*, owed; *aimé*, loved; *haï*, hated.

SCHOLAR.

Have you concluded your remarks on the *Adjective?*

MASTER.

No: I have still to examine their degrees of *signification* and *comparison*, and then to proceed to what ancient Grammarians term their *regimen;* but what some modern French ones, with more propriety, term *complement*.

SCHOLAR.

Please therefore to continue your observations.

MASTER.

Men soon perceived that objects were not equally endowed with those qualities to which they had given names; and rather than form new Adjectives to express this difference (which would swell them to an immense catalogue) they naturally used *Nouns* denoting *increase* or *diminution* in order to modify the Adjective or give it a degree of *signification* which it did not possess in itself.

SCHOLAR.

How many degrees of *signification* may be expressed with the help of an Adjective?

MASTER.

Three; the *first* is the same with the primitive signification of the word; as, *good*, bon; *strong*, fort; *rich*, riche: It is called *positive.*

The *second* is the *first* reduced below its standard, by the addition of such words as *peu*, *guère*, little; *passablement*, tolerably: *Examples*, Il est *peu* sage, literally, he is *little* wise; or, in better terms, he has *little* wisdom —Ce vin-là n'est *guère* bon, that wine is *little* good—Je la trouve *passablement* aimable, I find her *tolerably* amiable: It may be called *diminutive.*

The *third* is the *first* extended beyond its original meaning with the help of the words *fort*, *très*, *bien*, very; *extrêmement*, extremely; *infiniment*, infinitely, &c. as, Il est *fort*, *très*, or *bien* riche, he is *very* rich—Dieu est *infiniment* sage, God is *infinitely* wise: It may be called *augmentative.*

N. B. The word *archi* placed before some words in the familiar style, extends their signification to a very high degree: so they say in French, il est *archi*-sot, fou, vilain, &c. he is an *arrant* fool, madman, miser, &c.

SCHOLAR.

How many degrees of *comparison* are there?

MASTER.

Three also. The signification of an Adjective comprehended in the ratio of comparison is either levelled to *equality*, sunk to *inferiority*, or raised to *superiority*, in proportion as one degree is equal, inferior or superior to the other.

The mode of comparing consists in placing *before* the *Adjective*, the following words, viz. *aussi*, as, to express *equality: moins*, less, to denote *inferiority;* and *plus*, more, to signify *superiority*: as, elle est *aussi* aimable que vous, she is *as* amiable as you ; Je suis *moins* avancé que lui, I am *less* forward than he ; Vous êtes *plus* jolie qu'elle, you are *more* pretty than she.

I request your attention to the foregoing examples presented to your view, as a true model to *extend* or *contract* the signification of qualities, and also to determine their comparison. Your respect for my instructions, on this occasion, will greatly facilitate your progress in the acquisition of the French language.

SCHOLAR.

What distinction do you make between the degrees of *signification* and *comparison* of Adjectives ?

MASTER.

From what has been already advanced, the degrees of *signification* are considered as *independent ;* the degrees of *comparison* as *dependent ;* from the first standing alone, and from the last being always compared with other Adjectives (understood) by which they exist.

SCHOLAR.

What is commonly meant by *superlative ?*

MASTER.

When the quality has reached its utmost degree of extension or diminution, it must be expressed in the *superlative :* it is done (in French) by placing before it, the words *le*, *la*, *les*, immediately preceding the words *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; as, il est *le* plus studieux, he is the most diligent ; elle est *la* plus studieuse, she is the most diligent ; ils sont *les* plus studieux—elles sont *les* plus studieuses, they are the most studious.

SCHOLAR.

Are those rules so general as to admit of no exception ?

MASTER.

No : there are however three Adjectives only, which express the *comparative* and *superlative*, without the help of *moins*, *plus*, &c. as *bon*, good ; *meilleur*, better ; *le meilleur*, the best ; *mauvais*, bad ; *pire*, worse ; *le pire*, the worst ; *petit*, little ; *moindre*, less ; *le moindre*, the least.

You must observe, however, that *mauvais* and *petit* admit also of *plus* and *le plus*, to express the *comparative* and *superlative*, and therefore may be considered as having two *comparatives*.

SCHOLAR.

What do you mean by the *regimen* or *complement* of an Adjective ?

Master.

It is a *word*, a *Noun* or a *Verb*, which is necessary to some *Adjectives* to complete their respective *meaning*, as it would be vague without it. The relation of the Adjective to that necessary word is manifested by the words *de*, *à*, or *pour*, which immediately *follow* it. These terms called *Prepositions*, extending its influence to the next word, may not unaptly be compared to a *conduit* conveying the water of a fountain to a particular spot.

EXAMPLES.

Je suis bien aise *de* son rétablissement.	I am overjoyed *at* his recovery.
Il est indigne *de* vivre.	He is unworthy *of* living.
Tous les hommes sont sujets *à* la mort.	All men are liable *to* death.
Il est enclin á médire.	He is inclined *to* slander.

I must further observe that there are Adjectives which having no *complement*, when used in a *general* sense, require one when applied in a *particular* sense.

EXAMPLES.

On m'a dit qu'il vivait content.	I was told he lived content.
Content *du* simple nécessaire, je vis heureux.	Content with mere necessaries, I live happy.

Whenever an Adjective requires a *particular* Preposition after it, no *other* must be used: thus the Adjective *prêt* requiring *à* after it, the following modes of speaking and the like, though used by many Frenchmen, are *incorrect;* Je suis prêt *de* partir, I am ready to set off. The Preposition *à* must be substituted for the Preposition *de*.

NOTE ON THE ADJECTIVE.

(1.) It appears impossible to account for the invention of Adjectives, unless we have recourse to their origin from the Nouns themselves. For as the quality does not exist in *abstracto* (as we make it in language); but in *concreto* with the objects themselves, in order to form Adjectives independent of their progenitors, the *Nouns*, we must suppose the framers of language to have imposed arbitrary terms, and terms not founded in nature and analogy, on *qualities*. The consequence of which would have been, that when any individual wished to signify the quality of any object in *abstracto*, it would have been necessary to assemble the whole family of his fellows to acquaint them with the idea of which he intended that sign should be the representative; this it should seem, must have been impossible. But supposing, for a moment, that men should have adopted arbitrary terms, and have understood the qualities of things by those terms, how could memory, as yet in embryo, have retained such words as were founded in whim, caprice, or chance, instead of *nature* and the *resemblance* of *things?*

It is not therefore by the immediate invention of words different from the Substantives, that we are to explain the introduction of Adjectives into language, but by the gradual changes that Nouns of substance, applied in the infancy of language to other Nouns to qualify them, underwent; changes or modifications that altered their form so very much, that in a number of years after they had been first used, it was often impossible to trace them back to the Nouns from which they were generated: add to this, that the various families of mankind scattered here and there on the surface of the globe, having made a different progress in abstracting or generalizing, those that had been more successful from peculiarly favorable circumstances, enriched at once the language of their neighbours with a number of such expressions that bore no analogy with any known Substantives in their language.

As the reader would perhaps be glad to see some instances of Nouns becoming Adjectives by undergoing various modifications, I will select a few from the Latin.

With the Noun CAPUT which means *a head,* the Latins made the Adjectives.

CAP-AX, *capable,* &c.
CAP-ITALIS, *whatever relates to the head, life, and other important things.*
CAP-ITATUS, which signifies *headed.*
CAP-ITOSUS, which is *great headed, hard headed.*
CAP-TIOSUS, which is *fallacious, cavilling, sophistical, suspicious, hurtful, prejudicial, captious.*

The French with their Noun *tête,* which means *a head,* made the Adjectives *têtu, entêté,* stubborn, which corresponds with *capitosus,* and instead of deriving other Adjectives from the word *tête* to correspond with the other Latin Adjectives derived from *caput,* they borrowed them from the Latin; and from *capitalis, captiosus* they made the Adjectives *capital, captieux.*

This last circumstance has thrown great obscurity on the origin of Adjectives and prevented philosophical Grammarians from discovering that Adjectives were nothing but the primitive Nouns, which had undergone some modifications in the *Syllables* of which they are composed.

Some Philosophers who have written on language and attempted vainly to explain the *difficulties* attending its formation would have been exceedingly surprised had our theory been published during their lives; for we have recourse to nothing extraordinary to explain the origin of languages. We suppose no other words necessary to create a language, but *primitive Nouns* given by nature from the resemblance of things, and by analogy and the help of those primitives we form a language, in which all the parts of Speech set forth by Grammarians, are to be found. The difference of our results entirely proceeds from the difference of our methods. With regard to us, we began our inquiries with an idea that words could not be *arbitrary* signs, as the use of each of them evidently shows a foundation for adopting the same, and not a whim or silly caprice in the first founders of language.

They, on the contrary, entered the career with a prepossession that words were *arbitrary signs*; they thought therefore they had nothing else to do but to trust to their imagination to explain the formation of language, and that the most ingenious theory must be the best; which wonderfully stimulated their genius to *invention*. The result of their labours was however nothing but learned absurdities, though very ingenious, indeed, from the difficulties they laboured under, to wind up any theory whatever, as they attempted to explain a language, not such as it was formed, but such as they conceived it themselves to have been formed.

How could the principle from which they deduced their doctrine be true, that words were invented in an *arbitrary* manner? " For let us (says Condillac with his usual acuteness of investigation), suppose a language so arbitrary that *analogy* would have neither determined the choice of words, nor their different acceptations, this language would be a jargon that nobody could learn: one would not be able to reason by the help thereof, and still less able to invent."

I shall now observe, that the more simple a method is, the more effectual, because it comes the nearer to *Analysis*, the most perfect of all methods which is *simplicity* itself, as it consists in nothing else but *decomposition* and *recomposition*. It is the secret of all the discoveries that have been made and will be made to the end of the world. It is the analytical method which has guided me in the course of this work, and I hope I have seldom deviated from it. To it I owe the astonishing simplicity of the mode of tuition I propose, which places the acquisition of a language within the reach of every capacity.

CONVERSATION IV.

OF THE ARTICLE.

SCHOLAR.

ON what subject do you mean to treat next?

MASTER.

The Article. Though the discovery or use of the Verb immediately followed that of the Adjective, yet as the Article generally precedes the Noun of which it may be called the *Herald*, its dependence on that part of Speech renders it so interesting as next to claim our attention.

SCHOLAR.

What do you mean by the Article?

MASTER.

A word generally placed before the Noun common, to fix or determine its sense, with such accuracy as to distinguish the object it represents from all others of the same or of a different species, and by that means to arrest exclusively the attention of the mind. We have several kinds of Articles in French which are occasionally used to fix and determine the signification of the Noun.

SCHOLAR.

How many kinds of Articles?

MASTER.

Three principal: 1st. *Un* (masculine), *une* (feminine), a or an.

2d. *Le*, m. *la*, fem. singular; and *les* of both genders, plural; all of which are expressed by the single English Article *the*.

3d. *Ce*, m. *cette*, f. sing. this or that; and *ces* of both genders, plur. these or those.

The first is called the *Declarative* Article; the second the *Indicative;* and the third the *Demonstrative*.

SCHOLAR.

Will you have the goodness to make me sensible of the distinction between those three Articles, that I may be enabled to employ them in their proper places?

MASTER.

With infinite pleasure; and to throw more light on this subject, I shall borrow a few sentences from that excellent work of Sicard, entitled "*Elémens de Grammaire générale appliqués à la langue Française.*"

"If there were several objects before you, such as "*knives*, *penknives*, *pens*, *keys*, &c. and that in order "to cut bread or any thing else, you stood in need of "one of those *knives;* were they all of different kinds "and before your eyes, what would you say to obtain "one? You would say, give me a *knife*. By thus expressing yourself in asking for a *knife*, would it be your "intention to require but one *knife*, to specify the *number* only, and not ask for *two?* By no means, would "you refuse the *one*, which might be offered to you alleging it was not the one you called for? No! All "would be equally indifferent to you; you would not "have said a *knife*, that a penknife should not be given "to you; to determine the kind would have been your "intention: thus, in that case, *one*, a word of number, "would not have occurred to you, but an Article, a definite word, which we may call a *declarative* Article."

"If it be not only a *knife* that you wish for, but such "a particular knife and no other, your idea is no longer "so vague, so unfixed; it is, on the contrary, very exact. The first Article, which only aims to declare the "object and separate it from the rest, in order to show "and particularize it, without determining the choice, "is no longer the proper word; you must employ a term "devoted to fix the idea, to place the object before your "eyes, if you would have that knife only which you demand; the Article, in such case, is *this*, and not *a* or *an*. "This knife is already known to you, and the person, "who has given it to you; and if it be no longer in his "view or yours, and should you still demand it, you do "not use *a* or *an;* it is known; you no longer say *this*, "it is not in your view, and you cannot show it; you "say *the* knife, and you are understood. For it is "just as if I had said, *give me the knife you have already* "*given me.*

"There are then three modes of determining the object of our investigation, and those three modes gave "rise to three words belonging to the same class, which "words are the Articles *un*, *ce*, *le*, without excluding "the other terms relative to them."

Scholar.

Having lately glanced over the pages of a celebrated French Grammar, I found that the Articles as well as the Nouns, have cases, and are declined together. I hope you will explain more fully this particular.

Master.

It is impossible, as neither Nouns nor Articles have cases, nor can they be declined in French or English ; you will be sensible of this when the case and declension are explained to you.

Those words, which have no meaning, when applied to our Nouns, have been borrowed from the Greeks and Romans who really had cases and declensions in their language.

A case is the change of termination which a Noun undergoes in performing its part in a sentence ; and as a Noun may have six different parts to perform, it also has six cases.

The declension of a Noun comprehends all its cases, and to decline a Noun is to review each of its cases in succession.

Scholar.

How do you, in French, supply the place of those terminations which, by the Latins, were thought necessary to express the different parts a Noun may perform in a sentence ?

Master.

We, as the English, first give the Noun a particular place in the phrase which denotes whether it is considered as the subject or object of the action expressed by the Verb. This enables us to render the two cases denominated by the Latins *nominative* and *accusative*. To denote also other relations of the Noun we have recourse to general terms ; these are the Prepositions *à*, *de*, or *par*, which, being placed before the Nouns and their Articles, clearly express these relations.

As the Article is never used independent of the Noun, for the sake of which it was instituted, I shall introduce examples of the three Articles already mentioned, viz.

The *declarative* Article *un* or *une* before a Noun is thus exemplified, masculine and feminine.

Un homme (ou *une* femme) m'a parlé.	A man (*or* woman) has spoken to me.
J'ai vu *un* homme, *une* femme.	I have seen a man, a woman.
Il parle d' *un* homme, d'*une* femme.	He speaks of a man, of a woman.

Je l'ai reçu d'*un* homme, d'*une* femme.	I received it from *a* man, from *a* woman.
J'ai donné de l'argent à *un* homme à *une* femme.	I have given money to *a* man, to *a* woman.

The indicative Article *le*, the, before a Noun masculine.

EXAMPLES.

Le Roi a prononcé son discours.	*The* King has delivered his speech.
Avez vous vu passer *le* Roi ?	Have you seen *the* King pass ?
Il est monté dans *le* carrosse du Roi.	He went in *the* coach of the King, or in *the* King's coach.
Il vint de la part *du* Roi.	He came from *the* King.
Il a été présenté *au* Roi.	He was presented to *the* King.

The indicative Article *la* preceding the Noun feminine, thus,

La Reine est aimée de son peuple.	*The* Queen is loved by the people.
Il conduisit *la* Reine à l'église.	He conducted *the* Queen to church.
C'est un présent de *la* Reine.	It is a gift of *the* Queen.
Elle l'a reçu de *la* Reine.	She has received it from *the* Queen.
Elle l'offrit à *la* Reine.	She offered it to *the* Queen.

The indicative Article *le* or *la* becomes *l'*, *de l'*, *à l'*, before a singular Noun masculine or feminine, beginning with a *vowel* or *h* mute. This elision is merely used for the sake of harmony.—Examples.

Singular.	*l'* esprit, m.	*the* mind.
	del' esprit,	of *or* from *the* mind.
	à l' esprit,	to *the* mind.
	l' ame, f.	*the* soul.
	del' ame,	of *or* from *the* soul.
	à l' ame,	to *the* soul.
	l' homme, m.	*the* man.
	del' homme,	of *or* from *the* man.
	à l' homme,	to *the* man.

The indicative Article *les* invariably corresponds with both genders in the plural, as,

Plural.	*les* pères, m.	*the* fathers.
	des pères,	of *or* from *the* fathers.
	aux pères,	to *the* fathers.
	les mères, f.	*the* mothers.
	des mères,	of *or* from *the* mothers.
	aux mères,	to *the* mothers.
	les amis, m.	*the* friends.
	des amis,	of *or* from *the* friends.
	aux amis,	to *the* friends.

SCHOLAR.

You have observed, that Prepositions joined to the Articles preceding Nouns common, are used instead of the cases or varying terminations of the Greeks and Latins; but I do not observe any Prepositions before *au*, *du*, singular, and *aux*, *des*, plural, expressed in English by *to the* and *of* or *from the?*

MASTER.

I will explain this difficulty. You must know, that the article *au* is the contraction of à *le; du* of *de le; aux* of *à les;* and *des* of *de les.*

I am much pleased with your remark, as I think it will lead you to avoid a very common and natural solecism, which the English learner is often apt to slide into, by frequently saying *à le* for *au**; *de le* for *du; les* for *aux;* and *de les* for *des.*

SCHOLAR.

What do you mean by the *indefinite* and *partitive* articles, which, I find, are frequently mentioned in all the French Grammars that have fallen into my hands?

MASTER.

There can be no *indefinite* article; for as that part of Speech is used to define or limit the Noun, it is an absolute contradiction to say, there are articles or *defining* words, which do not *define*, or are *indefinite.*

Du and *des* denominated *partitive* articles, are abridged by contraction (as we have before noticed) from *de le* and *de les*, and used in the beginning or middle of a sentence, apparently independent of a preceding word, which, though not expressed, is understood; as, *du* pain & *de l'*eau me suffisent; bread and water are sufficient for me: donnez moi *du* cresson & *des* navets; give me some cresses and turnips: The words *une quantité, un nombre,* or some such expression, before *du*, *de l'*, or *des*†, being understood.

---

* So natural it is to fall into what may be called a mistake now, that I have heard French children (and children are greater analists than our best philosophers, for they follow more exactly the lessons of Nature) use such a mode of expression in j'ai mal *à le* doigt, for j'ai mal *au* doigt (I have a pain in my finger).

† The Scholar will become more sensible of this truth, when we treat of the *Preposition.*

We shall now proceed to the *demonstrative* Article *ce*, *cet*, m. *cette*, f. this or that: *ces*, pl. these or those. *Ce* precedes a consonant; *cet* a vowel or *h* mute.

EXAMPLES.

Ce jardin, s. m.	*This* or *that* garden.
de ce jardin.	of or from *this* or *that* garden.
à *ce* jardin.	to *this* or *that* garden.
Cet homme. s. m.	*this* or *that* man.
de *cet* homme.	of or from *this* or *that* man.
à *cet* homme.	to *this* or *that* man.
cet enfant. s. m.	*this* or *that* child.
de cet enfant.	of or from *this* or *that* child.
à *cet* enfant.	to *this* or *that* child.

Cette, this or that, in the feminine, is invariably the same; as,

Cette dame. s. f.	*This* or *that* lady.
de *cette* dame.	of or from *this* or *that* lady.
à *cette* dame.	to *this* or *that* lady.
cette humeur. s. f.	*this* or *that* humour.
de *cette* humeur.	of or from *this* or *that* humour.
à *cette* humeur.	to *this* or *that* humour.
cette école. f.	*this* or *that* school.
de *cette* école. f.	of or from *this* or *that* school.
à *cette* école.	to *this* or *that* school.

Ces, plural, is the same in both genders.

EXAMPLES.

Ces hommes. pl. m.	*These* or *those* men.
de *ces* hommes.	of or from *these* or *those* men.
à *ces* hommes	to *these* or *those* men.
ces femmes. pl. f.	*these* or *those* women.
de *ces* femmes.	of or from *these* or *those* women.
à *ces* femmes.	to *these* or *those* women.
ces enfans. pl. m.	*these* or *those* children.
de *ces* enfans.	of or from *these* or *those* children.
à *ces* enfans.	to *these* or *those* children.

The following, which comprehends all the words of the same class, concludes the demonstrative Article

Celui qui. m. s.---He who	he or she that	*Celui qui* étudie---*He who* or *he that* studies.
Celle qui. f. s.---she who		*celle qui* écrit---*she who* or *she that* writes.
Ceux qui. m. pl.	they or those who	*ceux qui* étudient---*they* or *those who* study.
Celles qui. f. s.		*celles qui* écrivent---*they* or *those who* write.

Celui-ci---this. *Celui-là*. m. s.---Donnez-moi *celui-ci*, & gardez *celui-là*---give me this, and keep that,

Ceux-ci---these. *Ceux-là*. m. pl. those.---Donnez-moi *ceux-ci*, & gardez *ceux-là*---give me these, and keep those.

Celle-ci---this. *Celle-là*. f. s. that.---Prenez *celle-ci* & laissez-moi *celle-là*---take this, and leave me that.

Celles-ci---these. *Celles-là*. f. pl. that---Prenez *celles-ci*, & laissez-moi *celles-là*---take these, and leave me those.

Ce qui, *ce que*---what, that which. *Ce qui* lui arrive est *ce que* je lui ai prédit---*what* befalls him is *that which* I foretold him.

NOTE. The adjuncts *ci* and *là* render the DEMONSTRATIVE still more forcible; the former shows the object near; the latter more remote.

SCHOLAR.

Have you any more to say on the subject of Articles?

MASTER.

Yes. Take notice, First, That the Article *le*, &c. *the*, in French, renders the idea more general, gives it the greatest possible latitude, and represents the whole species by a single individual, as is done in English, by the suppression of the indicative article; as, man is mortal; *l'* homme est mortel, that is to say, all men:—Opinion (i. e. opinion in general) is the Queen of this world; *l'* opinion est la Reine de ce monde.

Secondly. The *Article* placed before Adjectives, the infinitives of some Verbs, or before Adverbs, Prepositions and Conjunctions, transform them into Nouns; in such case, though the Article may be singular or plural, according to the sense, it must be of the *masculine* gender.

EXAMPLES.

The Article *(masculine)* before *Adjectives.*

Le vrai & *le* beau sont l' objet des arts.	Truth and beauty are the objects of the arts.
Les vertueux sont estimés.	*The* virtuous are esteemed.

Infinitives.

Le boire & *le* manger sont indispensables.	Eating and drinking are indispensable.
Le rire de cet homme est niais.	*The* laughter of this man is silly.

Adverbs.

Il veut savoir *le* pourquoi & *le* comment de tout.	He would know the *why* and the *what* of every thing.

Prepositions.

Un avocat ne peut défendre *le* pour & *le* contre dans un procès.	A lawyer cannot defend the *for* and *against* in a suit.

Conjunctions.

Les si, *les* car & *les* mais de cet homme le rendent fort ennuyeux.	The *ifs*, *fors* and *buts* of this man render him intolerable.

Finally. Though proper names are in themselves sufficiently definite, and of course need no Article, yet they will sometimes admit the Article before them; as, *les* Franklins, *les* Washingtons & *les* Jeffersons, font un honneur immortel à l'Amérique; The Franklins, Washingtons and Jeffersons reflect eternal honour on America.

By thus placing the Articles before their proper names, we form a distinct class, a separate species of them, the better to convey to the mind the exalted opinion we entertain of such great men. Then, their names becoming *appellative* or *common*, are liable to the accidents thereof.

NOTE ON THE ARTICLE.

SOME Grammarians, among whom we find the celebrated SCALIGER, who calls the Article *an otiosum instrumentum*, have denied the absolute necessity of such a determining word. However, a retrospective view of language, so far as we have advanced in the history of its rise and progress, will soon convince us that it is indispensable.

The Nouns common of kind or species, (the origin of which we have accounted for, and which forms the basis of Language) are *general terms* applying to a number or mass of individuals of the same species. Whenever, therefore, we would say any thing particular concerning one of those individuals, were we merely to use the general term without signifying our intention of using it in that restrained or limited point of view, what we would say of one individual would apply to *the whole species*, and consequently leave the mind of the hearer in a state of absolute uncertainty, which one among them it is intended to designate by the term.

In vain would the assistance of Adjectives be called in to fix its meaning, by qualifying or distinguishing it by enumeration of various properties; the mind of the hearer would still remain unsatisfied, as Adjectives are also general terms that were devised for characterizing individuals possessing the same general properties. To emerge from a state of obscurity so irksome, the mind, tired of using bodily signs to limit the latitude of the general term, would apply to it, at last, a short sound, which might at once inform the hearer, that the general term, though used, is now looked upon by the mind as fit only for the individual, which is the subject of discourse. Thus, the necessity of speaking clearly in order to be understood, necessarily produced the invention of the *Article*.

What therefore could have induced men of learning to maintain an opinion so different from that of him who studied mankind in the first unfoldings of reason, and the gradual formation of articulate signs? Prejudice, and the idea that Articles are so very abstract (which is well founded now), and that they could not have been introduced as a matter of necessity, but as one of philosophical *luxury*. This prepossession arose from a conviction that there was but one Article which the Latins, wishing to act more wisely than the Greeks (who thought they could not dispense with it), *had totally banished* from their language, on which those ENTHUSIASTIC GRAMMARIANS wanted to new-model, even by force, (if such an expression may be allowed) every other language. This pretended exile answered to the indicative Article *the* of the English; *le*, &c. of the French; and ὁ of the Greeks.

The truth is, however, that the Latins had not only that very Article indicative, as *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, answered pretty accurately to it; but also all our other Articles, besides one is peculiar to their language, and designed chiefly for persons. *Hic*, *ille* and *is*, observes a celebrated French author, may be united in the same phrase; then the two first designate objects in sight: *hic* is for those that are near, *ille* for those that are at a distance; and *is* for those that are out of sight, or the absentees: a delicate gradation, which cannot be observed in our language, which is deficient in a term to express the latter idea; a proof that the Latins, so far from being deprived of Articles, excelled us in that particular. It is true, that *ille*, &c. was often suppressed, but it was only when it could be dispensed with, or when the clearness of a sentence would suffer so very little from its suppression, that it might, in such a case, be safely sacrificed to the vivacity of DICTION.

See, on the subject of Latin ARTICLES, BONAMY's MEMOIRE, *tome* xx. de l'Académie des Inscriptions & Belles Lettres.—MAFFEI, Génie de la Littérature Italienne, *tome* I.

There now remains but one objection against the Article, that it is too metaphysical to be absolutely indispensable. It is very abstract for us, indeed, who have lost sight of its origin, but it is not the less physical for it on that account, for the intellectual world is always founded on the physical world, as its basis.

The Article indicative ὁ of the Greeks, was, in the origin of their language, a Noun of place, and meant *there*.

The English Article *the* is probably derived from the Noun of place *there*: It is not merely because *t*, *h*, *e* is to be met with in *there*, I say so: it is because there is an analogy of meaning between the two expressions. *The man*, means the man already spoken of, at a distance from us, not so close to us as the individual of whom I say, *This man*; the word *there* was then probably applied first to the word, till it becomes *the*, by that love that mankind feel for abbreviation or conciseness of expression, as well as to distinguish it from the Noun of place *there*.

So natural is it to use Nouns of place with Nouns common to precede them, that the lower class of people, who must have kept up, rather than the polished part of the nation, the ancient forms of language, often speaks more clearly, by saying, this *here* man; that *there* man.

The French say, Il vient de *là*; Je vais *là*; Cet homme *là*, &c. He comes from there; I am going there; That man. In the two first sentences, *là* is an Adverb of place, without any determination to the Pronouns *Il* and *Je*, which would be quite superfluous; in the last, it is certainly the same Adverb with a particular determination to the Noun, the more clearly to define it.

The French *demonstrative* Article *ce*, this or that, comes from the ancient and primitive word *ça*, *cei*, *ci*, denoting agitation, motion, and certainly a word that represented a visible action, was fit to represent in a figurative sense the *motion of the mind turning particularly towards an object* to embrace it solely and exclusively of others of the same or different kinds.

ETYMOLOGY and REASON appear, therefore, to combine in showing the physical origin of those very metaphysical terms, and it is most probable, indeed, that they were chosen among the Nouns of *place*, which must have been very early invented, as they were a translation of the gestures of men pointing at particular objects.

I will conclude what I have to say of the Article, by observing, that there is a striking difference between the English and French languages, in the use of the *Article;* in the former, the Article is never used before the Noun common, singular or plural, when it is uttered to announce a property belonging to the whole collection of individuals, whose species is designated by the term: so, they will say, man thinks; man is mortal;—while the French would say, l' homme pense; l' homme est mortel.

It is evident, that the latter do not obey, in this particular, the dictates of Logic, as, in the above modes of expression, *man* is used for such a mode of expression, as, *every man whatever*, which extends to all mankind: The Article being a word of limitation, it should not be used, in such sentences, before the general term.

The people who invent PROVERBS, often bespeaking their native good sense, seldom use, in French, the Article in this instance we are mentioning: thus, they say, without the Article,

Pauvreté n' est pas vice.	Poverty is not a vice.
Pierre qui roule n' amasse point de mousse.	Rolling stone will gather no moss.
Contentement passe richesses.	Self-content is preferable to riches.
Plus fait douceur que violence.	Gentleness will do more than violence.

LA FONTAINE, that Poet of Nature, offers, in his Fables, a number of these examples where the Article is properly suppressed.

In the SYNTAX of this work, we shall show the contrast between the English and French *Articles*, with regard to the manner of using the latter.

CONVERSATION V.

OF OTHER ARTICLES.

SCHOLAR.

WHICH are the other Articles?

MASTER.

The following, viz.

1st. The Possessive, as, *mon*, &c. my, &c.

2d. The Possessive Relative, as, *le mien*, &c. mine, &c.

3d. The Demonstrative conjunctive, as, *qui*, &c. who, &c.

4th. The Numerical Determinative, as, *un*, &c. one, &c. *certain*, certain; *tel*, such.

5th. The Numerical Indeterminative, as, *plusieurs*, several, many; *quelques*, some; *certains*, certain; *tels*, such.

6th. The Negative, as, *nul*, *aucun*, none, not any, &c.

7th. The Collective, as, *tout*, m. s. *toute*, f. s. *tous*, m. p. *toutes*, f. p. all, &c.

8th. The Distributive, as, *chaque*, each, every.

SCHOLAR.

I have noticed, that these very words, which you now treat of, as Articles, are set down in other French Grammars as Pronouns. Why do you call them Articles?

MASTER.

Because, the province of the Article is, to define and set boundaries to the Noun; therefore, every word possessing that property must be classed with the Articles, notwithstanding the respectability of grammatical authorities, if they be erroneous.

I have adopted the classification of the two eminent French Grammarians, *Beauzée* and *Sicard* (with some little deviation from their system) as it appeared to me to be founded on sound principles.

We will now proceed minutely to review those Articles in the same order as above.

OF THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLES.

	Masculine.	*Fem.*	*Of both Genders.*	
1st Person	mon, s.	ma, s.	mes, pl.	mine.
	de mon,	ma,	mes,	of *or* from mine.
	à mon,	ma,	mes,	to mine.
2d Person	ton,	ta,	tes,	thine.
	de ton,	ta,	tes,	of *or* from thine.
	à ton,	ta,	tes,	to thine.
3d Person	son,	sa,	ses,	his, her or its.
	de son,	sa,	ses,	of *or* from his, her its.
	à son,	sa,	ses,	his, her its.

	Of both Genders.		
1st Person	notre, s.	nos, pl.	our.
	de notre,	nos,	of *or* from our.
	à notre,	nos,	to our.
2d Person	votre,	vos,	your.
	de votre,	vos,	of *or* from your.
	à votre,	vos,	to your.
3d Person	leur,	leurs,	their.
	de leur,	leurs,	of *or* from their.
	à leur,	leurs,	to their.

OF THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLES,

RELATIVE TO AN OBJECT BEFORE MENTIONED.

1st Person	*Masculine.*		
	le mien, s.	les miens, pl.	mine.
	du mien,	des miens,	of *or* from mine.
	au mien,	aux miens,	to mine.
	Feminine.		
	la mienne,	les miennes,	
	de la mienne,	des miennes,	
	à la mienne,	aux miennes,	

2d Person	*Masculine.*		
	le tien,	les tiens,	thine.
	du tien,	des tiens,	of *or* from thine.
	au tien,	aux tiens,	to thine.
	Feminine.		
	la tiennes,	les tiennes,	
	de la tienne,	des tiennes,	
	à la tienne,	aux tiennes,	

3d Person	*Masculine.*		
	le sien,	les siens,	his, hers, *or* its.
	du sien,	des siens,	of *or* from his, hers, its.
	au sien,	aux siens,	to his, hers, its.
	Feminine.		
	la sienne,	les siennes,	
	de la sienne,	des siennes,	
	à la sienne,	aux siennes,	

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Of both Genders.*	
1st Per.	le nôtre, s.	la nôtre, s.	les nôtres, pl.	ours.
	du nôtre,	de la nôtre,	des nôtres,	of *or* from ours.
	au nôtre,	à la nôtre,	aux nôtres,	ours.
2d Per.	le vôtre,	la vôtre,	les vôtres,	yours.
	du vôtre,	de la vôtre,	des vôtres,	of *or* from yours.
	au vôtre,	à la vôtre,	aux vôtres,	yours.
3d Per.	le leur,	la leur,	les leurs,	theirs.
	du leur,	de la leur,	des leurs,	of *or* from theirs.
	au leur,	à la leur,	aux leurs,	theirs.

Before we proceed to the Demonstrative Conjunctive, it will be necessary to premise that though *mon*, *ton*, *son* are masculine, they are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa* before feminine Nouns, beginning with a *vowel* or *h* mute: thus, the concordance of genders is, in this case, sacrificed to the harmony of sound, as *mon* épée (instead of *ma* épée) est plus courte que la sienne, my sword is shorter than his; *ton* amitié (for *ta* amitié) m'est chère, *thy* friendship is dear to me; *son* histoire (for *sa* histoire) est trop longue, *his*, or *her*, history is too long.

But if an Adjective not beginning with a *vowel* or *h* mute, should precede the feminine Noun, the rule of concordance relative to Article and Noun is strictly observed, and *mon*, *ton*, *son*, in the above instance, naturally become *ma*, *ta*, *sa;* as, *ma* belle épée, *my* handsome sword; *ta* sincère amitié, *thy* sincere friendship; *sa* savante histoire, *his* learned history.

I will here observe that, though the possessive Articles of the third person assume in English the gender of the possessor, they assume in French the gender of the thing possessed. Thus, when speaking of a lady, you say, *her* coach; we say *son* carosse, because the word *carosse* happens to be masculine.

OF THE

DEMONSTRATIVE CONJUNCTIVE ARTICLES.

Of both genders and numbers	Qui,	who,	that *or* which.
	de qui, dont,	of *or* from whom, *or*	whose.
	à qui,	to whom,	whose.
	que,	whom,	that, what, how! why?

	Masculine.		*Feminine.*		
———	Lequel, s.	lesquels, pl.	laquelle,	lesquelles,	which.
———	duquel,	desquels,	de laquelle,	desquelles,	of *or* from which.
———	auquel,	auxquels,	à laquelle,	auxquelles,	to which.

———	Quel,	quels,	quelle,	quelles,		what *or* which.
———	de quel,	de quels,	de quelle,	de quelles,	of *or* from what	which.
———	à quel,	à quels,	à quelle,	à quelles,	to what	which.

N. B. *Quel*, &c. is always joined to a *Noun*.

———	Quoi		which *or* what.
———	de quoi,	of *or* from which	what.
———	à quoi,	to which	what.

N. B. *Quoi* is never applied to *persons*.

SCHOLAR.

Can you convince me that *my* and *who* are *Articles* and not *Pronouns*.

MASTER.

I can.—Suppose the word *my* not yet invented, and that I wanted to express the idea conveyed by the terms *my friend*, I must have recourse to the following circumlocution, and say, *the friend of me; my*, it appears, supplies the place of three words, viz. the Article *the*, Preposition *of*, and Pronoun *me*. But which of the three terms is predominant? The word *the* certainly, as it is used particularly to define or circumscribe the word *friend*, which without it is only a general term for every friend; the Preposition and the Pronoun concur with the Article in determining, more pointedly, the sense of the expression *friend*. I must, therefore, conclude that *my*, an elliptical term, the equivalent of the three words above mentioned, is a determining word and of course is entitled to the name of *Article* rather than any other.

With respect to the Demonstrative Conjunctive who, *qui*, if we suppose it not yet introduced into our language; to express a sentence corresponding with the following, viz. *The master who teaches the mathematics in this college is very skilful.* I would say, "*A master teaches the mathematics in this college and that master is very skilful.*"—Instead of *who*, I am obliged to use the three words "*and that master.*"

The first is a *Conjunction*, which unites the two Propositions; the second is a *demonstrative* Article; and the third is a *Noun: Who* is therefore a *conjunctive* Article and Pronoun at the same time; but when used as a substitute for the three expressions above mentioned, it is in order to define and circumscribe, in a conspicuous manner, the general term *master: Who* is therefore an Article, and may be called *Demonstrative Conjunctive* to distinguish it more particularly from other Articles.

SCHOLAR.

What difference is there between *qui* and *lequel?*

MASTER.

First. *Qui* is of both genders and numbers, and *lequel* agrees in gender and number with its Noun.

Second. *Qui*, not acted upon by a Preposition, is relative to persons and things; as in the following examples:

Un homme *qui* aime la vertu.	A man *who* loves virtue.
Une histoire *qui* plaît.	A history *that* pleases.

On such occasions it would be highly improper to use *lequel*, &c.

But *qui*, governed by a Preposition, applies to persons only ; the following sentences therefore would be incorrect :

Voilà la maison *de qui* j'ai fait l'acquisition.	There is the house *which* I have made a purchase of.
L'argent *sur qui* je compte.	The money *on which* I depend.

In the first instance, we should use *de laquelle* or *dont*, instead of *de qui ;* and in the next, *sur lequel*, instead of *sur qui.*

In speaking of persons, we often indifferently make use of *de qui*, *duquel*, or *de laquelle*, &c. The ear, however, is the chief guide in the choice of either ; but *dont* should not be used in such cases.

Polite custom and the attentive perusal of approved authors, will form your judgment, and direct you best, when to adopt the one or reject the other.

We now proceed to the other Articles.

SCHOLAR.

Which are the *Determinative Numerical* Articles ?

MASTER.

Un, *une*, one ; *deux*, two, &c. (of both genders) ; and *quelque*, one (among many) or some ; as, *quelque* traître vous dénoncera ; *some* traitor will inform against you. *Certain*, certain ; J'ai onï dire à *certain*, ou à *un certain*, bel esprit que ; I heard a *certain* virtuoso say that. As you have already met with these Articles in the *practical* part of this work, there is no occasion that I should present you a list of them ; it is sufficient that you should now be informed to what part of speech they belong.

SCHOLAR.

Why do you call them *determinative ?*

MASTER.

Because, when they are expressed before Nouns, we know how often the object represented by the Noun, is repeated : I call them determinative in contradistinction to other Articles, which convey an idea of number *indeterminative ;* such as, *plusieurs* (in both genders), many, several ; *quelques*, some.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai rencontré *plusieurs* jolies femmes.	I have met *many,* or *several,* pretty women.
Je leur présentai *quelques* pêches que j' avais cueillies.	I presented them *some* peaches which I had gathered.

From this mode of expression, you cannot determine *how many* pretty women I met with, nor *how many* peaches I presented them.

SCHOLAR.

I find that in all the French Grammars I have perused, the *Numerical* Articles are called *Adjectives*, as well as several others of your Articles: would it not be as well that they should still remain on the list of Adjectives, as that you should class them with Articles in opposition to so many grammatical writers?

MASTER.

I think not. For you must acknowledge, that it is highly inconsistent with the character or pursuits of a lover of science, if, instead of throwing some light on abstruse subjects, he helps to consolidate errors, which, notwithstanding the boast of their antiquity, are so many impediments in the road to truth and useful discovery, the great objects of the scientific man. But to return to the subject; I will endeavour to make you sensible that those terms, commonly called Adjectives, cannot be properly termed so, without a perversion of words. Let us recollect what the *Adjective* is. It is a word, as already described, which represents a quality, action, form, colour, passion, habit, &c. and, consequently, brings to the mind the image of something physical or material.

The *Article*, on the other hand, pictures nothing to the mind, but leaves it in the vacuum of abstraction. For instance, what means the word *three*, which, of itself signifies neither *three* dollars, nor *three* men, nor *three* horses, but *three* in general?

As to *Adjectives*, they have degrees of signification and comparison, which *Articles* will not admit of. We cannot say of any object, that it is more or less *the*, *a*, *this*, *my*, *who*, *three*, than another.

Articles are, therefore, by no means, entitled to be called *Adjectives* when they possess none of their properties. The name of *Metaphysical Adjectives*, given to them by two celebrated French Grammarians, does not, in my opinion, much contribute to illustrate the subject.

SCHOLAR.

Which are the remaining Articles?

MASTER.

First: The *Negative*, as *nul*, m. *nulle*, f. *aucun*, m. *aucune*, f. signifying, in English, *nobody*, *none*, *not any*.

They are called *Negatives*, as requiring to be preceded or followed by the negative *ne*, not, and implying a denial of the circumstance expressed.—EXAMPLES.

Aucun ou *nul* ne le sait.	*No body*, or *none*, knows it.
De toutes les Grammaires je ne m'attache à *aucune*.	Of all the Grammars I am a slave to *none*.
Je n'en ai vu *aucune*.	I did *not* see *any* of them.

Second: The *Collective* Article, *tout*, m. *toute*, f. singular, every.----EXAMPLE.

Toute peine mérite salaire.	*Every* trouble deserves a pay.
Toutes les homme sont mortels.	*All* men are mortal.
Toutes les femmes étaient superbement. parées.	*All* the women were magnificently dressed.

Remark, that when *tout* or *toute*, in the singular, is followed by the Article *le* or *la*, it is then no longer an Article, but an Adjective, and means the totality, not of the individuals of the species, but of the integrant parts which constitute the individual.---EXAMPLES.

Tout le bœuf fut mangé.	*The whole* ox was eaten.
Toute la nation demanda la guerre.	*The whole* nation cried out for war.

When it means *every thing*, it is invariably *tout*.---EXAMPLE.

Dieu a *tout* créé.	God has created *all* or *every thing*.

Third: The *Distributive* Article *chaque*, each, or every, is of both genders, but without the plural number. ---EXAMPLE.

Chaque pays a ses contumes.	*Every* country has its customs.
Remettez *chaque* chose à sa place.	Restore *every* thing to its place.

CONVERSATION VI.

OF PRONOUNS.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT is a Pronoun?

MASTER.

A word which represents persons performing certain parts in the mutual communication of their sentiments.

SCHOLAR.

Assisted by the Parts of Speech you have just treated of, could we not dispense with Pronouns?

MASTER.

By no means: For, though aided by those Parts of Speech and the Verb, without the help of Pronouns we could only converse on subjects which could be neither *You* nor *I*, and which must be expressed by their appropriate names, in order to be accurately distinguished: But were we doomed by Nature never to enjoy the happiness of acquainting one another with our mutual sentiments! Were I never to address you in the language of the heart, and you never to answer me; may I not wish to speak to you of yourelf, and you, in return to me, of myself! Too deeply should we feel the inability to unfold our sentiments to one another, and particularly to those we love—the insufficiency too imperious to yield to the existence of a language without pronouns, so indispensably necessary to enable us to impart the heart-felt joy, the tender affection, or the impulse of friendship! A fond mother, for want of those endearing and expressive terms, in addressing her beloved son, must resort to language inadequate to her feelings! Thus, *Son*, the love that a *mother* feels for a *son*, induces a *mother* to tell a *son*, that a *son* should avoid all that can be hurtful to a *son*, or that can render a *son* odious to the fellow-creatures of a *son*.

This style would indirectly apply to her *son*, and conceal her earnest desire of pouring out the full expression of her cares and solicitude for him. Nature, therefore, inspired her to use such terms as *I*, *me*, *thou*, *thee*, which so happily represent the persons present, and she must have addressed him in the following pathetic and animated sentence:

My son! *my* love compels *me* to admonish *thee* to avoid every thing hurtful, and all that can render *thee* odious to *thy* fellow-creatures.

Observe then, that it is not merely to avoid the intolerable repetition of the same words that Pronouns have been devised; precision alone would require the invention of them. Conversation without Pronouns would frequently be productive of mistakes and confusion: Our language would be imperfect and inaccurate, and the manner of imparting our sentiments tedious and uninteresting; we could only converse with persons whose names were familiar to us, and not with persons the names of whom we know not.

Without insisting any longer on the necessity of this sentimental Part of Speech, which, according to superficial Grammarians, could be dispensed with, I will proceed to the various parts, which we may reciprocally perform in the oral conveyance of our sentiments.

SCHOLAR.

How many parts can we perform?

MASTER.

Three; which vary according to relative circumstances.

SCHOLAR.

Please to give me a fuller explanation.

MASTER.

Cheerfully. For instance, suppose you wanted to inform me that *you had done something;* in speaking of *yourself*, you would say, *I* have done, &c. *I* represents you, by your own declaration, as the author of the action expressed in the sentence; and *I* represents all others, as well as you, who declare individually, what they have done. This expression is, therefore, a *general* term to signify that a person is his own historian of the action he has performed. The part that each performs, being the most interesting, the representative word *I* is called a PRONOUN of the FIRST person, to denote its precedence.

If several, enduring together the same hardships, or doing the same deeds, were to express their sufferings or actions, through the organ of one of their associates, *I*, *Je*, in French, would become *we*, nous, which is termed a Pronoun of the FIRST person plural. Thus, it appears that *Je* and *nous* represented one or more actors in the various scenes they describe, by the relation of what they have themselves done, endured, achieved, &c.

Having attentively listened to the recital of your actions, &c. suppose I now address you in these words: *You have done, &c.* In this phrase, I call you the agent; but in the former, you declare yourself as such, by having said, *I have done, &c.* In my address, you thus play a different part from that you have performed in your own, and to describe this difference, I make use of the word *You*, vous, which, as well as any other Pronoun, is a general term to express the relation of persons under similar circumstances. I should here, however, in strict propriety, use *thou*, tu, which is *singular*, instead of you, vous, which is *plural*, as you are an individual only; but politeness, sanctioned by custom, requires (unless I were intimate with you) that I should address you in the *plural* number. It is then evident, that *you*, vous, is a PRONOUN of the SECOND person *plural*, from the propriety of language; and *singular*, by adoption.

Having conversed with me, some time, you retire, yet unwilling to drop the subject; I continue the conversation, and say to a person present, *he* (alluding to you) has done, &c. Your part in this phrase of mine is different from that I assigned you in my former, as I no longer declare to *yourself* what *you have done*, but to a THIRD person: in this case, I must have recourse to another expression, which is, *he*, il, denominated a Pronoun of the third person *singular*, masculine. Speaking of a female, on a similar occasion, I would use the word *she*, elle; and were I to describe many persons assembled together, I would use the Pronoun *plural*, *they*, of both genders, *ils*, mas. pl. *elles*, fem. pl. were I speaking of things, I would use the same Pronouns in French, having a strict regard to the gender of their Nouns.

Hence you may easily conceive, how the same individual performs three different parts. 1st. When he declares *himself* to be the agent. 2d. When *he* is described as such, by a person addressing him; and finally, when *he* is spoken of to another as the subject of conversation,

Let us now apply those French *Pronouns* (which we shall call ACTIVE) to VERBS, as the former are as intimately connected with the latter, as the Article with the Noun.

ACTIVE PRONOUNS.

1st PERSON	singular.	*Je* or *J'*, before a *vowel* or *h* mute.		*Je* parle. *J'* écris. *J'* hérite..	*I*	speak. write. inherit.
	plural.	*nous*, we.	*nous*.	mangeons. buvons. jouvons.	*we*	eat. drink. play.
2d PERSON	singular.	*tu*, thou.	*tu*.	viens. chantes. ris.	*thou*	comest. singest. laughest.
	singular and plural.	*vous*, you.	*vous*.	marchez. courez. tombez.	*you*	walk. run. fall.

Active Pronouns, continued.

3d Person	singular masc.	*il*,	he, it,	*il*, dira, demandera, appellera. est cassé.	*he* will say. demand call. *it* is broken, (alluding to a glass).
	singular feminine,	*elle*	she, it,	*elle* dansera, plaira, disparaîtra, est cassée,	*she* will dance. please, disappear. *it* is broken, (alluding to a bottle).
	pl. masc.	*ils*	they	*ils* arriveront avec la marée,	*they* will arrive with the tide.
	pl. fem.	*elles*	they	*elles* ne sont pas encore parties,	*they* have not yet set out.

SCHOLAR.

I find that the Pronouns of the first and second persons, singular and plural, are equally used in both genders; why, therefore, should the Pronouns of the third person, in both numbers, admit of two genders?

MASTER.

Because the person of whom we speak, being absent, and not coming under the notice of our senses, we are reduced to the necessity of making the distinction of gender: the first and second persons being always present, there is no occasion to distinguish the sex to which they belong.

SCHOLAR.

Why do you call those Pronouns *active?*

MASTER.

Because they represent individuals as subjects of the action expressed by the Verb in a sentence; and are, therefore, distinct from other Pronouns, which, on account of receiving the action of the Verb, may be called *passive*.

SCHOLAR.

Which are the *passive* Pronouns?

MASTER.

The following, *viz*.

1st PERSON	Singular,	*me*, c.	me, to me.
	Plural,	*nous*, c.	us, to us.
2d PERSON	Singular,	*te*, c.	thee, to thee.
	Sing. Pl.	*vous*, c.	you, to you.

3d PERSON	Singular,	*le*,	m.	him, or it.
		la,	f.	her, or it.
		lui,	c.	to him, to her, or to it.
	Plural,	*les*,	c.	them.
		leur,	c.	to them.
	Sing. & pl.	*se* (Reflect. Pron.)		one self, himself, herself. itself, themselves.

SCHOLAR.

What difference is there between *me* and *moi; te* and *toi*, and *se*, (which you call reflective) and *soi?*

MASTER.

The Pronouns *passive*, *me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, *les*, have a fixed place, which in French is immediately before the Verb; but *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, may be placed at the beginning or end of the sentence, without that close connection with the Verb, of which they seem independent. These latter also admit of Prepositions before them, which the former entirely reject. *Me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous* and *se*, coming between the Verb and the *active* Pronouns *Je*, *tu*, *il*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, which precede them, render the Verb *reflective;* that is to say, they reflect the action of the agent back on itself; *Je m'habille*, &c. I dress myself, &c. *Moi*, *toi*, *soi*, can never render a Verb *reflective*. These distinctions have induced us to subdivide those Pronouns into two classes; the *Passive*, as *me*, *te*, *se*, &c. and the *Disjunctive*, called so, because they are often disjoined or separated from the Verb.—Those Disjunctive Pronouns are sometimes *active*, as may be seen in some of the following phrases.

The following tables of the two classes of *Passive* Pronouns, will merit your attention, and give you a clear idea of their use in speech.

PASSIVE PRONOUNS, EXEMPLIFIED.

Me,	me	Il *me* connaît.	He knows *me*.
		Il ne *me* connaît pas.	He does not know *me*.
		Me connaît-il?	Does he know *me?*
		Ne *me* connaît-il pas?	Does he not know *me?*
Me,	to me	Il *me* donna ce qu'il m'avait promis.	He gave *to me* what he had promised *to me*.
Nous	us.	Elle *nous* aime.	She loves *us*.
	to us.	Elle *nous* l'envoya.	She sent it to *us*.

Te	thee.	Je *te* connais parfaitement.	I know *thee* perfectly.
	to thee.	*Te* l'ai-je donné ?	Have I given it *to thee?*
Vous	you.	Je *vous* en préviens.	I inform *you* of it.
	to you.	Je *vous* en parle.	I speak *to you* of it.
Le,	him.	Il *le* ou *la* reçut avec amitié.	He received *him* or *her* with friendship.
La,	her.		
Lui	to him. to her.	Elle *lui* en envoya.	She sent some *to him* or *her*.
Les,	them.	Je *les* ai vus, *m.* or vues, *f.*	I have seen *them.*
Leur,	to them.	Je *leur* en donnerai.	I will give some *to them.*

PASSIVE PRONOUNS, REFLECTING THE VERB, EXEMPLIFIED.

Me,	myself.	Je *me* connais.	I know *myself.*
Te,	thyself.	Tu *te* connais.	Thou knowest *thyself.*
Se	himself.	Il *se* connaît.	He knows *himself.*
	herself.	Elle *se* connaît.	She knows *herself.*
Nous,	ourselves.	Nous *nous* connaissons.	We know *ourselves.*
Vous,	yourselves.	Vous *vous* connaissez.	You know *yourselves.*
Se,	themselves.	Ils *or* elles *se* connaissent.	They know *themselves.*

DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS, EXEMPLIFIED.

Moi,	I.	Vous et *moi* nous périssons, or, Nous périssons vous & *moi.*	You and *I* perish.
	Me.	Secourez-*moi* dans mon malheur.	Help *me* in my misfortune.
		Vous êtes venu après *moi*.	You are come after *me*.
Nous	us. we.	Sans *nous* vous n'en viendrez pas à bout.	Without *us*, you will not bring it about.
Toi	thou.	*Toi* & lui vous serez punis.	*Thou* and he will be punished.
	thee.	Pour *toi*, avec *toi*, par *toi*.	For *thee*, with *thee*, by *thee.*
Vous,	you.	Malgré *vous*, contre *vous*, &c.	In spite of *you*, against *you*.
Lui,	he.	*Lui* & elle iront en ville.	*He* and she will go to town.
	him.	Devant *lui*, derrière *lui*.	Before *him*, behind *him*.
Elle	she.	*Elle* & toi vous ne l'aurez pas.	*She* and thee shall not have it.
	her.	Je suis heureux auprès d'*elle*.	I am happy near *her*.

Eux, m.p.	they. them.	*Eux* & moi nous sommes d'accord. Avec *eux* je ne crains rien.	*They* and I are agreed. With *them* I fear nothing.
Elles, f. p.	they. them.	*Elles* & vous, vous serez attrapés. Je ne saurais me passer d'*elles*.	*They* and you will be deceived. I cannot do without *them*.

NOTE....The above Disjunctive Pronouns joined to the word *même*, singular, and *mêmes*, plural, acquire a degree of affirmative energy and precision, which they do not possess by themselves. Example: Est-ce lui qui a osé le faire? Is it he who has dared to do it?—Oui: c'est *lui-même*. Yes: it is *he himself*.—Ils l'ont arrêté *eux-mêmes*; they *themselves* have arrested him; and so on. Practice and your own good sense will best direct you in the use of this word.

SCHOLAR.

By what rule am I to be governed in respectively placing *le* or *lui*, *la* or *lui*, and *les* or *leur*, before a Verb?

MASTER.

I will lay down an infallible rule, by which you can avoid mistakes, on such occasions. When you are at a loss to know when *le* or *lui*, should be used in French; take notice, that if the English Verb, corresponding with the French Verb, admit of *to* before him, her, or them, &c. *lui* or *leur* must be used; but, if, on the contrary, it does not admit of that preposition, *le*, *la*, or *les*, are respectively placed before the Verb.

SCHOLAR.

Have you any further observations to make on the Pronouns?

MASTER.

Yes: a few more, which I recommend to your attention.

The Pronoun Disjunctive, *lui*, *elle*, *eux* and *elles*, cannot be used in speaking of things: instead of them we use the Adverbs *y* and *en*, which are so frequently introduced in the French language.

EXAMPLES ON Y.

1. Fuyez les procès; souvent la conscience s'*y* intéresse, la santé s'*y* altère, & les biens s'*y* dissipent.	Avoid law suits; conscience is often concerned *in them*, health impaired *by them*, and property wasted *by them*.
Pensez-vous à mon affaire?	Do you think of my business?
2. Oui; J'*y* pense.	Yes; I think *of it*.
Etes-vous couché sur mon lit?	Are you lying down on my bed?
3. Oui; J'*y* suis couché.	Yes; I am lying down *on it*.

In the first example *y* occurs three times. In the first place, it is put for *à eux;* in the second and third places, for *par eux*.

In the second example *y* serves instead of *à elle*, as relative to *affaire*.

In the third example *y* is put for *sur lui*, as referring to *lit*.

EXAMPLE ON *EN*.

Il *en* parle toujours ; he always speaks *of it* (or of them) alluding to a thing or things inanimate : thus, *en* serves for *de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, *delles*, &c.

Y and *en*, are sometimes used in speaking of persons instead of Pronouns, for the sake of harmony and conciseness of expression.—EXAMPLES,

Pensez-vous à Newton ?	Do you think of Newton ?
Oui, J' *y* pense.	Yes, I think *of him*.

Y is here placed for *à lui*.

Combien avez-vous vu de dames ?	How many ladies have you seen ?
J' *en* ai vu trois.	I have seen three *of them*.

In this last instance *en* is put for *d'elles*.

SCHOLAR.

Before you close this conversation, I desire you to let me know why the denomination of *Personal* is given to Pronouns ?

MASTER.

Because they represent *persons*, that is to say, beings addressing, or addressed by other beings.

SCHOLAR.

From what is the word *person* derived ?

MASTER.

To explain this to you, I must have recourse to the erudition of the profound GEBELIN.

" We are indebted for this word to the Latins. The " Greek and Latin actors never appeared on the stage, " but with masks, which covered the whole head, in the " same manner as a helmet, and those masks were dif- " ferent, according to the parts the actors had to perform. " Those masks were made in such a manner that the " voice became more sonorous and more full, so that it " much better filled the great extent of ancient theatres, " which were fitted for the public at large, and not for the " wealthiest part of the nation only. They were called " from that circumstance *persona*, from two Latin words

" *per* and *sonat*, which means it *sounds loudly*.—The " same name was also given to the actor himself; so " they called him *persona*, all well as his mask. Let us " not be surprized at it; it is the same thing in French; " we call *masques* the persons who appear with a mask; " so we say: les *masques* sont venus; the *masks* are " come: ces *masques* étaient très amusans; these *masks* " were very entertaining.—The sense of the word *persona* was not confined to these limits, it extended to " the part of actors themselves; afterwards to wax figures, which represent persons in the most perfect " manner.—We see, by Warron, that, in the time when " the Latin language had reached its greatest perfection, they used the word *person* in the same sense in " which we take it to distinguish the three parts of the " actors of speech, as speaking, as being spoken to, and " being those of whom one speaks.—Finally, there was " but one step more, to extend this word to every human " being, considered as an actor in the great scene of the " world.—In this sense it designates every human being " living, considered as making use of his active faculties, " fulfilling any function, and performing any part whatever."

I will conclude this conversation by observing, that the word *Pronoun*, in its general acceptation, is a substitute or representative of the Noun; and as such it ought, as well as the Noun, to represent the object alluded to; but, instead of the object, it only represents the relations of subjects in the communication of our thoughts: those relations being only those views of the mind which suit all in similar circumstances, the words, which represent them, having no similitude to the Noun, the representative of particular, sensible objects, cannot be said to be used instead of it. In short, the Noun gives an idea of the subject, but the Pronoun gives only an idea of its relation; two things, which ought not to be confounded.

We should now proceed to the Verb, which, next to the Noun and Adjective, is the most interesting part of speech, if propriety did not make it incumbent on us to restore to the class of Nouns, some words, which the generality of grammarians have hitherto ranked among the Pronouns. These shall make the subject of the next conversation.

NOTE ON THE ORIGIN OF THE PRONOUNS.

AFTER having shown the origin of Nouns—that of the Adjectives—the probable origin of Articles—the reader would justly suspect a chasm in our system were that of the Pronouns left unaccounted for. Let us therefore endeavor to show how they were introduced.

These short significant words were adopted into language after the invention of the Verb, just as the invention of Nouns preceded that of the Articles. Suppose then a language with the parts of speech already described, and the Verb; and let us try to make ourselves understood, without the assistance of Pronouns; the *language of action* will supply us with proper substitutes. The person who speaks, wishing to tell some adventure of which he himself was the hero, would press his breast with his hand, to signify that he was the author of the action which he would afterwards express by the assistance of the Verb. By pressing his breast with vivacity and warmth in order to represent himself with more lively colours, as an actor, such a sound as *Je, I, e, ie* would emanate strongly and distinctly from his lungs. This sound being produced in similar circumstances as those we have mentioned, and being often so repeated, men would naturally associate the action and the sound together; so that the sight of the action would awaken in the mind the idea of the sound, and *vice versâ*. Therefore, at night, the sound owing to the association, was substituted safely to the manual *sign* thus rendered invisible. Many advantages having been gradually discovered in substituting the sound for the sign, while it did not endanger, in the least, the certainty of being understood, the latter was after a while intirely laid aside, and was used only along with the sound now become a *Pronoun,* to give more weight to the assertion or affirmation expressed by the Verb. To support this plausible conjecture, we shall call in the assistance of the profound *Gebelin.*

" The words," says he, " which serve us as Pronouns, *Je, me, tu, te, il,* &c. are common to the European and Asiatic languages; we discover in them, in that respect, the difference, which the revolution of ages and changes of pronunciation have brought about.

" Let us not be surprised at it: the words were too simple—were representative in a manner too striking not to have been transmitted down to us—to have been anihilated.—What is true and natural subsists for ever, because it always pleases, and is always looked after with eagerness These words necessarily occurring in speech could never be forgotten: each repetition was an inducement to repeat them again, as soon as an opportunity should offer, and it offered continually.

" The Pronoun *Je* of the *first* person is formed out of the primitive words *e, ie,* which always designated existence;" as we will show in our conversation on the Verb. " Could a more expressive word be adopted to point out the person that speaks—that presents itself—that says, *here I am?*

" So the Deity is represented as having chosen for his name that significant term meaning *animation, life, breathing.* Hence sprung the word *Ieoua* of the Hebrews, which signifies (word for word) *Je,* I, or I am him who is—Also the IOU-PITER of the Latins, which means, (word for word) le *Pere Je;* the Father *I.*"

The origin of the Pronoun of the *second* person may be accounted for, in the same manner as we did for that of the Pronoun of the *first* person.

Whenever we address a person, we naturally try to arrest attention by stretching our arms towards him. If we do this with energy or force, a sound will emanate, which differently modified by the organ of speech, will give *tu, toe, thou,* &c. and become naturally after a while the substitute for the sign.

With regard to the *third* person, as it is supposed not to be here but there, it is more than probable that a Noun of *place* gave birth to that Pronoun; so we find that in the Latin and French, *ille* and *il* (according to Gebelin) are derived from the primitive *l*, which designated the side, the wing, the place; the Pronoun *lui* comes from the Article *le* and the words *hui* and *hou* which designated also the place.

The English Pronoun *he*, comes therefore probably from *the*, by dropping the *t*; and *the* originated, as we showed from *there*, a Noun of *place*.

CONVERSATION VII.

OF NOUNS, GENERALLY RECEIVED AS PRONOUNS.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT do you mean by *those words*, which you remarked in the foregoing conversation were improperly classed among the Pronouns?

MASTER.

The following Nouns, viz. *on*, *personne*, *rien*, *quiconque*, *autrui*.

SCHOLAR.

What is the signification of the monosyllable *on*, which so frequently occurs in the French?

MASTER.

It corresponds with any of the following words, viz. *one*, *it*, *we*, *they*, *men*, *people*, *any body*, or *any one*, and is used before all the tenses of the French Verbs, in the third person singular, the Verb generally called *impersonal*, excepted, before which, instead of the former, *il* is used.—

EXAMPLE.

$$\textit{On}\ \text{dit}\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textit{one}\\ \textit{any body}\\ \textit{any one}\end{array}\right\}\text{says}\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textit{we}\\ \textit{men}\\ \textit{people}\\ \textit{they}\end{array}\right\}\text{say, or } \textit{it is}\ \text{said.}$$

This monosyllable, as it goes before no other word but a Verb, has been taken for a Pronoun. It is, however, a contraction of the Noun *homme*,* which no one can consider as a Pronoun: *on*, which is an abridgment or contraction thereof, cannot, therefore, be called a Pronoun.

---

* According to SICARD, the following is the manner in which this contraction has been effected:

Tous les hommes,
les hommes,
un homme,
homme,
'omme,
'om,
'on.

It is necessarily used in French before the Verb that expresses what has been done, experienced, &c. by a whole body or class of people, taken collectively; which cannot be accurately rendered in French by the third person plural *ils* or *elles*, especially when the subjects, which Pronouns represent, have not been before mentioned.

Suppose, in conversing with you, I say, *on* mange du bon fruit en France, I signify by the phrase, that the *people* in general eat good fruit in France. If I had said, *ils* mangent, *they* eat, &c. (as it may be expressed in English) it would be vague and unsatisfactory, and the dubious sense of the terms would naturally prompt my hearers to ask me, who eat? and how many eat? &c.

On is sometimes substituted for *quelqu'un*, some body, any body, &c. in the following phrase and the like, as *on* nous écoute, *some body* listens to us.

SCHOLAR.

Convince me that *Personne* is a Noun.

MASTER.

I will.—As this word is always preceded by an Article (except in one instance, where it is understood), such a leading circumstance would have been sufficient to prevent grammarians from ranging it in a class in which it is misplaced.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai vu bien des *personnes.*	I have seen many *persons.*
Une *personne* m'a dit.	A *person* has told me.
Une *personne* ne m'a pas dit.	A *person* has not told me.
* *Personne* ne m'a dit.	No *person, or* nobody has told me.
J'ai recontré une *personne.*	I have met a *person.*
Je n'ai pas rencontré une *personne.*	I have not met a *person.*
Je n'ai rencontré **personne*	I have met no *person, or* nobody.

Personne without the Article and negative signifies *any body.*

Personne a-t-il jamais douté de l'existence de Dieu?	Has *any body* ever doubted the existence of God?

---

* The Article negative *aucune* is understood before *personne.*

SCHOLAR.

Can you prove that *rien*, *quiconque* and *autrui* are Nouns?

MASTER.

Certainly.—*Rien* is no more a Pronoun than *Personne:* it is the accusative *rem* of the Latin Noun *res* (thing), which, in becoming French, has undergone some alteration: it admits the Article as well as *personne*, and then means a *trifling thing*, as, vous vous fâchez pour *un rien;* you fret or become angry for a *mere trifle*. When it is preceded or followed by the negative *ne*, it means nothing.—EXAMPLES.

Je *n'* ai *rien*.	I have *nothing*.
Rien ne l'épouvante.	*Nothing* frightens him.

Without the negative and Article, it signifies *any thing*; as,

Y a-t-il *rien* de plus beau que cela?	Is there *any thing* finer than that?

Quiconque, whoever, or whosoever, in its full extent, implies *every man who:* one of these three terms is a Noun that, of course, must govern: if we are, therefore, to give the elliptical word *quiconque* any denomination, that of Noun unquestionably demands a preference.

Autrui is also an elliptical term, composed of two words, *autre* and *homme*, the first an Adjective, the second a Noun: *autrui* is, therefore, in every sense of the word, a Noun.—EXAMPLE.

Ne faites pas à *autrui* ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît.	Do not unto *others* what you would not they should do unto you.

CONVERSATION VIII.

OF THE VERB.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT is a Verb?

MASTER.

It is an essential and indispensable word which expresses the coexistence of an attribute (that is to say of a quality, colour, form, &c.) with any subject or object whatever.

SCHOLAR.

How many kinds of Verbs are there?

MASTER.

From this definition of a Verb, you may readily conclude that we acknowledge but one; for, *existence* being *simple* and *indivisible*, one Verb alone is sufficient to define it.

SCHOLAR.

What is that Verb?

MASTER.

In all languages, the Verb *to be*, which is called the *Abstract Verb*, as it is separated from all quality, and thus considered in itself as a substance, it is sometimes termed the *Substantive Verb*.

SCHOLAR.

What, then, is meant by an *Adjective Verb;* a mode of expression often used in grammars?

MASTER.

They generally understand thereby, such words as, *to love*, aimer; *to speak*, parler, &c. which are denominated *Verbs*, because the Verb *to be* is interwoven with their very existence, and intimately connected with the word denoting the *quality*, from which they take the appellation of *Adjective Verbs:* we cannot always by the eye perceive the connection, but analysis, and sometimes etymology, will evince that in all languages, such expressions, as *to love*, *to speak*, &c. are by an ellipsis, equivalent to the phrases, *to be loving*, *to be speaking*, &c.

SCHOLAR.

How many kinds of Adjective Verbs are there?

MASTER.

Two: *Active* and *Stationary*. The first are so called, because they comprehend an *active* quality, which extends its influence to a certain object; as, for instance, when I say, *I esteem you*, or rather, *I am esteeming you*, the *active* quality expressed by *esteeming*, is extended to you, who become thereby the object of my esteem.

The second are denominated *stationary*, because the quality does not exceed the limits of the subject, as *I walk*, *I sleep*, *I die:* when I pronounce those Verbs, you will not ask me, what or whom do you walk, &c. because you find no object to which the action extends.

SCHOLAR.

What are those Verbs, which are termed in many grammars, *passive*, *neuter*, *deponent*, *active-pure*, *incho-active*, *transitive*, *intransitive*, *mono-personal*, &c.

MASTER.

The Latins having *Passive Verbs* in their language, grammarians more anxious to follow that language, than give us accurate notions of our own, have obtruded on us a sort of *Passive* Verbs, which the genius of our language will not admit. Such *passives*, in French and English, are rendered by *être*, *to be*, and the past Participle of the Adjective Verb. Example: *Amor*, a Latin passive, is rendered by *I am loved*, Je suis aimé. The *neuter* are our *Stationary Verbs*, and as to the other classes you have mentioned, they only tend to perplex and retard the progress of the learner, by the introduction of unnecessary distinctions and barbarous terms.

SCHOLAR.

How many and what properties appertain to a Verb?

MASTER.

Five; 1st, the person; 2d, number; 3d, tense; 4th, mood, and 5th, conjugation.

SCHOLAR.

As I have acquired a notion of the *person* and *number* of a *Verb*, by attending to your conversation on the *Pronoun*, I now request you will give me some information respecting the tenses.

MASTER.

The tenses are the various *epochs* in which the events related have happened. These epochs compared with each other, and then *collectively* and *respectively* with the *instant de la parole*, or *present utterance of speech* (which is the standard of judging of epochs), will give us the different tenses of a Verb.

SCHOLAR.

How many tenses are there?

MASTER.

Three, general and absolute; the *past*, *present*, and *future*, which, you may perceive, from the very definition of the Verb, exist in every language. When we have occasion to express the *past*, *present*, and *future* existence of a subject, under a certain attribute, those different modes of considering existence will necessarily produce the three tenses above mentioned: The *past* may be represented by *yesterday;* the *present* by *to-day;* and the *future* by *to-morrow.*

But man, too ambitious to convey his sentiments in broken sentences (which would be the case were he confined to those tenses only), and aiming at improvement in language, began to consider the time of events under different relations from the *present utterance of speech*, and to mark his actions, by contrasting them with one another in the current of human affairs.

To express those different views of the mind, he made the Verb undergo various modifications, and thus divided the tenses into moods.

SCHOLAR.

What are moods?

MASTER.

The various ways of considering the action affirmed, either by itself or with respect to other events with which it is compared, with respect to the time of the performance or relation thereof.

SCHOLAR.

How many moods are there?

MASTER.

Five: the *infinitive* (including the *participle*), *indicative* or *affirmative*, *imperative*, *conditional*, and *subjunctive:* I shall define them, after you have attained the conjugation of the Verb *porter*, to carry; and I think you will be pleased with the denominations I have given to tenses; on consideration, they cannot fail to appear more fit and proper than those by which they were formerly distinguished.

SCHOLAR.

What do you signify by the Conjugation of a Verb?

MASTER.

The class it belongs to, which is determined by the termination of the infinitive. The French grammarians, having observed that different Verbs of the same termination in the infinitive, had also similar endings in their corresponding tenses, ranged them into one class, which they termed *Conjugation*, from the Latin word *Conjugatio*, to signify they were yoked by them together, like *oxen* to the *plough.*

We have chosen in this work the Verb *porter*, to carry, as a model for those ending in *er*, in the infinitive: with its various tenses, it will serve you as a model by which the rest of the same conjugation may be formed. This is called the *first*, being by far the most numerous.

Those Verbs ending in *ir*, *oir* and *re*, having been respectively classed in the same manner, form the *second*, *third*, and *fourth* conjugation in the French language. Grammarians, having collected all those Verbs ending in *er*, *ir*, *oir* and *re*, that varied from their models in the terminations of their corresponding tenses, called them *Irregulars* in contrast to the *four* regular conjugations. Methodical as this arrangement may appear, it is, however, a servile imitation of the *Latin* grammarians, who admit only of *four* conjugations.

No longer respecting the inflexible laws of the imperious genius of a truly foreign language, several judicious grammarians, in their attempt to reduce to a smaller number the vast collection of irregulars that this Latino-Franco classification introduced, by selecting several Verbs among them as models for various classes, have successively made the number of regular conjugations amount to *six*, *seven*, *ten*, *eleven*, *twelve* and *thirteen*.

Though I feel happy in doing justice to the many advantages resulting from those new systems of improvement on the *old*, yet much reflection, and (I may venture to say) considerable and successful experience in an extensive line of tuition have authorized me to adopt a mode of conjugation whose simplicity will, I trust, recommend it to the votaries of language.

SCHOLAR.

Be kind enough to impart it to me.

MASTER.

With pleasure. I admit *eight* regular conjugations, and *eight* classes of irregulars, as follow, viz.

EIGHT REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

TABLE I.

1. *er*, as port*er*, to carry.
2. *ir*, as pun*ir*, to punish.
3. *tir*, *vir*, or *mir*, as sen*tir*, ser*vir*, dor*mir*, to feel, to serve, to sleep.
4. *enir*, as t*enir*, to hold.
5. *evoir*, as rec*evoir*, to receive.
6. *re*, as vend*re*, to sell.
7. *uire*, as trad*uire*, to translate.

8. *indre*, as jo*indre*, pe*indre*, cra*indre*, to join, to paint, to fear.

EIGHT CLASSES OF IRREGULARS.

TABLE II.

1. *offrir*, to offer.
2. *courir*, to run.
3. *connaître*, to know.
4. *mettre*, to put.
5. *prendre*, to take.
6. *faire*, to do *or* make.
7. *écrire*, to write.
8. *dire*, to say *or* tell.

By a free command of the conjugation of the foregoing Tables, you will be enabled to conjugate about 4700 Verbs, 4051 of which (including those which have been introduced since the French Revolution) belong to the *first* conjugation, according to ADRIEN SAVARY, who by an accurate inquiry, has made out an ingenious list of most of the French Verbs.

SCHOLAR.

Do the foregoing Tables embrace the conjugation of the whole?

MASTER.

Not entirely; as a few remaining (which I could not possibly class) will be found in the alphabetical order of conjugation in this work, following the eight classes of *Irregulars* above mentioned.

You must now devote your sole attention to the *auxiliary* Verb *avoir*, to have, which should hold the first seat in your memory, and the first place in conjugation, as it essentially serves to form the *past tenses* of almost every Verb in the French language, including also those of the generating Verb *être*, to be.

NECESSITY AND ORIGIN OF THE VERB.

SCARCE had man, in the use of the Adjective, exerted the faculty of abstraction to which he is indebted for all his progress in civilization and in the region of Science, when he found it necessary to restore to objects the qualities he had separated from them.—In reality for what purpose did he wish to speak of objects, if it were not to acquaint his associates with his notions of them, as being possessed of such and such qualities, properties, forms, &c; but *the word* so necessary for this purpose was not in his possession; such a word was to be acquired as would unite in speech the Noun with its Adjective, as objects in the Universe are united with their qualities. This was the word which was thought to be so useful by the Latins that they denominated it VERBUM (the word), giving it the name of the whole species itself, thereby importing that they looked upon it as the *supreme word.*

He was (as yet) to receive from the bountiful hand of Nature that simple and magic sound which alone could give to speech that connection and animation necessary to portray faithfully the objects of Creation, whose dependence, life and motion are so conspicuous—Mean while, he was obliged to mention the word denoting the quality along with the same of the object, to signify that he conceived the object endowed with such quality—But how imperfect this mode was that could not express whether the quality suited *presently*, *had* suited, or *would* suit the object!—An important and absolutely necessary distinction without which no clearness or intelligibility can exist in language.

As it was not in his power to invent *that word*, necessity rendered his natural disposition to observation more acute, by which means he discovered the one nature had designed for him; and it was the only one fit to represent the sign of life, or existence, as it is an imitative word, a perfect ONOMATOPEE.

This word is *hé*, *het*, *aist*, *ast*, *hei*, *est-i*, *est*, *è*, *ew*, *es*, *eis ys*, *is*, *ist*, *iest*; *as* and *es*, *ai*, *eis*, which is found in the Hindoo, Hebrew, Persian, Arabian, Greek, Latin, French, English, Polish, &c.

Man, in the course of his observations, could not have failed to discover the principal share that respiration has in promoting and supporting life, so that where the former commences, the latter of necessity attends; and where it ceases, the flame of life is extinguished. Could he, therefore, have chosen a surer mode of being generally understood, when he would signify the existence of the object of his affections, or of his love; than to have imitated in a strong and impressive manner the sound of respiration itself, so as to produce some of the words above mentioned; such as the *est* of the French, or the *is* of the English, &c.

Man, now in possession of a word that so naturally pictured existence, could not fail to use it to signify the existence or union of qualities with the objects they modify; and in order that language should be a correct picture of objects and their relations, dependencies &c. in nature, it was placed between the Noun and Adjective. When receiving from nature this inestimable gift, he could not fail of being understood by all as soon as he uttered it, because it faithfully represented what every one felt within himself. This new term afterwards became associated with the Pronouns in the following manner.—One said, first, as for instance, the Hindoos, *me is good; thee is good*, &c. observing to place the Pronouns first—But of this monotony some nations soon became tired, and placed a termination borrowed from the Pronoun itself immediately after the Verb, in order to vary the termination of each person. Thus some of the Asiatic nations said *ei-mi* (for the first person) which means *is-me* instead of *me-is: ei-s*, for the second person, whose Pronoun is represented by the final *s*—This Asiatic mode of expression found its way into Greece and Italy with the Oriental Colonies—After a series of alterations, *ei-mi* was changed into *sum* among the Latins, then into *suim** which formed the *suis* of the French; so that the French say now *Je suis*, which seems to have no relation with the primitive word *est* or *ei*, while they have preserved it for their second and third persons, *tu est*, *il est;* and this sufficiently explains why the Pronouns being united with the Verb, were no longer expressed by themselves; in fact, as they were blended with the Verb itself, it would have been useless to repeat them.

But when that union or *solder* was entirely lost sight of or forgotten, the Verb, thus altered, no longer showed the Pronouns: They thought then that it designated by *itself*, *persons*, and, of course, carried in *itself* the force of the Pronouns. This circumstance threw all speculations on the Verb into confusion, and made grammarians ascribe to it the properties of the Pronouns, the principal of which are *Activety* and *Passiveness* that certainly cannot be discovered in the *pure Verb*, which last is the *link* and nothing else between a Noun and its Adjectives. And hence arose the erroneous opinion of some grammarians that Pronouns might be dispensed with.

---

* See Gebelin, Grammaire Universelle.

Besides the two manners above mentioned of combining the Verb with the Pronoun, a third one was formed afterwards; it consisted in using the Verb thus united with the Pronoun, after the Greek fashion, and in having it preceded besides by the Pronoun, either because the Verbal Pronoun had become so much altered, that it was no longer to be known as in *suis*, where they no longer discover any features of the Pronoun *me;* or because some languages that used this third method, were too much used to place the Pronoun before the Verb, to suffer it after. Such are many modern languages, and among others the French in which they say *Je suis, tu es, il est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont;* while the Greeks, in a much shorter way, said, *ei-mi, ei-s, ei* or *esti, es-men, es-te, ei-si,* & *enti.*

FORMATION OF THE

ELLIPTICAL OR ADJECTIVE VERBS.

WE have maintained, which will appear very strange and paradoxical to almost every Grammarian, that there existed but one Verb and that it was *être*, to be; that with regard to the other Verbs they derived their property of expressing existence from the circumstance of being interwoven or blended with that Verb, while they themselves were nothing but the word denoting the quality. We are going to prove, at least for the French language, and that too in a satisfactory manner, that it is the case for all and every one of its Verbs whatever. Let us select for that purpose the Verb *port-er,* which we have adopted as the model of conjugation for the most numerous class of Verbs in the language.

1st. They probably said, *il est portant,* as may be said in English, but not now in French; as that mode of expression, which is the only natural one in the origin of language, has probably been lost through the lapse of ages; a transposition of the Verb *est* took place from the same principle which actuated some nations with regard to the change of place of Pronouns, and they said, *il portant est,* then more concisely, *il port-est* by suppressing the termination *ant* as well as the other *nasal* terminatives *en, ens, ing,* &c. which, as respiration or life is always strongly manifested through the nose, always designated active existence. This they could easily do as *ant* left its property of designating the action of an animate being, associated with the first syllable of *port-ant.* This *port-est* through a love for that brevity which is always by men framing language carried as far as may be consistent with the necessity of being clearly understood, was judiciously changed into *port-e,* in which the word *est* denoting *existence* is reduced to the simple element *e,* while no inconvenience would result therefrom, its value being naturally felt and agreed upon. *Tu es portant* became, in the same manner, *tu portes.* When they came to *je suis portant,* they felt that analogy would be destroyed were they to make that mode of expression undergo the same changes as the two other persons of the Verb; and, therefore, (as also the Pronoun was different) without any fear of being misunderstood they made the first person similar to the third.

Many, I doubt not, may think it extraordinary that I should have begun this decomposition of the Adjective Verbs with the *third* person instead of the *first*, as is done in the conjugations of every grammar. I answer to this charge that in an analysis so important as the present, we have been desirous of carrying exactness as high as we possibly could. In fact, as mankind had to relate what they had seen done, or what they had discovered, before they could express what they felt, it is certainly with the third person that the primitive conjugation began.

In the Present anterior and the Present posterior of the Indicative mood, as well as of the Conditional, the Verb *être*, to be, can be easily traced through every person.

EXAMPLE FOR THE PRESENT ANTERIOR.

J' étais portant	became	Je port-*ét-ais*	then	Je port-ais.
tu étais portant		tu port-*ét-ais*		tu port-ais.
il était portant		il port-*ét-ait*		il port-ait.
nous étions portant		nous port-*ét-ions*		nous port-ions.
vous étiez portant		vous port-*ét-iez*		vous port-iez.
ils étaient portant		ils port-*ét-aient*		ils port-aient.

We trust it is needless to give more examples, to show the existence of *être* in the final termination of almost every person of every French Verb. We have at the end of the French conjugation given a table of those very terminations which the scholar himself may compare with any Verb. This comparison cannot fail of being useful, by causing him to remember the termination common to each Verb, and thereby sheltering his *Orthography* from blunders.

In Greek Verbs, the Verb *être* is also found at the end of some Nouns which thereby become the Elliptical Verbs we have mentioned, with the radical word *Phil*, which means what relates to friendship and love, and the Verb *ei-mi*, to be, which form the last syllables, they said,

Phil-*ei*,	he loves.
Phil-*eis*,	thou lovest.
Phil-*eo*,	I love.
Phil-*eousi*,	they love.
Phil-*eto*,	you love.
Phil-*omen*,	we love.

The same custom prevails in the *Persian* language, the Verb *to be*, is placed at the end of their Nouns to make so many Verbs of them.

Pak which among them means *pure, purity*, blended to the Verb *to be* means *to be pure*.

EXAMPLE.

Pak-*ast*,	he is pure.
Pak-*ai*,	thou art pure.
Pak-*am*,	I am pure.

I shall conclude this article by observing that Nouns, in the English language, with the help of Pronouns and certain general signs to denote the tenses become Verbs without experiencing any change in their termination except in the second and third persons singular of the Indicative, and second person singular of the Present anterior, the finals of which show in, *est*, *s*, the Verb *to be*, which, it seems, could not be banished from the second and third person singular of the Indicative, in which it made its first appearance in the origin of language.

At some future period I shall submit to the public my conjectures how the English language came to have *general signs* to express the various tenses of the Verb, instead of using for that purpose terminations after the manner of most other languages.

CONVERSATION IX.†

ON MOODS AND TENSES.

SCHOLAR.

Having much to ask of you concerning your system of conjugation exemplified in *porter*, please to let me know, first, what you mean by the *Infinitive Mood?*

MASTER.

The *infinitive* simply expresses the action in itself, without any reference to *person* and *number;* from its independence in that respect, it is called *infinitive*, which means unlimitted or unbounded. Another property, which, in a conspicuous manner, distinguishes it from the other moods, is, that it admits of some Prepositions before it like the Nouns, it even like them serves as a subject or object in the phrase, while some infinitives, (in French) will admit the *Article* before them, which we have before observed in treating of them.

SCHOLAR.

What is the *Participle?*

MASTER.

The *Participle*, which some grammarians have made a distinct mood from the *infinitive*, takes its name from the double part it performs, first, by expressing an action, like the Verb; and, secondly, by possessing, like an Adjective, the property of being affirmed of a subject.

SCHOLAR.

What is the *Indicative?*

---

† This Conversation is to be attended to as soon as the conjugation of *porter* be committed to memory.

MASTER.

A mood, the tenses of which directly express the existence of an action at the different times at which it took place, without forming any contrast to that of another; the indicative, with which other moods can seldom dispense, thus becomes independent of them. It is conspicuous in *affirmation* or *narrative*, and hence proceeds the names of *affirmative* or *declarative*, which some grammarians have judiciously conferred on it.

SCHOLAR.

I must confess, I have been much astonished to see the denominations *Present anterior; Present anterior-periodical; Present posterior*, &c. substituted instead of the ancient and established terms, *Imperfect*, *Perfect*, *Preterite*, &c. and I am apprehensive that this innovation, unless supported by decisive argument, will be strenuously oppugned by the disapprobation, if not opposition of tutors in general.

MASTER.

After long and serious deliberation I have adopted the system of the celebrated and profound grammarian *Beauzée*, from a full conviction of its truth and simplicity; but by no means, through the spirit of innovation or the pride of singularity, so baneful to the advancement of science.

By an explication of the use of the tenses, you will be competent to judge and decide, whether my denominations are properly adapted to them, and whether they are calculated to impress the scholar with so clear an idea of their use in language as may demand a preference to former terms.

I call the old Imperfect, *Present anterior;* first, because it expresses an idea of *presence;* and, secondly, because it strikes the mind with a clear notion of anteriority (*or* past); but as the idea of *presence* is the *principal*, while that of *anteriority* is subordinate, we term the *tense* primarily *present* (which seemed a paradox to you) and then *anterior*. An example in a familiar phrase, will, I am confident, convince you of the propriety of this *denomination*. EXAMPLE, *Je portais vos livres*, *lorsque vous m'avez rencontré;* I was carrying your books when you met with me. My meaning is not to inform you that the *action* of *carrying* was elapsed; but that it was on a level or coexisted with the time of *meeting* with you, which makes it *present* with that time. The idea of anteriority (*or* past) afterwards arises from comparing the circumstance with the *present utterance of speech*, which is a fixed point, that determines the different periods of time in our social communications.

The term *Present anterior* is therefore so expressive that it must certainly be adopted by those who would express themselves with precision and conceive accurate notions of the objects of their studies.

The addition of *periodical* to *Present anterior*, to denote the next tense, is also founded in reason, and declarative of the nice distinction between the two tenses, which, being synonymous, in some respect, as they imply both ideas of *presence* and *anteriority*, learners are apt to confound. It is now my business to explain its signification.

Periodical is derived from *period*, a portion of time *circumscribed* and *determinate;* for instance, when I say, *Je portai hier votre lettre à la poste;* I carried your letter *yesterday* to the post-office; the action of *carrying* is transacted within the bounds of *yesterday*, a space of *fixed* time, and is *present* with respect to that day, which I mean to express : Therefore the term *periodical* joined to the two others, fully explaining the meaning of this tense, recommends the adoption thereof. I must observe, however, that you could not say, *Je portai ce matin*, &c. I carried this morning, &c. *J'ai porté ce matin* must be used; as this tense is devoted to the relation of transactions, which happened within such periods as *yesterday*, the *week past*, the *month past*, &c.

As I have now maintained the propriety of using the *Present anterior*, &c. in place of the *Imperfect* and *Preterite;* I have to prove that the *Future* is well termed the *Present posterior;* for instance, *Je porterai demain vos effets à bord du paquebot;* I will carry your goods to-morrow on board the packet: This manner of expression, *Je porterai demain*, is to all intents and purposes a *Present tense* relative to a time posterior to the *immediate utterance of speech*, as it is the equivalent of *Je porte demain*, which is certainly a *Present posterior : Je porterai demain* which fills the place of *Je porte demain*, is, therefore, justly denominated a *Present posterior* and not a *Future*.

By comparing my names of the above tenses (which convey to the mind an immediate idea of their proper application) with the hackneyed words *Imperfect*, *Preterite*, &c. you must conceive that the term *Imperfect* signifies in the English language, that the tense, thus called, is *deficient*, though in a logical sense, it is as complete as any other. The *Preterite*, denoting the *past*, to those acquainted with the Greek, is a denomination very inadequate to its object.

As grammarians had chosen an *Imperfect*, they deemed it proper to introduce a *Perfect*, a more absurd term than the other, as it implies an idea of perfection, which good sense and experience informs us, is not even applicable to the first situation amidst human affairs.

But, what romantic brain could invent the *Pluperfect tense*, which seems to soar above perfection itself thereby vying in the imagination with the Creator of infinite worlds!!!†

SCHOLAR.

Are the *Present anterior-periodical*, and *Present posterior*, always looked upon as *Presents?*

MASTER.

Yes: when compared with the fixed time expressed in the respective sentences above mentioned; but deprived thereof, they can no longer be considered *present;* if compared then with the *present utterance of speech* only, which embraces them as *anterior*, they become *past tenses*, and simply remain so; on this account you may therefore with propriety use (as no determinate period is mentioned) either of the following phrases:

Les Médecins *portaient* des perruques.
Les Médecins *portèrent* des perruques. } Physicians *wore* wigs.
Les Médecins *ont porté* des perruques.

I must observe to you that by depriving also the *Present posterior* of the determinate period, it becomes a real *Future*.

---

† *Condillac* expresses his opinion of the *old terms* for the tenses of Verbs in the following manner: "For my part, I confess I could never understand what they (grammarians) mean by *Imperfect*, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, &c. I understand better what they mean by *Simple* and *Compound*. These names denote, at least, the forms which the Verb assumes when past; but they do not express any of the accessories which the former awake. It is, however, after these accessories the tenses should have been named;" it is what we have endeavoured to do.

SCHOLAR.

I begin to understand the nervous simplicity of your system and already behold the strong light you have thrown on the use of the tenses you mentioned, by the introduction of these terms *anterior*, *anterior periodical*, &c. which you have so fitly adapted to the subject. May these terms, however, be with equal propriety applied to the Past tenses?

MASTER.

Equally; which must finally reconcile you to our system, as well as those who may at first oppose it, on account ofits seeming so novel and extraordinary. I shall have recourse to examples to satisfy you in this respect.

When you say to me, for instance, *J'avais écrit lorsque vous êtes entré;* I had written when you came in: what idea do you want to convey to me? Is it not that your action of writing was elapsed when my coming took place? This coming of mine is *anterior* to your *present utterance of speech* to me, and of course past: It is, therefore, properly denominated, as it expresses a double view of the mind, a *Past anterior.*

The Past anterior-periodical is much the same with the above, except it is *periodical;* that is to say, it expresses the existence of an action *anterior* to another action transacted in a period entirely elapsed; it is exemplified in the following sentence: *J' eus écrit hier à midi;* I had written yesterday at twelve o'clock.

With regard to the *Past posterior*, when you say, J'*aurai fait* mes affaires *quand vous viendrez;* I *shall have done* my business *when you come*: your intention is to show that the action of doing your business is *past* with regard to my coming, which is to take place; it is, therefore, with propriety denominated a *Past posterior.*

SCHOLAR.

Pray, what is the difference between *je porterai* (when without the determinate period it becomes a *Future*), and *je dois porter*, which seems invariably a *Future* in your conjugation.

MASTER.

The difference is this; *je porterai*, indicates a strong resolution of performing the action expressed by the Verb; *je dois porter*, signifies a free and duteous intention of the performance thereof: The *former* in a strict sense corresponds with the words *shall carry;* and the *latter* with the terms *will carry.*

SCHOLAR.

What do you mean by the *Imperative*, which, I think, you have curtailed; as it is conjugated with more *persons* in those grammars I have perused than you introduce?

MASTER.

Man for the purpose of expressing his *command*, *direction*, or *authority*, which he could not do with the help of the *Indicative*, through necessity devised a new mood (which is called the *Imperative)* formed from the *Indicative*, by despoiling its *present tense* of the Pronouns. Thus the *Imperative* was produced, a term energetically expressive of its use, and derived from the Latin word *impero*, I command. You perceive it has no other *persons* than those I have already mentioned, as *no one*, in a rigid point of view, can command or give orders to *himself.* With respect to a *third* person, it is evident that no verbal intercourse can be held with an *absentee.*

The *persons*, grammarians have so liberally bestowed on this mood, belong to the *Subjunctive*, as the Conjunction *que* which is inseparable therefrom, fully evinces.

SCHOLAR.

What is the *Conditional* mood?

MASTER.

It denotes the performance of an action (either present or future) when circumstances favour the actor or actors; hence it is called *Conditional* and essentially differs from the *Indicative* and *Imperative* moods, which entirely reject those circumstances or conditions.

SCHOLAR.

What do you signify by the *Subjunctive?*

MASTER.

A mood always dependent on the *Indicative* and distinguished from it (in French) by the Conjunction *que*, which connects it therewith and from which the name of *Subjunctive* is derived: EXAMPLE, Je desire *que vous portiez* promptement ce billet; I wish *that you may carry* this note expeditiously. You must observe that such Verbs as express the *feelings* of the heart or *affections* of the soul, are the *only ones*, which, preceded by the *Indicative*, may assume the *Subjunctive* form. The others following *que* and the *Indicative* will not admit of it.

EXAMPLE.

J' apprends avec plaisir *que c'est* lui qui *a* obtenu cet emploi lucratif.	I learn with satisfaction *that* it *is* he who *has* obtained this lucrative employment.

Grammarians often mistake the *Conditional* for the *Subjunctive:* as a proof of their error, the *latter* is an entire dependant on the *Indicative*, and by no means adequate to those functions, which the *former* (free from the incumbrance of any other mood) can, with propriety, perform.

CONJUGATION OF THE

AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PAST.
To have, *Avoir.*	To have had, *Avoir eu.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Having, *Ayant.*	Had, *Eu.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I have, *J' ai.*	We have, *Nous avons.*
thou hast, *tu as.*	you, ~~or ye~~ have, *vous avez.*
he ~~or she~~ has, *il* ou *elle a.*	they have, *ils* ~~ou *elles*~~ *ont.*
one, any body, &c. has, *on a.*	we, people, they, &c. have, *on a.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

I had, *J' avais.*	We had, *Nous avions.*
thou hadst, *tu avais.*	you or ye had, *vous aviez.*
he ~~or one~~ had, *il* ~~ou *on*~~ *avait.*	they had, *ils* ou ~~*elles*~~ *avaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had, *J' eus.*	We had, *Nous eûmes.*
thou hadst, *tu eus.*	you ~~or ye~~ had, *vous eûtes.*
he ~~or one~~ had, *il* ou *on eut.*	they had, *ils* ou ~~*elles*~~ *eurent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall (or will)	have.	*J' aurai.*	
thou shalt		*tu auras.*	
he *or* one shall		*il* ou *on aura.*	

PLURAL.

We shall	have.	*Nous aurons.*	
you or ye shall		*vous aurez.*	
they shall		*ils* ou *elles auront.*	

PAST.

SINGULAR.

I have	had.	*J' ai*	*eu.*
thou hast		*tu as*	
he *or* one has		*il* ou *on a*	

PLURAL.

We have	had.	*Nous avons*	*eu.*
you have		*vous avez*	
they have		*ils* ou *elles ont*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I had	had.	*J' avais*	*eu.*
thou hadst		*tu avais*	
he *or* one had		*il* ou *on avait*	

PLURAL.

We had	had.	*Nous avions*	*eu.*
you had		*vous aviez*	
they had		*ils* ou *elles avaient*	

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I had	had.	*J' eus*	*eu.*
thou hadst		*tu eus*	
he *or* one had		*il* ou *on eut*	

PLURAL.

We had	had.	*Nous eûmes*	*eu.*
you had		*vous eûtes*	
they had		*ils* ou *elles eurent*	

PAST POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall (or will)	have had.	*J' aurai*	*eu.*
thou shalt		*tu auras.*	
he *or* one shall		*il* ou *on aura*	

PLURAL.

We shall	have had.	*Nous aurons*	*eu.*
you shall		*vous aurez*	
they shall		*ils* ou *elles auront*	

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

SINGULAR.

I have	just had.	*Je viens**	*d'avoir.*
thou hast		*tu viens*	
he *or* one has		*il* ou *on vient*	

PLURAL.

We have	just had.	*Nous venons*	*d'avoir.*
you have		*vous venez*	
they have		*ils* ou *elles viennent*	

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

I am	to have.	*Je dois**	*avoir.*
thou art		*tu dois*	
he *or* one is		*il* ou *on doit*	

PLURAL.

We are	to have.	*Nous devons*	*avoir.*
you are		*vous devez*	
they are		*ils* ou *elles doivent*	

INSTANT FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

I am going	to have.	*Je vais**	*avoir.*
thou art going		*tu vas*	
he *or* one is going		*il* ou *on va*	

---

* The Verbs *Venir*, *Devoir*, *Aller*, have other tenses used as auxiliaries. They will be found at the end of our conjugations, as we would not, at present, increase the number of tenses, by inserting those which, though useful to be learned, can be at first dispensed with.

PLURAL.

We are going	to have.	*Nous allons*	*avoir.*
you are going		*vous allez*	
they are going		*ils* ou *elles vont*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have (thou)	*Aye.*
Have	*Ayez.*
Let us have	*Ayons.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should, could, would or might	have.	*J' aurais.*
thou shouldst		*tu aurais.*
he *or* one should		*il* ou *on aurait.*

PLURAL.

We should	have.	*Nous aurions.*
you should		*vous auriez.*
they should		*ils* ou *elles auraient.*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

I should, &c.	have had.	*J' aurais*	*eu.*
thou shouldst		*tu aurais*	
he *or* one should		*il* ou *on aurait*	

PLURAL.

We should	have had.	*Nous aurions*	*eu.*
you should		*vous auriez*	
they should		*ils* ou *elles auraient*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may	have.	Que *j' aie.*	have.
that thou mayest		que *tu aies.*	
that he *or* one may		qu *il* ou qu' *on ait*	

PLURAL.

That we may	have.	Que *nous ayons.*
that you may		que *vous ayez.*
that they may		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles aient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might	have.	Que *j' eusse.*	
that thou mightest		que *tu eusses.*	
that he *or* one might		qu' *il* ou qu' *on eût.*	

PLURAL.

That we might	have.	Que *nous eussions.*	
that you might		que *vous eussiez.*	
that they might		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles eussent.*	

PAST.

SINGULAR.

That I may	have had.	Que *j' aie*	*eu.*
that thou mayest		que *tu aies*	
that he *or* one may		qu' *il* ou qu' *on ait*	

PLURAL.

That we may	have had.	Que *nous ayons*	*eu.*
that you may		que *vous ayez*	
that they may		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles aient*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might	have had.	Que *j' eusse*	*eu.*
that thou mightst		que *tu eusses*	
that he *or* one might		qu' *il* ou qu' *on eût*	

PLURAL.

That we might	have had.	Que *nous eussions*	*eu.*
that you might		que *vous eussiez*	
that they might		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles eussent*	

A VERB CONJUGATED *NEGATIVELY,*

EXEMPLIFIED IN *AVOIR.*

WHEN a Verb is used *negatively*, *ne* (or *n'* before a vowel) is placed before it, and is immediately succeeded by one or other of the following words complementary to the negation, viz. *pas* or *point*, *rien*, *jamais*, *personne*, *plus*, which with *ne*, answer, in English, to the words *not*, *nothing*, *never*, *nobody*, *no more* or *no longer*. I must observe to you, that if *no* is followed, in English, by a Substantive, it is rendered, in French, by *pas* or *point* immediately followed by the word *de*.—Example,

I have no stockings, Je *n'* ai *pas* ou *point de* bas.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.		Past.	
Not to have.	*N' avoir pas* ou, *ne pas avoir.*	Not to have had.	*N' avoir pas eu.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.		Past.	
Not having.	*N' ayant pas.*	Not having had.	*N' ayant pas eu.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Singular.

I have not, *Je n' ai pas.*
thou hast not, *tu n' as pas.*
he *or* she has not, *il* ou *elle n' a pas.*
one, any body, &c. has not, *on n' a pas.*

Plural.

We have not, *Nous n' avons pas.*
you have not, *vou n' avez pas.*
they have not, *ils* ou *elles n' ont pas.*
we, people, they, &c. have not, *on n' a pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

Singular.

I had not, *Je n' avais pas*
thou hadst not, *tu n' avais pas.*
he *or* she had not, *il* ou *elle n' avait pas.*

Plural.

We had not, *Nous n' avions pas.*
you had not, *vous n' aviez pas.*
they had not, *ils* ou *elles n' avaient pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I had not, *Je n' eus pas.*
thou hadst not, *tu n' eus pas.*
he *or* she had not, *il* ou *elle n' eut pas.*

PLURAL.

We had not, *Nous n' eûmes pas.*
you had not, *vous n' eûtes pas.*
they had not, *ils* ou *elles n' eurent pas.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall or will	not have.	*Je n' aurai pas.*
thou shalt		*tu n' auras pas.*
he *or* she shall		*il* ou *elle n' aura pas.*

PLURAL.

We shall	not have.	*Nous n' aurons pas.*
you shall		*vous n' aurez pas.*
they shall		*ils* ou *elles n' auront pas.*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

I have	not had.	*Je n' ai pas*	*eu.*
thou hast		*tu n' as pas*	
he *or* she has		*il* ou *elle n' a*	

PLURAL.

We have	not had.	*Nous n' avons pas*	*eu.*
you have		*vous n' avez pas*	
they have		*ils* ou *elles n' ont pas*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I had	not had.	*Je n' avais pas*	*eu.*
thou hadst		*tu n' avais pas*	
he *or* she had		*il* ou *elle n' avait pas*	

PLURAL.

We had	not had.	*Nous n' avions pas*	*eu.*
you had		*vous n' aviez pas*	
they had		*ils* ou *elles n' avaient pas*	

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I had	not had.	*Je n' eus pas*	*eu.*
thou hadst		*tu n' eus pas*	
he *or* she had		*il* ou *elle n' eut pas*	

PLURAL.

We had	not had.	*Nous n' eûmes pas*	*eu.*
you had		*vous n' eûtes pas*	
they had		*ils* ou *elles n' eurent pas*	

PAST POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall not	have had.	*Je n' aurai pas*	*eu.*
thou shalt not		*tu n' auras pas*	
he *or* she shall not		*il* ou *elle n' aura pas*	

PLURAL.

We shall not	have had.	*Nous n' aurons pas*	*eu.*
you shall not		*vous n' aurez pas*	
they shall not		*ils* ou *elles n' auront pas*	

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

SINGULAR.

I have not	just had.	*Je ne viens pas*	*d'avoir.*
thou hast not		*tu ne viens pas*	
he *or* she has not		*il* ou *elle ne vient pas*	

PLURAL.

We have not	just had.	*Nous ne venons pas*	*d'avoir.*
you have not		*vous ne venez pas*	
they have not		*ils* ou *elles ne viennent pas*	

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

I am not	to have.	*Je ne dois pas*	*avoir.*
thou art not		*tu ne dois pas*	
he *or* she is not		*il* ou *elle ne doit pas*	

PLURAL.

We are not	to have.	*Nous ne devons pas*	*avoir.*
you are not		*vous ne devez pas*	
they are not		*ils* ou *elles ne doivent pas*	

INSTANT FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

I am not going	to have.	*Je ne vais pas*	*avoir.*
thou art not going		*tu ne vas pas*	
he *or* she is not going		*il* ou *elle ne va pas*	

PLURAL.

We are not going	to have.	*Nous n' allons pas*	*avoir.*
you art not going		*vous n' allez pas*	
they are not going		*ils* ou *elles ne vont pas*	

IMPERATIVE.

Have thou not, *N' aie pas.*
Let us not have, *N' ayons pas.*
Have not, *N' ayez pas.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should, would, could *or* might	not have.	*Je n' aurais pas.*
thou shouldst		*tu n' aurais pas.*
he *or* she should		*il* ou *elle n' aurait pas.*

PLURAL.

We should	not have.	*Nous n' aurions pas.*
you should		*vous n' auriez pas.*
they should		*ils* ou *elle n' auraient pas.*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

I should not, &c.	have had.	*Je n' aurais pas*	*eu.*
thou shouldst not		*tu n' aurais pas*	
he *or* she should not		*il* ou *elle n' aurait pas*	

PLURAL.

We should not	have had.	*Nous n' aurions pas*	*eu.*
you should not		*vous n' auriez pas*	
they should not		*ils* ou *elles n' auraient pas*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may not	have.	Que *je n' aie pas.*	
that thou mayst not		que *tu n' aies pas.*	
that he *or* she may not		qu' *il* ou qu' *elle n' ait pas.*	

PLURAL.

That we may not	have.	Que *nous n' ayons pas.*	
that you may not		que *vous n' ayez pas.*	
that they may not		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles n' aient pas.*	

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might not	have.	Que *je n' eusse pas.*	
that thou mightst not		que *tu n' eusses pas.*	
that he *or* she might not		qu' *il* ou qu *elle n' eût pas.*	

PLURAL.

That we might not	have.	Que *nous n' eussions pas.*	
that you might not		que *vous n' eussiez pas.*	
that they might not		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles n' eussent pas.*	

PAST.

SINGULAR.

That I may not	have had.	Que *je n' aie pas*	*eu.*
that thou mayst not		que *tu n' aies pas*	
that he *or* she may not		qu' *il* ou qu' *elle n' ait pas*	

PLURAL.

That we may not	have had.	Que *nous n' ayons pas*	*eu.*
that you may not		que *vous n' ayez pas*	
that they may not		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles n' aient pas*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might not	have had.	Que *je n' eusse pas*	*eu.*
that thou mightst not		que *tu n' eusses pas*	
that he *or* she might not		qu' *il* ou qu' *elle n' eût pas*	

PLURAL.

That we might not	have had.	Que *nous n' eussions pas*	*eu.*
that you might not		que *vous n' eussiez pas*	
that they might not		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles n' eussent pas*	

A VERB CONJUGATED *INTERROGATIVELY*,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *AVOIR*.

IN order to conjugate a Verb *interrogatively*, we must, as in English, place the Pronoun immediately after the Verb.

EXAMPLE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Have I? *Ai-je?*	Have we? *Avons-nous?*
hast thou? *as-tu?*	have you? *avez-vous?*
has he *or* she? *a-t-il* ou *a-t-elle?*	have they? *ont-ils* ou *ont-elles?*
has one, &c.? *a-t-on?*	have people, we, &c.? *a-t-on?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Had I? *Avais-je?*	Had we? *Avions-nous?*
hadst thou? *avais-tu?*	had you? *aviez-vous?*
had he *or* she? *avait-il* ou *elle?*	had they? *avaient ils* ou *elles?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Had I? *Eus-je?*	Had we? *Eûmes-nous?*
hadst thou? *eus-tu?*	had you? *eûtes-vous?*
had he *or* she? *eut-il* ou *elle?*	had they? *eurent-ils* ou *elles?*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Shall *or* will I	have?	*Aurai-je?*
shalt thou		*auras-tu?*
shall he *or* she		*aura-t-il* ou *elle?*

PLURAL.

Shall we	have?	*Aurons-nous?*	
shall you		*aurez-vous?*	
shall they		*auront-ils* ou *elles?*	

PAST.

SINGULAR.

Have I	had?	*Ai-je*	*eu?*
hast thou		*as-tu*	
has he *or* she		*a-t-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Have we	had?	*Avons-nous*	*eu?*
have you		*avez-vous*	
have they		*ont-ils* ou *elles*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Had I	had?	*Avais-je*	*eu?*
hadst thou		*avais-tu*	
had he *or* she		*avail-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Had we	had?	*Avions-nous*	*eu?*
had you		*aviez-vous*	
had they		*avaient-ils* ou *elles*	

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

Had I	had?	*Eus-je*	*eu?*
hadst thou		*eus-tu*	
had he *or* she		*eut-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Had we	had?	*Eûmes-nous*	*eu?*
had you		*eûtes-vous*	
had they		*eurent-ils* ou *elles*	

PAST POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Shall or will I	have had?	*Aurai-je*	*eu?*
shalt thou		*auras-tu*	
shall he *or* she		*aura-t-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Shall we	have had?	*Aurons-nous*	*eu?*
shall you		*aurez-vous*	
shall they		*auront ils* ou *elles*	

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

SINGULAR.

Have I just	had?	*Viens-je*	*d'avoir?*
hast thou just		*viens-tu*	
has he *or* she just		*vient-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Have we just	had?	*Venons-nous*	*d'avoir?*
have you just		*venez-vous*	
have they just		*viennent-ils* ou *elles*	

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

Am I to	have?	*Dois-je*	*avoir?*
art thou to		*dois-tu*	
is he *or* she to		*doit-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Are we to	have?	*Devons-nous*	*avoir?*
are you to		*devez-vous*	
are they to		*doivent-ils ou elles*	

INSTANT FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

Am I going to	have?	*Vais-je*	*avoir?*
art thou going to		*vas-tu*	
is he *or* she going to		*va-t-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Are we going to	have?	*Allons-nous*	*avoir?*
are you going to		*allez-vous*	
are they going to		*vont-ils* ou *elles*	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Should, &c. I have? *Aurais-je?*	Should we have? *Aurions-nous?*
shouldst thou have? *aurais tu?*	should you have? *auriez-vous?*
should he *or* she have? *aurait-il* ou *elle?*	should they have? *auraient-ils* ou *elles?*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

Should I have	had ?	*Aurais-je*	*eu ?*
shouldst thou have		*aurais-tu*	
should he *or* she have		*aurait-il* ou *elle*	

PLURAL.

Should we have	had ?	*Aurions-nous*	*eu ?*
should you have		*auriez-vous*	
should they have		*auraient-ils* ou *elles*	

A VERB CONJUGATED

INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *AVOIR*.

IN order to conjugate a Verb *interrogatively* and *negatively*, *ne* must be placed before the Verb conjugated interrogatively, and *pas* or *point*, &c. after it.

EXAMPLE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Have I not? *N' ai-je pas?*
hast thou not? *n' as-tu pas?*
has he *or* she not? *n' a-t-il* ou *elle pas?*
has one, any body, &c. not? *n' a-t-on pas?*

PLURAL.

Have we not? *N' avons-nous pas?*
have you not? *n' avez-vous pas?*
have they not? *n' ont ils* ou *elles pas?*
have we, people, they, &c. not? *n' a-t-on pas?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Had I not? *N' avais-je pas?*
hadst thou not? *n' avais-tu pas?*
had he *or* she not? *n' avait-il* ou *elle pas?*

PLURAL.

Had we not? *N' avions-nous pas ?*
had you not? *n' aviez-vous pas ?*
had they not? *n' avaient-ils* ou *elles pas ?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

Had I not? *N' eus-je pas ?*
hast thou not? *n' eus-tu pas ?*
had he *or* she not? *n' eut-il* ou *elle pas ?*

PLURAL.

Had we not? *N' eûmes-nous pas ?*
had you not? *n' eûtes-vous pas ?*
had they not? *n' eurent-ils* ou *elles pas ?*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Shall or will I not	have ?	*N' aurai-je pas ?*
shalt thou not		*n' auras-tu pas ?*
shall he *or* she not		*n' aura-t-il* ou *elle pas ?*

PLURAL.

Shall we not	have?	*N' aurons-nous pas ?*
shall you not		*n' aurez-vous pas ?*
shall they not		*n' auront-ils* ou *elles pas ?*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

Have I not	had ?	*N' ai-je pas*	*eu ?*
hast thou not		*n' as-tu pas*	
has he *or* she not		*n' a-t-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Have we not	had ?	*N' avons-nous pas*	*eu ?*
have you not		*n' avez-vous pas*	
have they not		*n' ont-ils* ou *elles pas*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Had I not	had ?	*N' avais-je pas*	*eu ?*
hast thou not		*n' avais-tu pas*	
had he *or* she not		*n' avait-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Had we not	had ?	*N' avions-nous pas*	*eu ?*
had you not		*n' aviez-vous pas*	
had they not		*n' avaient-ils* ou *elles pas*	

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

Had I not	had ?	*N' eus-je pas*	*eu ?*
hast thou not		*n' eus-tu pas*	
had he *or* she not		*n' eut-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Had we not	had ?	*N' eûmes-nous pas*	*eu ?*
had you not		*n' eûtes-vous pas*	
had they not		*n' eurent-ils* ou *elles pas*	

PAST POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Shall *or* will I not	have had ?	*N' aurai-je pas*	*eu ?*
shalt thou not		*n' auras-tu pas*	
shall he *or* she not		*n' aura-t-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Shall we not	have had ?	*N' aurons-nous pas*	*eu ?*
shall you not		*n' aurez-vous pas*	
shall they not		*n' auront-ils* ou *elles pas*	

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

SINGULAR.

Have I not just	had ?	*Ne viens-je pas*	*d'avoir ?*
hast thou not just		*ne viens-tu pas*	
has he *or* she not just		*ne vient-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Have we not just	had ?	*Ne venons-nous pas*	*d'avoir ?*
have you not just		*ne venez-vous pas*	
have they not just		*ne viennent-ils* ou *elles pas*	

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

Am I not to	have ?	*Ne dois-je pas*	*avoir ?*
art thou not to		*ne dois-tu pas*	
is he *or* she not to		*ne doit-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Are we not to	have ?	*Ne devons-nous pas*	*avoir ?*
are you not to		*ne devez-vous pas*	
are they not to		*ne doivent-ils* ou *elles pas*	

INSTANT FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

Am I not going to	have ?	*Ne vais-je pas*	*avoir ?*
art thou not going to		*ne vas-tu pas*	
is he *or* she not going to		*ne va-t-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Are we not going to	have ?	*N' allons-nous pas*	*avoir ?*
are you not going to		*n' allez-vous pas*	
are they not going to		*ne vont-ils* ou *elles pas*	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Should I not	have ?	*N' aurais-je pas ?*
shouldst thou not		*n' aurais-tu pas ?*
should he *or* she not		*n' aurait-il* ou *elle pas ?*

PLURAL.

Should we not	have ?	*N' aurions-nous pas ?*
should you not		*n' auriez-vous pas ?*
should they not		*n' auraient-ils* ou *elles pas ?*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

Should I not	have had ?	*N' aurais-je pas*	*eu ?*
shouldst thou not		*n' aurais-tu pas*	
should he *or* she not		*n' aurait-il* ou *elle pas*	

PLURAL.

Should we not	have had ?	*N' aurions-nous pas*	*eu ?*
should you not		*n' auriez-vous pas*	
should they not		*n' auraient-ils* ou *elles pas*	

As the Verb *to be* is rendered by *avoir*, when placed before the following Adjectives, which, in French, become so many Substantives having the import or meaning thereof, I have thought it proper to inform you of that circumstance, as it renders those expressions, that frequently occur, idiomatical with respect to the English language; please, therefore, to commit them to memory.

EXAMPLES.

To be	*Avoir*
hungry,	*faim.*
thirsty,	*soif.*
cold,	*froid.*
warm or hot,	*chaud.*
ashamed,	*honte.*
afraid,	*peur.*
in the right,	*raison.*
in the wrong,	*tort.*
in need,	*besoin.*
so good,	*la bonté.*
obliged,	*obligation.*
prudent,	*de la prudence.*
reserved,	*de la réserve.*
grateful,	*de la reconnaissance.*
ten feet wide.	*dix pieds de longueur* (ou *de long).*
ten feet broad.	*dix pieds de largeur* (ou *de large).*
ten feet deep.	*dix pieds de profondeur.*
ten feet thick.	*dix pieds d' épaisseur.*
ten feet high.	*dix pieds de hauteur* (ou *de haut).*
ten feet in circumference.	*dix pieds de circonference* (ou *de tour).*
twenty years old, &c.	*vingt ans, &c.*
grown old.	*vieilli.*

N. B. *How old* is expressed by *quel âge;* as *how old* are you? *quel âge* avez-vous?

FAMILIAR PHRASES ON THE ABOVE IDIOMS.

He told me that he *was* not *hungry.*	Il m'a dit qu' il n' *avait* pas *faim.*
For my part, I *am* very *hungry.*	Quant à moi, j' *ai* grand' *faim.*
Give me some drink, for I *am thirsty.*	Donnez-moi à boire, car j' *ai soif.*

If you stay here, you will *be cold*.	Si vous restez ici, vous *aurez froid*.
I now begin to *be warm*.	Je commence à présent à *avoir chaud*.
You will *be warmer* in the parlour.	Vous *aurez* plus *chaud* dans le salon.
I *am ashamed* to tell it to you.	J' *ai honte* de vous le dire.
Why should you *be ashamed?*	Pourquoi *auriez*-vous *honte?*
Dont *be afraid;* speak.	N' *ayez* pas *peur;* parlez.
You *are* in the *right* to act thus.	Vous *avez raison* d' agir ainsi.
He has *been* very *wrong* in this business.	Il a *eu* grand *tort* dans cette affaire.
When you *are* in *need* of money, apply to me.	Quand vous *aurez besoin* d' argent, adressez-vous à moi.
Be so *good* as to make me a pen.	*Ayez* la *bonté* de me tailler une plume.
I will *be* much *obliged* to you for it.	Je vous en *aurai* de grandes *obligations*.
He *is* not at all *obliged* to you.	Il ne vous *a* aucune *obligation*.
Be prudent, I entreat you.	*Ayez de la prudence*, je vous en conjure.
You *are* not *reserved* enough with her.	Vous n' *avez* pas assez *de réserve* avec elle.
I *am* very *grateful* for the service you have rendered me.	J' *ai* beaucoup *de reconnaissance* pour le service que vous m' avez rendu.
This carpet *is* seven yards *long*.	Ce tapis *a* six verges *de longueur* (ou *de long*).
The river *is* more than half a mile *broad*.	La rivière *a* plus d'un demi mille *de largeur* (ou *de large*).
Is the well thirty feet *deep?*	Le puits *a*-t-il trente pieds *de profondeur?*
How *thick is* the ice?	Combien la glace *a*-t-elle *d' épaisseur?*
It *is* already five inches *thick*.	Elle *a* déjà cinq pouces *d' épaisseur*.
They say that this steeple *is* one hundred yards *high*.	On dit que ce clocher *a* cinquante toises *de hauteur* (ou *de haut*).
Do you believe he *is* six feet *high?*	Croyez-vous qu' il *ait* six pieds *de haut?*
England *is* above four hundred leagues *in circumference*.	L'Angleterre *a* plus de quatre cents lieues *de circonférence* (ou *de tour*).
How old are you, Miss?	*Quel âge avez*-vous, Mademoiselle?
I shall *be* eighteen next spring.	J' *aurai* dix-huit ans au printems prochain.

I thought that you *were* twenty, at least.	Je croyais que vous *aviez* au moins vingt ans.
He *is grown* very *old* since his misfortunes.	Il *a* beaucou *pvieilli* depuis ses malheurs.

AVOIR conjugated in the *Third Person Singular*, through its Moods and Tenses, with the Adverb of place, *Y* there, exemplified.

Note, that such Verbs as are conjugated in the *Third Person Singular* are called IMPERSONALS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

There is *or* there are, *Il y a.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

There was *or* there were, *Il y avait.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

There was *or* there were, *Il y eut.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

There shall *or* there will be, *Il y aura.*

PAST.

There has *or* there have been, *Il y a eu.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

There had been, *Il y avait eu.*

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

There had been, *Il y eut eu.*

PAST POSTERIOR.

There shall have been, *Il y aura eu.*

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

There has just been, *Il vient d' y avoir.*

FUTURE.

There is *or* there are to be, *Il doit y avoir.*

INSTANT FUTURE.

There is *or* there are going to be, *Il va y avoir.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

There should be, *Il y aurait.*

PAST.

There should have been, *Il y aurait eu.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That there may be, Qu' *il y ait.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

That there might be, Qu' *il y eût.*

PAST.

That there may have been, Qu' *il y ait eu.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

That there might have been, Qu' *il y eût eu.*

NEGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

There is *or* there are not, *Il n' y a pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

There was *or* there were not, *Il n' y avait pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

There was *or* there were not, *Il n' y eut pas.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

There shall not *or* there will not be, *Il n' y aura pas.*

PAST.

There has not *or* there have not been, *Il n' y a pas eu.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

There had not been, *Il n' y avait pas eu.*

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

There had not been, *Il n' y eut pas eu.*

PAST POSTERIOR.

There shall not have been, *Il n' y aura pas eu.*

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

There has not *or* there have not just been, *Il ne vient pas d' y* [*avoir.*

FUTURE.

There is *or* there are not to be, *Il ne doit pas y avoir.*

INSTANT FUTURE.

There is not *or* there are not going to be, *Il ne va pas y avoir.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

There should not be, *Il n' y aurait pas.*

PAST.

There should not have been, *Il n' y aurait pas eu.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That there may not be, Qu' *il n' y ait pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

That there might not be, Qu' *il n' y eût pas.*

PAST.

That there may not have been, Qu' *il n' y ait pas eu.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

That there might not have been, Qu' *il n' y eût pas eu.*

INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Is there *or* are there? *Y a-t-il?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

Was there *or* were there? *Y avait-il?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

Was there *or* were there? *Y eut-il?*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

Shall *or* will there be? *Y aura-t-il?*

PAST.

Has *or* have there been? *Y a-t-il eu?*

PAST ANTERIOR.

Had there been? *Y avait-il eu?*

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

Had there been? *Y eut-t-il eu?*

PAST POSTERIOR.

Shall there have been? *Y aura-t-il eu?*

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Has *or* have there just been? *Vient-il d' y avoir?*

FUTURE.

Is there *or* are there to be? *Doit-il y avoir?*

INSTANT FUTURE.

Is there *or* are there going to be? *Va-t-il y avoir?*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should *or* would there be? *Y aurait-il?*

PAST.

Should there have been? *Y aurait-il eu?*

INTERROGATIVELY & NEGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Is *or* are there not? *N' y a-t-il pas?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

Was *or* were there not? *N' y avait-il pas?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

Was *or* were there not? *N' y eut-il pas?*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

Shall *or* will there not be? *N' y aura-t-il pas?*

PAST.

Has there *or* have there not been? *N' y a-t-il pas eu?*

PAST ANTERIOR.

Had there not been? *N' y avait-il pas eu?*

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

Had there not been? *N' y eut-il pas eu?*

PAST POSTERIOR.

Shall there not have been? *N' y aura-t-il pas eu?*

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Has there *or* have there not just been? *Ne vient-il pas d' y avoir?*

FUTURE.

Is there *or* are there not to be? *Ne doit-il pas y avoir?*

INSTANT FUTURE.

Is there *or* are there not going to be? *Ne va-t-il pas y avoir?*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should there not be? *N' y aurait-il pas?*

PAST.

Should there not have been? *N' y aurait-il pas eu?*

REMARK.

SUCH other Verbs as are conjugated in the Third Person Singular, are called *Impersonals;* this denomination, which was intended to characterize those Verbs, is as improperly applied as any hitherto used by grammarians; for the word *Impersonal* means what is without person, which is not the case with respect to those Verbs, which admit of the Pronoun *il*, and this word represents a subject understood, which must exist; for the Verbs have been introduced to speak of the existence of subjects together with an attribute. When we say, for instance, *il pleut*, it rains; it represents such a subject as *heaven*, *sky*, *atmosphere*, *weather*, &c. and the expression *it rains*, implies that the *heavens* or *skies* issue or pour rain. Had the Romans, when they expressed the word *pluit*, been asked *what rains?* They would have readily replied *cœlum*. The term *Impersonal* can only be given to the *Infinitive Mood*, which, indeed, is without person. *Wailly* and *Beauzée* are, therefore, very correct in denominating the *Infinitive* the *Impersonal* Mood.

FAMILIAR PHRASES

ON *IL Y A.*

There is, *there are*, *some*, *many*, &c.

Is there a stage from Philadelphia to Charleston?	*Y a-t-il* une voiture publique de Philadelphie à Charleston?
There are now about thirty-two millions of souls in France.	*Il y a* maintenant environ trente-deux millions d' ames en France.
There are but nine in England.	*Il* n' *y* en *a* que neuf en Angleterre.
There is a Gentleman below who wants to speak to you.	*Il y a* un Monsieur en bas (*ou* là bas) qui désire vous parler.
There was a great fire yesterday.	*Il y eut* hier un grand incendie.
Was there any body killed?	*Y eut-il* quelqu' un de tué?
No; but *there have been* above twenty people hurt.	Non; mais *il y a eu* plus de vingt personnes de blessées.
There will be a grand display of fire-works next week.	*Il y aura* un grand feu d' artifice la semaine prochaine.
There will be no bonfire on account of this piece of news.	*Il* n' *y aura* pas de feux de joie pour cette nouvelle.
I thought *there would have been* more people.	Je croyais qu' *il y aurait eu* plus de monde.
Some people *have* seen him.	*Il y a des* gens *qui* l' ont vu.
Some authors *pretend* that Homer was born at Smyrna.	*Il y a des* auteurs *qui* prétendent qu' Homère naquit à Smyrne.
Many physicians *are* of this opinion.	*Il y a bien des* médecins *qui* sont de cette opinion.
Many lose our esteem on a close acquaintance.	*Il y a bien des gens qui* perdent à l' examen.
Voltaire died twenty-five years *ago*.	*Il y a* vingt-cinq ans *que* Voltaire est mort.
I have done it ten years *ago*.	*Il y a* dix ans *que* je l' ai fait.
Where were you, six months *ago?*	Où étiez-vous, *il y a* six mois?
I have not been there *these* five years.	*Il y a* cinq ans *que* je n' y ai été.
She arrived there six weeks *ago*.	*Il y a* six semaines *qu'* elle y est arrivée.
How far is it from Versailles to Paris?	*Combien y a-t-il* de Versailles à Paris?
It is four leagues.	*Il y a* quatre lieues.

How far is Lisle from Paris?	*Combien y a-t-il* de Lisle á Paris?
It is one hundred and fifty miles.	*Il y a* cent cinquante milles.
How many regiments *are* there in the army?	*Combien y a-t-il* de régimens dans l' armée?
There are thirty-seven.	*Il y en a* trente-sept.
How many houses *were* burnt?	*Combien y a-t-il eu* de maisons de brûlées?
There were twelve houses burnt.	*Il y a eu* douze maisons de brûlées.
How long have you been in America?	*Combien y a-t-il que* vous êtes en Amérique?
Nine years.	*Il y a* neuf ans.
How long is it since you saw him?	*Combien y a-t-il* que vous ne l' avez vu?
Three months.	*Il y a* trois mois.
How long have you been learning French?	*Combien y a-t-il que* vous apprenez le Français?
I have been learning it *these* six months.	*Il y a* six mois que je l' apprends.

Note, *there is*, or *there are*, may be rendered, in French by *Voilà*, as follows, *viz.*

There is a fine shop.	*Voilà* une belle boutique.
There are handsome ladies.	*Voilà* de belles demoiselles.
There are fine horses.	*Voilà* de beaux chevaux.

CONJUGATION

OF THE

Abstract and Auxiliary Verb *être*, to be.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
To be, *être.*	To have been, *avoir été.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Being, *étant.*	Been, *été.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I am, *Je suis.*	We are, *Nous sommes.*
thou art, *tu es.*	you are, *vous étes.*
he *or* she is, *il* ou *elle est.*	they are, *ils* ou *elles sont.*
one, any body, &c. is, *on est.*	we, people, they, &c. are, *on est.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I was, *J' étais.*	We were, *Nous étions.*
thou wast, *tu étais.*	you were, *vous étiez.*
he *or* she was, *il* ou *elle était.*	they were, *ils* ou *elles étaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I was, *Je fus.*	We were, *nous fûmes.*
thou was, *tu fus.*	you were, *vous fûtes.*
he *or* she was, *il* ou *elle fut.*	they were, *ils* ou *elles furent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I shall or will be, *Je serai.*	We shall be, *Nous serons.*
thou shalt be, *tu seras.*	you shall be, *vous serez.*
he *or* she shall be, *il* ou *elle sera.*	they shall be, *ils* ou *elles seront.*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

I have	been.	*J' ai*	*été.*
thou hast		*tu as*	
he *or* she has		*il* ou *elle a*	

PLURAL.

We have	been.	*Nous avons*	*été.*
you have		*vous avez*	
they have		*ils* ou *elles ont*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I had	been.	*J' avais*	*été.*
thou hadst		*tu avais*	
he *or* she had		*il* ou *elle avait*	

PLURAL.

We had	been.	*Nous avions*	*été.*
you had		*vous aviez*	
they had		*ils* ou *elles avaient*	

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I had	been.	*J' eus*	*été.*
thou hadst		*tu eus*	
he *or* she had		*il* ou *elle eut*	

PLURAL.

We had	been.	*Nous eûmes*	*été.*
you had		*vous eûtes*	
they had		*ils* ou *elles eurent*	

PAST POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall or will have	been.	*J' aurai*	*été.*
thou shalt have		*tu auras*	
he *or* she shall have		*il* ou *elle aura*	

PLURAL.

We shall have	been.	*Nous aurons*	*été.*
you shall have		*vous aurez*	
they shall have		*ils* ou *elles auront*	

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just been, *Je viens d' être*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am to be, *Je dois être*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to be, *Je vais être*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Be (thou), *Sois.*
let us be, *soyons.*
be, *soyez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I should, &c. be, *Je serais.*	We should be, *Nous serions.*
thou shouldst be, *tu serais.*	you should be, *vous seriez.*
he *or* she should be, *il* ou *elle serait.*	they should be, *ils* ou *elles seraient.*

PAST.

I should have been, *J' aurais été*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may	be.	Que *je sois.*
that thou mayest		que *tu sois.*
that he *or* she may		qu' *il* ou qu' *elle soit.*

PLURAL.

That we may	be.	Que *Nous soyons.*
that you may		que *vous soyez.*
that they may		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles soient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might	be.	Que *je fusse.*
that thou mightst		que *tu fusses.*
that he *or* she might		qu' *il* ou qu' *elle fût.*

PLURAL.

That we might	be.	Que *nous fussions.*
that you might		que *vous fussiez.*
that they might		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles fussent.*

PAST.

That I may have been, Que *j' aie été*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have been, Que *j'eusse été*, &c.

ETRE conjugated in the Third Person Singular, through its Tenses, with *ce*, or the Pronoun *il*, as *c' est*, *il est*, it is.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

It is, *C' est* ou *il est.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

It was, *C' était.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

It was, *Ce fut.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

It shall *or* will be, *Ce sera.*

PAST.

It has been, *ç'a été.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

It had been, *ç' avait été.*

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

It had been, *ç' eut été.*

PAST POSTERIOR.

It shall have been, ç' *aura été.*

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

It has just been, *Ce* ou *il vient d' être.*

FUTURE.

It is to be, *Ce doit être.*

INSTANT FUTURE.

It is going to be, *Ce* ou *il va être.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

It should be, *Ce serait*, &c.

PAST.

It should have been, ç' *aurait été*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That it may be, Que *ce soit*, &c.

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

That it may have been, Que ç' *ait été*, &c.

PAST.

That it might be, Que *ce fût*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That it might have been, Que *c' eût été*, &c.

NEGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

It is not, *Ce n' est pas* ou *il n' est pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

It was not, *Ce n' était pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

It was not, *Ce ne fut pas.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

It shall *or* will not be, *Ce ne sera pas.*

PAST.

It has not been, *Ce n' a pas été.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

It had not been, *Ce n' avait pas été.*

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

It had not been, *Ce n' eut pas été.*

PAST POSTERIOR.

It shall not have been, *Ce n' aura pas été.*

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

It has not just been, *Ce ne vient pas d' être.*

FUTURE.

It is not to be, *Ce ne doit pas être.*

INSTANT FUTURE.

It is not going to be, *Ce ne va pas être.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

It should not be, *Ce ne serait pas.*

PAST.

It should not have been, *Ce n' aurait pas été.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That it may not be, Que *ce ne soit pas*, &c.

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

That it may not have been, Que *ce n' ait pas été*, &c.

PAST.

That it might not be, Que *ce ne fût pas*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That it might not have been, Que *ce n' eût pas été*, &c.

INTERROGATIVELY.

Is it, *Est-ce* ou *est-il?*
was it, *était ce?*
was it, *fut-ce?*
will it be, *sera-ce?*
would it be, *serait-ce?*

INTERROGATIVELY & NEGATIVELY.

Is it not, *N' est ce-pas* ou *n' est-il pas?*
was it not, *n' était-ce pas?*
was it not, *ne fut-ce pas?*
will it not be, *ne sera-ce pas?*
would it not be, *ne serait-ce pas?*

FAMILIAR PHRASES

ON *C' EST*, *IL EST*, IT IS.

It is the law that prescribes it.	*C' est* la loi qui l' ordonne.
It is they who have done it.	*Ce sont* eux qui l' ont fait.
Is it you or I who shall speak first ?	*Est-ce* vous ou moi qui parlerai le premier ?
Was it the Phœnicians who invented navigation ?	*Sont-ce* les Phéniciens qui ont inventé la navigation ?
Was it not you who told it ?	*N' est-ce pas* vous qui l' avez dit ?
It was you who had promised to acquaint me with the news.	*C' était* vous qui aviez promis de m' apprendre les nouvelles.
It was his friend who informed him of the particulars of the engagement.	*Ce fut* son ami qui lui apprit les détails du combat.
Was it the grenadiers or the light troops who first entered the city ?	*Fût-ce* les grenadiers ou les troupes légères qui entrèrent les premiers dans la ville ?
It has been the custom among the ancients.	*ç' a été* la coutume parmi les anciens.
They say that *it had been* the result.	On dit que *ç' avait été* le résultat.
If *it had been* another, he would have miscarried in his undertaking.	Si *ç' avait été* un autre, il aurait échoué dans son entreprise.
Is it the fourth regiment that will be embarked ?	*Sera-ce* le quatrième régiment qui sera embarqué ?
It would be a pity to dismiss him.	*Ce serait* dommage de le renvoyer.
It would have been a great loss to the country.	*ç' aurait été* une grande perte pour la patrie.
It is working too much indeed.	*C' est* trop travailler, en vérité.
It was acting without reflection.	*C' était* agir sans réflexion.
It was destroying a fine work.	*C' était* détruire un bel ouvrage.
One must be very barbarous to insult him in his misfortunes.	*C' est être* bien barbare que de l' insulter dans ses malheurs.
To be satisfied with one's lot *is to be* happy.	*C' est* être heureux que d' être content de son sort.
It is not enjoying the pleasures of friendship to love nobody.	*Ce n' est pas* goûter les plaisirs de l' amitié que de n' aimer personne.
It was not encouraging him to continue to speak to him in this manner.	*Ce n' était pas* l' encourager à continuer que de lui parler de cette manière.

It is with you as with him.	*Il en est* de vous comme de lui.
It is with the son as with the mother.	*Il en est* du fils comme de la mère.
It is with poetry as with painting.	*Il en est* de la poësie comme de la peinture.
It is with the diseases of the mind as with those of the body.	*Il en est* des maladies de l' esprit comme de celles du corps.

FIRST REGULAR CONJUGATION IN *ER*,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *PORTER*, TO CARRY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
To carry, *Porter.*	To have carried, *Avoir porté.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Carrying, *Portant.*	Carried, *Porté.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I carry, I do carry *or* I am carrying,* *Je porte.*
thou carriest, &c. *tu portes.*
he *or* she carries, &c. *il* ou *elle porte.*
one, any body, &c. carries, *on porte.*

PLURAL.

We carry, &c. *Nous portons.*
you carry, &c. *vous portez.*
they carry, &c. *ils* ou *elles portent.*
we, people, they, &c. carry, *on porte.*

---

* The scholar will observe that the French have in their conjugation no equivalent for *do* and *did,* and use not the Participle Present as the English do.

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I did carry *or* I was carrying, *Je portais.*
thou didst carry, *tu portais.*
he *or* she did carry, *il* ou *elle portait.*

PLURAL.

We did carry, *Nous portions.*
you did carry, *vous portiez.*
they did carry, *ils* ou *elles portaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I carried, *Je portai.*
thou carriedst, *tu portas.*
he *or* she carried, *il* ou *elle porta.*

PLURAL.

We carried, *Nous portâmes.*
you carried, *vous portâtes.*
they carried, *ils* ou *elles portèrent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall *or* will carry, *Je porterai.*
thou shalt carry, *tu porteras.*
he *or* she shall carry, *il* ou *elle portera.*

PLURAL.

We shall carry, *Nous porterons.*
you shall carry, *vous porterez.*
they shall carry, *ils* ou *elles porteront.*

PAST.

I have carried, &c. *J' ai porté,* &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had carried, &c. *J' avais porté,* &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had carried, &c. *J' eus porté,* &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall *or* will have carried, *J' aurai porté*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just carried, *Je viens de porter*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am to carry, *Je dois porter*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to carry, *Je vais porter*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Carry (thou), *Porte.*
let us carry, *portons.*
carry, *portez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should carry, *Je porterais.*
thou shouldst carry, *tu porterais.*
he *or* she should carry, *il* ou *elle porterait.*

PLURAL.

We should carry, *Nous porterions.*
you should carry, *vous porteriez.*
they should carry, *ils* ou *elles porteraient.*

PAST.

I should have carried, *J' aurais porté*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may	carry.	Que *je porte.*
that thou mayst		que *tu portes.*
that he *or* she may		qu' *il* ou qu' *elle porte.*

PLURAL.

That we may	carry.	Que *nous portions.*
that you may		que *vous portiez.*
that they may		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles portent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might	carry.	Que *je portasse.*
that thou mightst		que *tu portasses.*
that he *or* she might		qu' *il* ou qu' *elle portât.*

PLURAL.

That we might	carry.	Que *nous portassions.*
that you might		que *vous portassiez.*
that they might		qu' *ils* ou qu' *elles portassent.*

PAST.

That I may have carried, Que *j' aie porté*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have carried, Que *j' eusse porté*, &c.

WE shall now request your attention to the conjugation of the reflective Verb *S' Habiller*, to dress one's self: and as such conjugations are difficult to the English learner, we will conjugate *S' Habiller*, at full length, four various ways, after the manner of *avoir*, as a model.

CONJUGATION
OF THE REFLECTIVE VERBS,
EXEMPLIFIED
IN *S' HABILLER*, TO DRESS ONE'S SELF.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To dress one's self, *S' habiller.*

PAST.

To have dressed one's self, *S' être habillé.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Dressing one's self, *S'habillant.*	Dressed, *Habillé.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I dress, I do dress *or* I am dressing myself, *Je m' habille.*
thou dressest thyself, *tu t' habilles.*
he } dresses { himself, *il* } *s' habille.*
she } { herself, *elle* }
one, any body, &c. dresses one's self, *on s' habille.*

PLURAL.

We dress ourselves, *Nous nous habillons.*
you dress yourself *or* yourselves, *vous vous habillez.*
they dress themselves, *ils* } *s' habillent.*
elles }
People, they, &c. dress themselves, *on s' habille.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I did dress *or* I was dressing myself, *Je m' habillais.*
thou didst dress thyself, *tu t' habillais.*
he } did dress { himself, *il* } *s' habillait.*
she } { herself, *elle* }

PLURAL.

We did dress ourselves, *Nous nous habillions.*
you did dress yourselves, *vous vous habilliez.*
they did dress themselves { *ils* } *s' habillaient.*
{ *elles* }

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I dressed myself, *Je m' habillai.*
thou dressedst thyself, *tu t' habillas.*
he dressed himself, *il s' habilla.*

PLURAL.

We dressed ourselves, *Nous nous habillâmes.*
you dressed yourselves, *vous vous habillâtes.*
they dressed themselves, *ils s' habillèrent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall *or* will dress myself, *Je m' habillerai.*
thou shalt dress thyself, *tu t' habilleras.*
he shall dress himself, *il s' habillera.*

PLURAL.

We shall dress ourselves, *Nous nous habillerons.*
you shall dress yourselves, *vous vous habillerez.*
they shall dress themselves, *ils s' habilleront.*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

I have dressed myself, *Je me suis habillé**.
thou hast dressed thyself, *tu t' es habillé.*
he has dressed himself, *il s' est habillé.*
she has dressed herself, *elle s' est habillée.*

PLURAL.

We have dressed ourselves, *Nous nous sommes habillés.*
you have dressed yourselves, *vous vous êtes habillés.*
they have dressed themselves, { *ils se sont habillés.*
{ *elles se sont habillées.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had dressed myself, *Je m' étais habillé*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had dressed myself, *Je me fus habillé*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have dressed myself, *Je me serai habillé*, &c.

---

* The Past Tenses, contrary to the genius of the English language, are formed by adding different Tenses of *être*, to be.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just dressed myself, *Je viens de m' habiller*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am to dress myself, *Je dois m' habiller*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to dress myself, *Je vais m' habiller*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Dress thyself, *Habille-toi.*
let us dress ourselves, *habillons-nous.*
dress $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{yourself,}\\ \text{yourselves,}\end{array}\right\}$ *habillez-vous.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should dress myself, *Je m' habillerais.*
thou shouldst dress thyself, *tu t' habillerais.*
he should dress himself, *il s' habillerait.*

PLURAL.

We should dress ourselves, *Nous nous habillerions.*
you should dress yourselves, *vous vous habilleriez.*
they should dress themselves, *ils s' habilleraient.*

PAST.

I should have dressed myself, *Je me serais habillé*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may dress myself, Que *je m' habille.*
that thou mayst dress thyself, que *tu t' habilles.*
that he may dress himself, qu' *il s' habille.*

PLURAL.

That we may dress ourselves, Que *nous nous habillions.*
that you may dress yourselves, que *vous vous habilliez.*
that they may dress themselves, qu' *ils s' habillent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might dress myself, Que *je m' habillasse.*
that thou mightst dress thyself, que *tu t' habillasses.*
that he may dress himself, qu' *il s' habillât.*

PLURAL.

That we might dress ourselves, Que *nous nous habillassions.*
that you might dress yourselves, que *vous vous habillassiez.*
that they might dress themselves, qu' *ils s' habillassent.*

PAST.

That I may have dressed myself, Que *je me sois habillé*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have dressed myself, Que *je me fusse habillé*, &c.

NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Not to dress one's self, { *Ne s' habiller pas*, ou *ne pas s' habiller.* }

PAST.

Not to have dressed one's self, *Ne s' être pas habillé.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Not dressing one's self, *Ne s' habillant pas.*

PAST.

Not having dressed one's self, *Ne s' étant pas habillé.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I do not dress *or* I am not dressing myself, *Je ne m' habille pas.*
thou dost not dress thyself, *tu ne t' habilles pas.*
he
she } does not dress { himself, herself, } *il* ou *elle ne s' habille pas.*
one, &c. does not dress one's self, *on ne s' habille pas.*

PLURAL.

We do not dress ourselves, *Nous ne nous habillons pas.*
you do not dress yourselves, *vous ne vous habillez pas.*
they do not dress themselves, *ils* ou *elles ne s' habillent pas.*
people, &c. do not dress themselves, *on ne s' habille pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I did not dress *or* I was not dressing myself, } *Je ne m' habillais pas.*
thou didst not dress thyself, *tu ne t' habillais pas.*
he did not dress himself, *il ne s' habillait pas.*

PLURAL.

We did not dress ourselves, *Nous ne nous habillions pas.*
you did not dress yourselves, *vous ne vous habilliez pas.*
they did not dress themselves, *ils ne s' habillaient pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I did not dress myself, *Je ne m' habillai pas.*
thou didst not dress thyself, *tu ne t' habillas pas.*
he did not dress himself, *il ne s' habilla pas.*

PLURAL.

We did not dress ourselves, *Nous ne nous habillâmes pas.*
you did not dress yourselves, *vous ne vous habillâtes pas.*
they did not dress themselves, *ils ne s' habillèrent pas.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall not dress myself, *Je ne m' habillerai pas.*
thou shalt not dress thyself, *tu ne t' habilleras pas.*
he shall not dress himself, *il ne s' habillera pas.*

PLURAL.

We shall not dress ourselves, *Nous ne nous habillerons pas.*
you shall not dress yourselves, *vous ne vous habillerez pas.*
they shall not dress themselves, *ils ne s' habilleront pas.*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

I have not dressed myself, *Je ne me suis pas*
thou hast not dressed thyself, *tu ne t' es pas* } *habillé.*
he has not dressed himself, *il ne s' est pas*

PLURAL.

We have not dressed ourselves, *Nous ne nous sommes pas*
you have not dressed yourselves, *vous ne vous êtes pas* } *habillés.*
they have not dressed themselves, *ils ne se sont pas.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had not dressed myself, *Je ne m' étais pas habillé*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had not dressed myself, *Je ne me fus pas habillé*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall not have dressed myself, *Je ne me serai pas habillé*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have not just dressed myself, *Je ne viens pas de m' habiller*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am not to dress myself, *Je ne dois pas m' habiller*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am not going to dress myself, *Je ne vais pas m' habiller*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Do not dress thyself, *Ne t' habille pas.*
let us not dress ourselves, *ne nous habillons pas.*
do not dress {yourself / yourselves} *ne vous habillez pas.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should, &c. not dress myself, *Je ne m' habillerais pas.*
thou shouldst not dress thyself, *tu ne t' habillerais pas.*
he should not dress himself, *il ne s' habillerait pas.*

PLURAL.

We should not dress ourselves, *Nous ne nous habillerions pas.*
you should not dress yourselves, *vous ne vous habilleriez pas.*
they should not dress themselves, *ils ne s' habilleraient pas.*

PAST.

I should not have dressed myself, *Je ne me serais pas habillé*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may not dress myself, Que *je ne m' habille pas.*
that thou mayst not dress thyself, que *tu ne t' habilles pas.*
that he may not dress himself, qu' *il ne s' habille pas.*

PLURAL.

That we may not dress ourselves, Que *nous ne nous habillions pas.*
that you may not dress yourselves, que *vous ne vous habilliez pas.*
that they may not dress themselves, qu' *ils ne s' habillent pas.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might not dress myself, Que *je ne m' habillasse pas.*
that thou mightst not dress thyself, que *tu ne t' habillasses pas.*
that he might not dress himself, qu' *il ne s' habillât pas.*

PLURAL.

That we might not dress ourselves, Que *nous ne nous habillassions pas.*
that you might not dress yourselves, que *vous ne vous habillassiez pas.*
that they might not dress themselves, qu' *ils ne s' habillassent pas.*

PAST.

That I may not have dressed myself, Que *je ne me sois pas habillé*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might not have dressed myself, Que *je ne me fusse pas habillé*, &c.

INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Do I dress myself? / am I dressing myself? } *M' habillé-je ?*
dost thou dress thyself? *t' habilles-tu ?*
does { he / she } dress { himself? / herself? } *s' habille-t-il ?* / *s' habille-t-elle ?*
does one dress one's self? *s' habille-t-on ?*

PLURAL.

Do we dress ourselves? *Nous habillons-nous ?*
do you dress yourselves? *vous habillez-vous ?*
do they dress themselves? { *s' habillent-ils ?* / *s' habillent-elles ?*
do people dress themselves? *s' habille-t-on ?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Did I dress / was I dressing } myself? *M' habillais-je ?*
didst thou dress thyself? *t' habillais-tu ?*
did he dress himself? *s' habillait-il ?*

PLURAL.

Did we dress ourselves? *Nous habillions-nous ?*
did you dress yourselves? *vous habilliez-vous ?*
did they dress themselves? *s' habillaient-ils ?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

Did I dress myself? *M' habillai-je ?*
didst thou dress thyself? *t' habillas-tu ?*
did he dress himself? *s' habilla-t-il ?*

PLURAL.

Did we dress ourselves? *Nous habillâmes-nous ?*
did you dress yourselves? *vous habillâtes-vous ?*
did they dress themselves? *s' habillèrent-ils ?*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Shall I dress myself? *M' habillerai-je ?*
shalt thou dress thyself? *t' habilleras-tu ?*
shall he dress himself? *s' habillera-t-il ?*

PLURAL.

Shall we dress ourselves? *Nous habillerons-nous ?*
shall you dress yourselves? *vous habillerez-vous ?*
shall they dress themselves? *s' habilleront-ils ?*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

Have I dressed myself? *Me suis-je* }
hast thou dressed thyself? *t' es-tu* } *habillé ?*
has he dressed himself? *s' est-il* }

PLURAL.

Have we dressed ourselves? *Nous sommes-nous* }
have you dressed yourselves? *vous êtes-vous* } *habillés ?*
have they dressed themselves? *se sont-ils* }

PAST ANTERIOR.

Had I dressed myself? *M' étais-je habillé ?* &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

Had I dressed myself? *Me fus-je habillé ?* &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

Shall I have dressed myself? *Me serai-je habillé ?* &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Have I just dressed myself? *Viens-je de m' habiller ?* &c.

FUTURE.

Am I to dress myself? *Dois-je m' habiller ?* &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

Am I going to dress myself? *Vais-je m' habiller ?* &c.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Should I dress myself? *M' habillerais-je ?*
shouldst thou dress thyself? *t' habillerais-tu ?*
should he dress himself? *s' habillerait-il ?*

PLURAL.

Should we dress ourselves? *Nous habillerions-nous ?*
should you dress yourselves? *vous habilleriez-vous ?*
should they dress themselves? *s' habilleraient-ils ?*

PAST.

Should I have dressed myself? *Me serais-je habillé ?* &c.

INTERROGATIVELY & NEGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Do I not dress *or* am I not dressing myself? *Ne m' habillé-je pas ?*
dost thou not dress thyself? *ne t' habilles-tu pas ?*
does he *or* she not dress himself, *or* herself? *ne s' habille-t-il* ou *elle pas ?*
does one not dress one's self? *ne s' habille-t-on pas ?*

PLURAL.

Do we not dress ourselves? *Ne nous habillons-nous pas ?*
do you not dress yourselves? *ne vous habillez-vous pas ?*
do they not dress themselves? *ne s' habillent-ils* ou *elles pas ?*
do people not dress themselves? *ne s' habille-t-on pas ?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Did I not dress *or* was I not dressing myself? *Ne m' habillais-je pas ?*
didst thou not dress thyself? *ne t' habillais-tu pas ?*
did he not dress himself? *ne s' habillait-il pas ?*

PLURAL.

Did we not dress ourselves? *Ne nous habillions-nous pas ?*
did you not dress yourselves? *ne vous habilliez-vous pas ?*
did they not dress themselves ? *ne s' habillaient-ils pas ?*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

Did I not dress myself? *Ne m' habillai-je pas ?*
didst thou not dress thyself? *ne t' habillas-tu pas ?*
did he not dress himself? *ne s' habilla-t-il pas ?*

PLURAL.

Did we not dress ourselves? *Ne nous habillâmes-nous pas ?*
did you not dress yourselves? *ne vous habillâtes-vous pas ?*
did they not dress themselves? *ne s' habillèrent-ils pas ?*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

Shall I not dress myself? *Ne m' habillerai-je pas ?*
shalt thou not dress thyself? *ne t' habilleras-tu pas ?*
shall he not dress himself? *ne s' habillera-t-il pas ?*

PLURAL.

Shall we not dress ourselves, *Ne nous habillerons-nous pas ?*
shall you not dress yourselves, *ne vous habillerez-vous pas ?*
shall they not dress themselves, *ne s' habilleront-ils pas ?*

PAST.

SINGULAR.

Have I not dressed myself? *Ne me suis-je pas*
hast thou not dressed thyself? *ne t' es-tu pas* } *habillé ?*
has he not dressed himself? *ne s' est-il pas*

PLURAL.

Have we not dressed ourselves? *Ne nous sommes-nous pas*
have you not dressed yourselves? *ne vous êtes-vous pas*
have they not dressed themselves? *ne se sont-ils pas?*
} *habillés?*

PAST ANTERIOR.

Had I not dressed myself? *Ne m' étais-je pas habillé?* &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

Had I not dressed myself? *Ne me fus-je pas habillé?* &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

Shall I not have dressed myself? *Ne me serai-je pas habillé?* &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Have I not just dressed myself? *Ne viens-je pas de m' habiller?* &c.

FUTURE.

Am I not to dress myself? *Ne dois-je pas m' habiller*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

Am I not going to dress myself? *Ne vais-je pas m' habiller?* &c.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Should I not dress myself? *Ne m' habillerais-je pas?*
shouldst thou not dress thyself? *ne t' habillerais-tu pas?*
should he not dress himself? *ne s' habillerait-il pas?*

PLURAL.

Should we not dress ourselves? *Ne nous habillerions-nous pas?*
should you not dress yourselves? *ne vous habilleriez vous pas?*
should they not dress themselves? *ne s' habilleraient-ils pas?*

PAST.

Should I not have dressed myself? *Ne ne serais-je pas habillé?* &c.

ESSENTIAL REMARK.

THERE are several French Verbs, which, though reflective, are not rendered as such in English, and considering the frequent mistakes occasioned thereby, we here subjoin a *list* of such Verbs as are *reflective* only in French, which we desire the scholar to commit to memory.

VERBS REFLECTED IN FRENCH.

S' abonner, to compound.
s' abstenir, to abstain.
s' accorder, to agree.
s' assoir, to sit down.
s' attacher, to stick.
se baigner, to bathe.
se baisser, to stoop.
se cantonner, to canton.
se coucher, to go to bed.
se débattre, to struggle.
se déborder, to flow over.
se dédire, to retract.
se défier, to distrust.
se dépêcher, to make haste.
se démetre, to resign.
se désister, to give over.
s' élancer, to leap upon.
s' emparer, to seize upon.
s' emporter, to get in a passion.
s' empresser, to be eager.
s' en aller, to go away.
s' endormir, to fall asleep.
s' enfuir, to run away.
s' enhardir, to grow bold.
s' enraciner, to take root.
s' enrhumer, to catch cold.
s' enrichir, to grow rich.
s' entretenir, to discourse with.
s' envoler, to fly away.
s' épanouir, { to blow, to bloom.
s' esquiver, to steal away.
s' étonner, to wonder.
s' évanouir, to faint away.
s' évaporer, to evaporate.
s' évertuer, to strive.
se fâcher, to get angry.
se faire, to get used.
se farder, to paint.
se fier, to trust.
se figurer, to fancy.
se flétrir, to fade away.
se fondre, to melt.
se formaliser, to find fault.
se glisser, to creep in.
se hâter, to make haste.
s' imaginer, to fancy.
s' ingérer, to intermeddle.
s' insinuer, to steal in.
se lever, to rise.
se liquéfier, to liquefy.
se marier, to marry.
se méfier, to distrust.
se méprendre, to mistake.
se moquer, to laugh at.
se mutiner, to mutiny.
se piquer, to pretend to.
se plaindre, to complain.
se promener, to walk.
se rappeler, to recollect.
se réjouir, to rejoice.
se repentir, to repent.
se reposer, to rest.
se ressouvenir, to remember.
se révolter, to rebel.
se saisir, to seize upon.
se soumettre, to submit.
se souvenir, to remember.
se vanter, to boast.

The scholar knowing, from the conjugation of *porter* and *s' habiller*, that the tenses of a regular Verb are formed from the *Infinitive*, may, by comparing any Verb of that conjugation with *aller*, acquire a very just idea of what constitutes the *irregularity* of a Verb.

CONJUGATION
OF THE
VERB, *ALLER*, TO GO,
WITH ITS RADICAL TENSES ONLY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
To go, *Aller*.	To have gone, *être* allé*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Going, *Allant*.	Gone, *Allé*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I go, I do go, I am going, *Je vais*.	We go, *Nous allons*.
thou goest, &c. *tu vas*.	you go, *vous allez*.
he *or* she goes, *il* ou *elle va*.	they go, *ils* ou *elles vont*.
one, any body, &c. goes, *on va*.	people, we, they, &c. go, *on va*.

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I did go, or I was going, *J' allais*.	We did go, *Nous allions*.
thou didst go, *tu allais*.	you did go, *vous alliez*.
he did go, *il allait*.	they did go, *ils allaient*.

---

* *être* is used instead of *avoir* to form the past tenses; thus we say *je suis allé*, I have gone, and never *j' ai allé*.

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I went, *J' allai.*	We went, *Nous allâmes.*
thou went, *tu allas.*	you went, *vous allâtes.*
he went, *il alla.*	they went, *ils allèrent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I shall, *or* will go, *J' irai.*	We shall go, *Nous irons.*
thou shalt go, *tu iras.*	you shall go, *vous irez.*
he shall go, *il ira.*	they shall go, *ils iront.*

IMPERATIVE.

Go (thou), *Va.*
let us go, *allons.*
go, *allez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I should, would *or* could go, *J' irais.*	We should go, *Nous irions.*
thou shouldst go, *tu irais.*	you should go, *vous iriez.*
he should go, *il irait.*	they should go, *ils iraient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
That I may go, Que *J' aille.*	*That* we may go, Que *nous allions.*
that thou mayst go, que *tu ailles.*	*that* you may go, que *vous alliez.*
that he may go, qu *'il aille.*	*that* they may go, qu *'ils aillent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might go, Que *j' allasse.*
that thou might'st go, que *tu allasses.*
that he might go, qu' *il allât.*

PLURAL.

That we might go, Que *nous allassions.*
that you might go, que *vous allassiez.*
that they might go, qu' *ils allassent.*

THE VERB *REFLECTIVE*

S' EN ALLER, TO GO AWAY, IS THUS CONJUGATED.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To go away, *S' en aller.*

PAST.

To have gone away, *S' en étre allé.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Going away, *S' en allant.*	Gone away, *En allé.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I go, I do go, I am going away, *Je m' en vais* ou *je m' en vas.*
thou goest away, *tu t' en vas.*
he *or* she goes away, *il* ou *elle s' en va.*
one, any body, &c. goes away, *on s' en va.*

PLURAL.

We go away, *Nous nous en allons.*
you go away, *vous vous en allez.*
they go away, *ils* ou *elles s' en vont.*
people, we, they, &c. go away, *on s' en va.*

And so on for the other tenses.

PAST TENSES.

PAST.	I have	gone away.	*Je m' en suis*	*allé.*
PAST ANTERIOR.	I had		*Je m' en étais*	
PAST ANT. PERIODICAL.	I had		*Je m' en fus*	
PAST POSTERIOR.	I shall have		*Je m' en serai*	

IMPERATIVE.

Go (thou) away, *Va-t' en.*
let us go away, *allons-nous en.*
go away, *allez-vous en.*

And so on for the other tenses.

To conclude at once what relates to the IRREGULAR Verbs of this conjugation, we shall inform you that the Verb *Envoyer*, to send, is *irregular*, in two tenses, viz. the *Present Posterior* of the *Indicative* and the *Conditional Present.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall *or* will	send,	*J' enverrai.*
thou shalt		*tu enverras.*
he *or* she shall		*il* ou *elle enverra.*
one, any body, &c. shall		*on enverra.*

PLURAL.

We shall	send,	*Nous enverrons.*
you shall		*vous enverrez.*
they shall		*ils* ou *elles enverront.*
people, we, they, &c. shall		*on enverra.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should	send,	*J' enverrais.*
thou shouldst		*tu enverrais.*
he *or* she should		*il* ou *elle enverrait.*
one, &c. should		*on enverrait.*

PLURAL.

We should	send,	*Nous enverrions.*
you should		*vous enverriez.*
they should		*ils* ou *elles enverraient.*
people, &c. should		*on enverrait.*

NOTE. There are some trifling *irregularities* in the spelling of a few Verbs belonging to this conjugation, among which we shall notice those of the Verbs ending in *ger* and *cer*. In order to soften the pronunciation, these require that *e* should be placed immediately before the vowel *a:* EXAMPLE, *Changer*, *manger* must be written change*a*nt, mang*e*ant; chang*e*ais, mang*e*ais, &c. in the Participle Present and Present Anterior of the Indicative; and not *changant*, *mangant; changais*, *mangais;* which latter method of spelling would be, to a French ear, highly grating. For the same reason, in those in *cer*, as *recommencer*, *avancer*, &c. the letter *c* before *a* takes on the sound of *s*, which is signified by placing under the *c* a cedilla thus *ç*. Hence we must write commençant, avançant; commençais, avançais, with the cedilla. The Verb *Puer*, to stink, which, agreeably to the inflection of a regular Verb, should make in the three first persons, je *pue*, tu *pues*, il *pue*, on the contrary makes je *pus*, tu *pus*, il *put*.

In order to complete the subject of the first conjugation, we shall now present the pupil with a view of the Verb *Geler*, to freeze, as conjugated in the *third person singular* only.

CONJUGATION OF *GELER*, TO FREEZE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To freeze, *Geler*.

PAST.

To have frozen, *Avoir gelé*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Freezing, *Gelant*.	Frozen, *Gelé*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

It freezes, *Il gèle.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

It did freeze, *Il gelait.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

It froze, *Il gela.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

It will freeze, *Il gelera.*

PAST.

It has frozen, *Il a gelé.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

It had frozen, *Il avait gelé.*

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

It had frozen, *Il eut gelé.*

PAST POSTERIOR.

It shall *or* will have frozen, *Il aura gelé.*

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

It has just frozen, *Il vient de geler.*

FUTURE.

It is to freeze, *Il doit geler.*

INSTANT FUTURE.

It is going to freeze, *Il va geler.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

It should freeze, *Il gelerait.*

PAST.

It should have frozen, *Il aurait gelé.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That it may freeze, Qu' *il gèle.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

That it might freeze, Qu' *il gelât.*

PAST.

That it may have frozen, Qu' *il ait gelé.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

That it might have frozen, Qu' *il eût gelé.*

NOTE. The scholar would do well to exercise himself in conjugating, in the third person of each tense, some of the following Verbs, which are all of the first conjugation, viz.

To snow, *Neiger.*	To thaw, *dégeler.*
to thunder, *tonner.*	to hail, *grêler.*
to lighten, *éclairer.*	to drizzle, *bruiner.*
to seem, *sembler.*	to concern, *importer.*
to happen, *arriver.*	to go, *aller*, in such phrases as

Il y va de la vie, de l' honneur; life, honour is at a stake.

SECOND REGULAR CONJUGATION IN *IR*,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *PUNIR*, TO PUNISH.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
To punish, *Punir.*	To have punished, *Avoir puni.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Punishing, *Punissant.*	Punished, *Puni.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I punish, I do punish, *or* I am punishing, *Je punis.*
thou punishest, *tu punis.*
he *or* she punishes, *il* ou *elle punit.*
one, any body, &c. punishes, *on punit.*

PLURAL.

We punish, *Nous punissons.*
you punish, *vous punissez.*
they punish, *ils* ou *elle punissent.*
people, they, &c. punish, *on punit.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I did punish *or* I was punishing, } *Je punissais.*	We did punish, *Nous punissions.*
thou didst punish, *tu punissais.*	you did punish, *vous punissiez.*
he did punish, *il punissait.*	they did punish, *ils punissaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I punished, *Je punis.*	We punished, *Nous punîmes.*
thou punishedst, *tu punis.*	you punished, *vous punîtes.*
he punished, *il punit.*	they punished, *ils punirent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I shall *or* will punish, *Je punirai.*	We shall punish, *Nous punirons.*
thou shalt punish, *tu puniras.*	you shall punish, *vous punirez.*
he shall punish, *il punira.*	they shall punish, *il puniront.*

PAST.

I have punished, *J' ai puni*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had punished, *J' avais puni*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had punished, *J' eus puni*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have punished, *J' aurai puni*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just punished, *Je viens de punir*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am to punish, *Je dois punir*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to punish, *Je vais punir*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Punish (thou), *Punis.*
let us punish, *punissons.*
punish, *punissez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should, &c. punish, *Je punirais.*
thou shouldst punish, *tu punirais.*
he should punish, *il punirait.*

PLURAL.

We should punish, *Nous punirions.*
you should punish, *vous puniriez.*
they should punish, *ils puniraient.*

PAST.

I should have punished, *J' aurais puni*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may punish, Que *je punisse.*
that thou mayst punish, que *tu punisses.*
that he may punish, qu' *il punisse.*

PLURAL.

That we may punish, Que *nous punissions.*
that you may punish, que *vous punissiez.*
that they may punish, qu' *ils punissent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might punish, Que *je punisse.*
that you mightst punish, que *tu punisses.*
that he might punish, qu' *il punît.*

PLURAL.

That we might punish, Que *nous punissions.*
that you might punish, que *vous punissiez.*
that they might punish, qu' *ils punissent.*

PAST.

That I may have punished, Que *j' aie puni*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have punished, Que *j' eusse puni*, &c.

☞ This conjugation, next to the first, is the most extensive, as it embraces about three hundred and seven Verbs.

THIRD REGULAR CONJUGATION,

IN *TIR*, *VIR*, OR *MIR*,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *SENTIR*, TO FEEL.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To feel, *Sentir*.

PAST.

To have felt, *Avoir senti*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Feeling, *Sentant*.	Felt, *Senti*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I feel, I do feel, *or* I am feeling, *Je sens*.
thou feelest, *tu sens*.
he *or* she feels, *il* ou *elle sent*.
one, any body, &c. feels, *on sent*.

PLURAL.

We feel, *Nous sentons*.
you feel, *vous sentez*.
they feel, *ils* ou *elles sentent*.
people, they, &c. feel, *on sent*.

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I did feel *or* I was feeling, } *Je sentais*.	We did feel, *Nous sentions*.
thou didst feel, *tu sentais*.	you did feel, *vous sentiez*.
he did feel, *il sentait*.	they did feel, *ils sentaient*.

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I felt, *Je sentis.*	We felt, *Nous sentîmes.*
thou feltest, *tu sentis.*	you felt, *vous sentîtes.*
he felt, *il sentit.*	they felt, *ils sentirent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I shall *or* will feel, *Je sentirai.*	We shall feel, *Nous sentirons.*
thou shalt feel, *tu sentiras.*	you shall feel, *vous sentirez.*
he shall feel, *il sentira.*	they shall feel, *ils sentiront.*

PAST.

I have felt, *J' ai senti*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had felt, *J' avais senti*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had felt, *J' eus senti*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have felt, *J' aurai senti*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just felt, *Je viens de sentir*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am to feel, *Je dois sentir*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to feel, *Je vais sentir*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Feel (thou), *Sens.*
let us feel, *sentons.*
feel, *sentez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I should, &c. feel, *Je sentirais.*	We should feel, *Nous sentirions.*
thou shouldst feel, *tu sentirais.*	you should feel, *vous sentiriez.*
he should feel, *il sentirait.*	they should feel, *ils sentiraient.*

PAST.

I should have felt, *J' aurais senti*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may feel, Que *je sente.*
that thou mayst feel, que *tu sentes.*
that he may feel, qu' *il sente.*

PLURAL.

That we may feel, Que *nous sentions.*
that you may feel, que *vous sentiez.*
that they may feel, qu' *ils sentent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might feel, Que *je sentisse.*
that thou mightst feel, que *tu sentisses.*
that he might feel, qu' *il sentît.*

PLURAL.

That we might feel, Que *nous sentissions.*
that you might feel, que *vous sentissiez.*
that they might feel, qu' *ils sentissent.*

PAST.

That I may have felt, Que *j' aie senti*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have felt, Que *j' eusse senti*, &c.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED IN THE SAME MANNER WITH *SENTIR*;

TO WIT,

Desservir, To clear the table.	Dites au domestique de *desservir*, Tell the servant to *clear the table.*
Dormir, To sleep.	Le tonnerre m' a empêché de *dormir*, The thunder prevented me from *sleeping*.
Endormir, To lull to sleep.	Nous n' avons jamais pu *endormir* l' enfant, We never could *lull* the child *to sleep*.
S' endormir, To fall asleep.	J' ai commencé à *m' endormir* à la pointe du jour, I began *to fall asleep* at day-break.
Redormir, To sleep again.	Il a *redormi* malgré le bruit, He *slept again* in spite of the noise.
Se rendormir, To fall asleep again.	Quant à moi, je ne me suis pas *rendormi*, As for me, I did not *fall asleep again*.
Mentir, To lie.	Ne le croyez pas, il ne fait que *mentir*, Dont believe him, he does nothing but *lie*.
Démentir, To give the lie.	S' il dit cela, je le *démentirai*, If he says so, I shall *give him the lie*.
Partir, To set out.	On m' a dit qu' il *partirait* à la fin de la semaine, I have been told that he *would set out* at the end of the week.
Repartir, To set out again, (*or*) To reply.	Il a reçu ordre de ne pas *repartir*, He has received orders not to *set out again*. Qu' avez-vous à *repartir* à cela? What have you *to reply* to that?
Se repentir, To repent.	Si vous le faites, vous vous en *repentirez*, If you do it, you *will repent* of it.
Sentir, To feel.	Je *sens* une grande douleur de tête, I *feel* a great pain in my head.
Pressentir, To foresee.	J' ai *pressenti* tous les malheurs qui lui sont arrivés, I *have foreseen* all the misfortunes that have befallen him.
Ressentir, To resent.	Il *ressent* vivement cette insulte, He feelingly *resents* this insult.
Servir, To serve.	Il vous a *servi* avec zèle dans cette affaire, He has *served* you with zeal in this business.
Se servir, To make use.	*Servez-vous* de mon cheval, je vous le prête, *Make use* of my horse, I lend it to you.

Sortir, To go out.	Ne *sortez* pas avant que de me parler, Do not *go out* before you speak to me.
Ressortir, To go out again.	Si vous *ressortez*, je vous punirai, If you *go out again*, I will punish you.

Note. When *ressortir* is used as a law term, it implies, in the English acceptation, to be within the jurisdiction of a court, and is conjugated like *punir*; so are

Assortir, to match.
Répartir, when it signifies to distribute.
Asservir, to enslave a nation.

FOURTH REGULAR CONJUGATION IN *ENIR*,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *TENIR*, TO HOLD.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To hold, *Tenir*.

PAST.

To have held, *Avoir tenu*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Holding, *Tenant*.	Held, *Tenu*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I hold, I do hold *or* I am holding, *Je tiens*.	We hold, *Nous tenons*.
thou holdest, *tu tiens*.	you hold, *vous tenez*.
he *or* she holds, *il* ou *elle tient*.	they hold, *ils* ou *elles tiennent*.
one, any body, &c. holds, *on tient*.	people, we, they, &c. hold, *on tient*.

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

I did hold *or* I was holding, *Je tenais*.	We did hold, *Nous tenions*.
thou didst hold, *tu tenais*.	you did hold, *vous teniez*.
he did hold, *il tenait*.	they did hold, *ils tenaient*.

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I held, *Je tins.*	We held, *Nous tînmes.*
thou heldest, *tu tins.*	you held, *vous tîntes.*
he held, *il tint.*	they held, *ils tinrent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

I shall *or* will hold, *Je tiendrai.*	We shall hold, *Nous tiendrons.*
thou shalt hold, *tu tiendras.*	you shall hold, *vous tiendrez.*
he shall hold, *il tiendra.*	they shall hold, *ils tiendront.*

PAST.

I have held, *J' ai tenu,* &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had held, *J' avais tenu,* &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had held, *J' eus tenu,* &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have held, *J' aurai tenu,* &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just held, *Je viens de tenir,* &c.

FUTURE.

I am to hold, *Je dois tenir,* &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to hold, *Je vais tenir,* &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Hold (thou), *Tiens.*
let us hold, *tenons.*
hold, *tenez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should, &c. hold,	*Je tiendrais.*
thou shouldst hold,	*tu tiendrais.*
he should hold,	*il tiendrait.*

PLURAL.

We should hold,	*Nous tiendrions.*
you should hold,	*vous tiendriez.*
they should hold,	*ils tiendraient.*

PAST.

I should have held, &c. *J' aurais tenu*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may hold,	Que *je tienne.*
that thou mayst hold,	que *tu tiennes.*
that he may hold,	qu' *il tienne.*

PLURAL.

That we may hold,	Que *nous tenions.*
that you may hold,	que *vous teniez.*
that they may hold,	qu' *ils tiennent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might hold,	Que *je tinsse.*
that thou mightst hold,	que *tu tinsses.*
that he might hold,	qu' *il tînt.*

PLURAL.

That we might hold,	Que *nous tinssions.*
that you might hold,	que *vous tinssiez.*
that they might hold,	qu' *ils tinssent.*

PAST.

That I may have held, Que *j' aie tenu*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have held, Que *j' eusse tenu*, &c.

N. B. The scholar will exercise himself in conjugating the Verb *Venir*, so useful an auxiliary in the French conjugation.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *TENIR*.

S' abstenir,	Il s' en est *abstenu* pendant long-tems,
To abstain.	He *abstained* from it a great while.
Appartenir,	Ce bien lui a *appartenu* autrefois,
To belong to.	This estate formerly *belonged* to him.
Contenir,	Tout ce qui est *contenu* sous les cieux,
To contain.	All that is *contained* under the heavens.
Détenir,	Nous l' avons *détenu* comme (*ou* en) otage,
To detain.	We have *detained* him as an hostage.
Entretenir,	Je les ai *entretenus* à mes frais, pendant un an,
To keep up *or* entertain.	I have *entertained* or *kept* them *up* for a year at my expense.
S' entretenir,	Je me suis *entretenu* avec elle toute la soirée,
To converse.	I have *conversed* with her the whole evening.
Maintenir,	Il a été *maintenu* dans sa charge, en dépit d' eux,
To maintain.	He has been *maintained* in his office, in spite of them.
Obtenir,	Il n' a pas *obtenu* ce qu' il demandait,
To obtain.	He has not *obtained* what he asked for.
Retenir,	Nous l' avons *retenu* hier à souper,
To retain.	We *retained* him yesterday to supper.
Soutenir,	Je l' ai *soutenu* dans toutes ses entreprises,
To support.	I have *supported* him in all his undertakings.
Venir,	Ne suis-je pas *venu* à votre secours?
To come.	Have I not *come* to your assistance?
Avenir,	Il est *avenu* ce que j' avais pensé,
To happen.	What I had thought *happened*.
Circonvenir,	Le voleur a *circonvenu* les juges,
To deceive.	The thief has *deceived* the judges.
Convenir,	Nou ne sommes point *convenus* du prix,
To agree.	We did not *agree* about the price.

Convenir,	Cette maison ne m' a pas *convenu*,
To suit.	That house did not *suit* me.
Devenir,	A force d' étudier, il est *devenu* savant,
To become.	By dint of study, he is *become* a learned man.
Redevenir,	Il ne *redeviendra* jamais ce qu' il a été,
To become again.	He will never *become again* what he was.
Disconvenir,	Il n' en est jamais *disconvenu*,
To deny.	He has never *denied* it.
Parvenir,	Il est *parvenu* aux premières charges de la République,
To attain.	He has *attained* the first offices of the Republic.
Prévenir,	Dans les hommes extraordinaires l' âge est *prévenu* par les talens,
To anticipate.	In extraordinary men age is *anticipated* by talents.
Provenir,	Cette maladie est *provenue* du sang,
To come from.	This disorder is *come from* the blood.
Se ressouvenir,	Il ne s' est pas *ressouvenu* de ce que je lui avais dit,
To recollect.	He did not *recollect* what I had told him.
Revenir,	Vous n' êtes pas *revenu* à l' heure convenue,
To come back.	You did not *come back* at the appointed hour.
Se souvenir,	Votre sœur ne s' est pas *souvenue* de sa promesse,
To remember.	Your sister did not *remember* her promise.
Subvenir,	J' ai *subvenu* aux besoins de votre ami,
To relieve.	I have *relieved* your friend in his wants.
Survenir,	Des renforts sont *survenus* pendant la bataille,
To come unexpectedly.	Reinforcements *came unexpectedly* during the battle.

FIFTH REGULAR CONJUGATION IN *EVOIR*,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *RECEVOIR*, TO RECEIVE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To receive, *Recevoir*.

PAST.

To have received, *Avoir reçu*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Receiving, *Recevant.*	Received, *Reçu.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I receive, I do receive *or* I am receiving, *Je reçois.*
thou receivest, *tu reçois.*
he *or* she receives, *il* ou *elle reçoit.*
one, any body, &c. receives, *on reçoit.*

PLURAL.

We receive, *Nous recevons.*
you receive, *vous recevez.*
they receive, *ils* ou *elles reçoivent.*
people, we, they, &c. receive, *on reçoit.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I did receive *or*
I was receiving, } *Je recevais.*
thou didst receive, *tu recevais.*
he did receive, *il recevait.*

PLURAL.

We did receive, *Nous recevions.*
you did receive, *vous receviez.*
they did receive, *ils recevaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I received, *Je reçus.*
thou receivedst, *tu reçus.*
he received, *il reçut.*

PLURAL.

We received, *Nous reçûmes.*
you received, *vous reçûtes.*
they received, *ils reçurent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall *or* will receive, *Je recevrai.*
thou shalt receive, *tu recevras.*
he shall receive, *il recevra.*

PLURAL.

We shall receive, *Nous recevrons.*
you shall receive, *vous recevrez.*
they shall receive, *ils recevront.*

PAST.

I have received, *J' ai reçu*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had received, *J' avais reçu*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had received, *J' eus reçu*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have received, *J' aurai reçu*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just received, *Je viens de recevoir*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am to receive, *Je dois recevoir*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to receive, *Je vais recevoir*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Receive (thou), *Reçois.*
let us receive, *recevons.*
receive, *recevez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should, &c. receive, *Je recevrais.*
thou shouldst receive, *tu recevrais.*
he should receive, *il recevrait.*

PLURAL.

We should receive, *Nous recevrions.*
you should receive, *vous recevriez.*
they should receive, *ils recevraient.*

PAST.

I should have received, *J' aurais reçu*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may receive, Que *je reçoive.*
that thou mayst receive, que *tu reçoives.*
that he may receive, qu' *il reçoive.*

PLURAL.

That we may receive, Que *nous recevions.*
that you may receive, que *vous receviez.*
that they may receive, qu' *ils reçoivent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might	receive,	Que *je reçusse.*
that thou mightst		que *tu reçusses.*
that he might		qu' *il reçût.*

PLURAL.

That we might	receive,	Que *nous reçussions.*
that you might		que *vous reçussiez.*
that they might		qu' *ils reçussent.*

PAST.

That I may have received, Que *j' aie reçu*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have received, Que *j' eusse reçu*, &c.

N. B. The scholar will exercise himself in conjugating the Verb *Devoir*, an auxiliary in the French conjugation.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *RECEVOIR*.

Apercevoir, To perceive.	Je l' ai *aperçue* le premier, I have *perceived* her first.
Concevoir, To conceive.	Je ne *conçois* pas ce que vous me dites, I do not *conceive* what you tell me.
Decevoir, To deceive.	Ses espérances ont été *déçues*, His hopes have been *deceived*.
Devoir, To owe.	Il *doit* beaucoup d' argent à ses créanciers, He *owes* a great deal of money to his creditors.
Devoir, To be obliged.	Tout citoyen *doit* obéir aux lois de son pays, Every citizen *is obliged* (or *ought)* to obey the laws of his country.
Redevoir, To owe still.	Il nous *redoit* environ cinq cents gourdes, He *owes* us *still* about five hundred dollars.
Percevoir, To gather, to collect.	Il est préposé pour *percevoir* les taxes, He is appointed to *collect* the taxes.

The Verb *Falloir* (though irregular) occurring so frequently in speech, we give here its conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *FALLOIR*, TO BE NECESSARY, NEEDFUL OR REQUISITE, VIZ.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To be necessary, *Falloir*.

PAST.

To have been necessary, *Avoir fallu.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
(None.)	Been necessary, *Fallu.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

It is necessary, *Il faut.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

It was necessary, *Il fallait.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

It was necessary, *Il fallut.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

It will be necessary, *Il faudra.*

PAST.

It has been necessary, *Il a fallu.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

It had been necessary, *Il avait fallu.*

PAST POSTERIOR.

It will have been necessary, *Il aura fallu.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

It should be necessary, *Il faudrait.*

PAST.

It should have been necessary, *Il aurait fallu.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That it may be necessary, Qu' *il faille.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

That it might be necessary, Qu' *il fallût.*

PAST.

That it may have been necessary, Qu' *il ait fallu.*

PAST ANTERIOR.

That it might have been necessary, Qu' *il eût fallu.*

SIXTH REGULAR CONJUGATION IN *RE*, EXEMPLIFIED IN *VENDRE.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To sell, *Vendre.*

PAST.

To have sold, *Avoir vendu.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Selling, *Vendant.*	Sold, *Vendu.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I sell, I do sell *or* I am selling, *Je vends.*	We sell, *Nous vendons.*
thou sellest, &c. *tu vends.*	you sell, *vous vendez.*
he *or* she sells, *ill* ou *elle vend.*	they sell, *ils* ou *elles vendent.*
one, any body, &c. sells, *on vend.*	people, we, they, &c. sell, *on vend.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I did sell *or* I was selling, } *Je vendais.*	We did sell, *Nous vendions.*
thou didst sell, *tu vendais.*	you did sell, *vous vendiez.*
he did sell, *il vendait.*	they did sell, *ils vendaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I sold, *Je vendis.*	We sold, *nous vendîmes.*
thou soldest, *tu vendis.*	you sold, *vous vendîtes.*
he sold, *il vendit.*	they sold, *ils vendirent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I shall *or* will sell, *Je vendrai.*	We shall sell, *Nous vendrons.*
thou shalt sell, *tu vendras.*	you shall sell, *vous vendrez.*
he shall sell, *il vendra.*	they shall sell, *ils vendront.*

PAST.

I have sold, *J' ai vendu*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had sold, *J' avais vendu*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had sold, *J' eus vendu*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have sold, *J' aurai vendu*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just sold, *Je viens de vendre*, &c.

FUTURE.

I am to sell, *Je dois vendre*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to sell, *Je vais vendre*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Sell (thou), *Vends.*
let us sell, *vendons.*
sell, *vendez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I should, would *or* could sell, *Je vendrais.*	We should sell, *Nous vendrions.*
thou shouldst sell, *tu vendrais.*	you should sell, *vous vendriez.*
he should sell, *il vendrait.*	they should sell, *ils vendraient.*

PAST.

I should have sold, *J' aurais vendu*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may	sell,	Que *je vende.*
that thou mayst		que *tu vendes.*
that he may		qu' *il vende.*

PLURAL.

That we may	sell,	Que *nous vendions.*
that you may		que *vous vendiez.*
that they may		qu' *ils vendent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might	sell,	Que *je vendisse.*
that thou mightst		que *tu vendisses.*
that he might		qu' *il vendît.*

PLURAL.

That we might	sell,	Que *nous vendissions.*
that you might		que *vous vendissiez.*
that they might		qu' *ils vendissent.*

PAST.

That I may have sold, Que *j' aie vendu*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have sold, Que *j' eusse vendu*, &c.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *VENDRE.*

Attendre, To expect.	Nous l' *attendons* le mois prochain, We *expect* him next month.
Attendre, To wait for.	Pourquoi ne m' avez-vous pas *attendu?* Why did you not *wait for* me?
*Battre**, To beat.	Il a dit en ma présence qu' il le *battrait*, He said in my presence that he would *beat* him.
Abattre, To pull down.	Il a fait *abattre* tous les arbres du chemin, He caused all the trees of the road to be *pulled down.*
Combattre, To fight.	Nous *combattîmes* toute la journée, We *fought* the whole day.
Débattre, To argue.	La question a été *débattue* hier au soir, The question was *argued* yesterday evening.
Rabattre, To abate.	J' en *rabattrai* dix pour cent, I *will abate* ten per cent on it.
Descendre, To come down.	Dites-lui de *descendre*, dès qu' il aura fini, Tell him to *come down*, as soon as he has done.
Condescendre, To comply.	Il ne *condescendra* jamais à cela, He will never *comply* with that.
Fondre, To melt,	On a fait *fondre* toutes les cloches, They have caused all the bells to be *molten.*
Confondre, To confound.	Il ne faut pas *confondre* l' innocent avec le coupable, One must not *confound* the innocent with the guilty.

---

* *Battre* and its derivatives have a trifling *irregularity* in their orthography, as they lose one *t* in the three first persons of the present of the *Indicative*, and second person singular of the *Imperative:* Example, je bats, tu bats, il bat—bats. *Rompre* and its derivatives add *t* for the third person singular of the *Indicative* present: Ex. il romp*t*, corromp*t*, &c.

Morfondre,	Ce vent du nord vous *morfondra,*
To chill.	This north-wind will *chill* you.
Tendre,	*Tendez* la corde dans la cour,
To stretch.	*Stretch* the rope in the yard.
Etendre,	*Etendez* le linge dans le jardin,
To spread.	*Spread* the linen in the garden.
Entendre,	Je n' ai pas *entendu* un mot de ce qu' il a dit,
To hear.	I did not *hear* a word of what he said.
Entendre,	Il *entend* parfaitement bien le Français,
To understand.	He *understands* the French language perfectly well.
Dépendre,	Cela ne *dépend* pas de moi,
To depend.	That does not *depend* on me.
Suspendre,	*Suspendez* mon manteau à un clou,
To suspend, to hang.	*Suspend* (or *hang*) my cloak on a nail.
Pondre,	Nos poules commencent déjà à *pondre,*
To lay eggs.	Our hens already begin to *lay eggs.*
Correspondre,	Je *correspondrai* volontiers avec lui,
To correspond.	I *shall correspond* willingly with him.
Répondre,	Il n' a *répondu* à aucune de mes lettres,
To answer.	He has *answered* none of my letters.
Perdre,	Il a *perdu* tout son argent au jeu,
To lose.	He has *lost* all his money at play.
Répandre,	Vous avez *répandu* du bouillon sur la table,
To spill.	You have *spilled* some broth on the table.
Répandre,	C' est lui qui a *répandu* la nouvelle,
To spread.	It is he who *spread* the news.
Rompre,	Il a eu le bras *rompu* en deux endroits,
To break.	His arm has been *broken* (or *broke*) in two places.
Corrompre,	Le luxe *corrompt* les mœurs des nations,
To corrupt.	Luxury *corrupts* the manners of nations.
Interrompre,	Il m' *interrompit* tout à coup, en disant—
To interrupt.	He *interrupted* me suddenly, by saying—
Tondre,	Avez-vous fait *tondre* vos brebis?
To shear.	Have you had your sheep *shorn?*
Tordre,	Il a *tordu* plusieurs branches de l' arbre,
To twist.	He has *twisted* several branches of the tree.
Survendre,	Il est de l' intérêt d' un marchand de ne jamais *survendre,*
To oversell.	It is the interest of a shopkeeper never to *oversell.*

SEVENTH REGULAR CONJUGATION, IN *UIRE*, EXEMPLIFIED IN *TRADUIRE*, TO TRANSLATE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

To translate, *Traduire.*

PAST.

To have translated, *Avoir traduit.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Translating, *Traduisant.*	Translated, *Traduit.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I translate, I do translate or I am translating, } *Je traduis.*
thou translatest, *tu traduis.*
he *or* she translates, *il* ou *elle traduit.*
one, any body, &c. translates, *on traduit.*

PLURAL.

We translate, *Nous traduisons.*
you translate, *vous traduisez.*
they translate, *ils* ou *elles traduisent.*
people, we, they, &c. translate, *on traduit.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I did translate *or* I was translating, } *Je traduisais.*
thou didst translate, *tu traduisais.*
he did translate, *il traduisait.*

PLURAL.

We did translate, *Nous traduisions.*
you did translate, *vous traduisiez.*
they did translate, *ils traduisaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I translated, *Je traduisis.*
thou translatedst, *tu traduisis.*
he translated, *il traduisit.*

PLURAL.

We translated, *Nous traduisîmes.*
you translated, *vous traduisîtes.*
they translated, *ils traduisirent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall *or* will	translate,	*Je traduirai.*
thou shalt		*tu traduiras.*
he shall		*il traduira.*

PLURAL.

We shall *or* will	translate,	*Nous traduirons.*
you shall		*vous traduirez.*
they shall		*ils traduiront.*

PAST.

I have translated, *J' ai traduit*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had translated, *J' avais traduit*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had translated, *J' eus traduit*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have translated, *J' aurai traduit*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just translated, *Je viens de traduire*, &c.
people, they, &c. have just translated, *on vient de traduire.*

FUTURE.

I am to translate, *Je dois traduire*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to translate, *Je vais traduire*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Translate (thou) *Traduis.*
let us translate, *traduisons*,
translate, *traduisez.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should, could *or* would	translate,	*Je traduirais.*
thou shouldst		*tu traduirais.*
he should		*il traduirait.*

PLURAL.

We should	translate,	*Nous traduirions.*
you should		*vous traduiriez.*
they should		*ils traduiraient.*

PAST.

I should have translated, *J' aurais traduit*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may	translate,	Que *je traduise.*
that thou mayst		que *tu traduises.*
that he may		qu' *il traduise.*

PLURAL.

That we may	translate,	Que *nous traduisions.*
that you may		que *vous traduisiez.*
that they may		qu' *ils traduisent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might	translate,	Que *je traduisisse.*
that thou mightst		que *tu traduisisses.*
that he might		qu' *il traduisît.*

PLURAL.

That we might	translate,	Que *nous traduisissions.*
that you might		que *vous traduisissiez.*
that they might		qu' *ils traduisissent.*

PAST.

That I may have translated, &c. Que *j' aie traduit*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have translated, &c. Que *j' eusse traduit*, &c.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *TRADUIRE*.

Conduire,	*Conduisez*-le à la ville,
To conduct.	*Conduct* him to town.
Econduire,	Je lui avais fait une demande, mais il m' a *éconduit*,
To refuse, (applied to persons only).	I had asked him a favour, but he has *refused* me.
Reconduire,	Je la *reconduisis* chez elle,
To wait upon one back.	I *waited upon* her, *back* to her house.
Construire,	Sa maison n' est pas encore *construite*,
To build.	His house is not yet *built*.
Cuire,	Ce boulanger *cuit* beaucoup de pain tous les jours,
To bake.	This baker *bakes* a great deal of bread every day.
Recuire,	Il faut faire *recuire* cette viande,
To bake again.	This meat must be *baked again*.

Déduire,	Il faut *déduire* ce que vous avez dépensé,
To deduct.	You must *deduct* what you have spent.
Détruire,	Le tems *détruit* les bâtimens les plus solides,
To destroy.	Time *destroys* the most solid buildings.
Enduire,	Je ferai *enduire* les murailles de plâtre,
To plaster.	I will get the walls *plastered.*
Induire,	Ne l' écoutez pas, il vous *induira* à mal faire,
To excite.	Do not listen to him, he *will excite* you to do wrong.
Instruire,	On commence à bien *instruire* la jeunesse,
To instruct.	They begin to *instruct* youth well.
Introduire,	Il introduisit les ennemis dans la place,
To introduce *or* to bring into.	He *brought* the enemy into the place.
Luire,	Le soleil n' a pas *lui* (no *t*) aujourd' hui,
To shine.	The sun did not *shine* to day.
Reluire,	Tout ce qui *reluit* n' est pas or,
To glitter.	All that *glitters* is not gold.
Nuire,	Je n' ai jamais *nui* (no *t*) à personne,
To hurt *or* to do wrong	I have never done *wrong* to any body.
Produire,	Mon argent ne me *produit* aucun intérêt,
To produce.	My money does not *produce* me any interest.
Réduire,	Cette famille est *réduite* à la mendicité,
To reduce.	This family is *reduced* to beggary.
Séduire,	Il la *séduisit* par ses promeses,
To seduce.	He *seduced* her by his promises.

EIGHTH AND LAST

REGULAR CONJUGATION, IN *INDRE*,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *CRAINDRE*, TO FEAR.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
To fear, *Craindre.*	To have feared, *Avoir craint.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Fearing, *Craignant.*	Feared, *Craint.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I fear, I do fear *or* I am fearing, *Je crains.*
thou fearest, *tu crains.*
he *or* she fears, *il* ou *elle craint.*
one, any body, &c. fears, *on craint.*

PLURAL.

We fear, *Nous craignons.*
you fear, *nous craignez.*
they fear, *ils* ou *elles craignent.*
people, they, &c. fear, *on craint.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I did fear *or*
I was fearing, } *Je craignais.*
thou didst fear, *tu craignais.*
he did fear, *il craignait.*

PLURAL.

We did fear, *Nous craignions.*
you did fear, *vous craigniez.*
they did fear, *ils craignaient.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

SINGULAR.

I feared, *Je craignis.*
thou fearedst, *tu craignis.*
he feared, *il craignit.*

PLURAL.

We feared, *Nous craignîmes.*
you feared, *vous craignîtes.*
they feared, *ils craignirent.*

PRESENT POSTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

I shall *or* will fear, *Je craindrai.*
thou shalt fear, *tu craindras.*
he shall fear, *il craindra.*

PLURAL.

We shall fear, *Nous craindrons.*
you shall fear, *vous craindrez.*
they shall fear, *ils craindront.*

PAST.

I have feared, *J' ai craint*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had feared, *J' avais craint*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

I had feared, *J' eus craint*, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR.

I shall have feared, *J' aurai craint*, &c.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just feared, *Je viens de craindre*, &c.
one has just feared, *on vient de craindre*.

FUTURE.

I am to fear, *Je dois craindre*, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE.

I am going to fear, *Je vais craindre*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Fear (thou), *Crains*.
let us fear, *craignons*.
fear, *craignez*.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

I should fear, *Je craindrais*.
thou shouldst fear, *tu craindrais*.
he should fear, *il craindrait*.

PLURAL.

We should fear, *Nous craindrions*.
you should fear, *vous craindriez*.
they should fear, *ils craindraient*.

PAST.

I should have feared, *J' aurais craint*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

That I may fear, Que *je craigne.*
that thou mayst fear, que *tu craignes.*
that he may fear, qu' *il craigne.*

PLURAL.

That we may fear, Que *nous craignions.*
that you may fear, que *vous craigniez.*
that they may fear, qu' *ils craignent.*

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

SINGULAR.

That I might fear, Que *je craignisse.*
that thou mightst fear, que *tu craignisses.*
that he might fear, qu' *il craignît.*

PLURAL.

That we might fear, Que *nous craignissions.*
that you might fear, que *vous craignissiez.*
that they might fear, qu' *ils craignissent.*

PAST.

That I may have feared, Que *j' aie craint*, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

That I might have feared, Que *j' eusse craint*, &c.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *CRAINDRE*.

Astreindre, To oblige, to force.	Il m' a *astreint* à le faire, He has *obliged* (or *forced)* me to do it.

Ceindre,	Vous ne savez pas *ceindre* une épée,
To gird.	You do not know how to *gird* on a sword.
Enceindre,	Il a fait *enceindre* ses champs de fossés,
To inclose.	He caused his fields to be *inclosed* with ditches.
Contraindre,	Je le *contraignis* à m' obéir,
To force.	I *forced* him to obey me.
Enfreindre,	Ils ont les premiers *enfreint* le traité,
To infringe.	They have first *infringed* the treaty.
Feindre,	Je *feignais* de ne point l' écouter,
To pretend.	I *pretended* not to listen to him.
Joindre,	J' ai entendu dire qu' il n' avait pu le *joindre*,
To join.	I heard that he could not *join* him.
Déjoindre,	Ces planches sont toutes *déjointes*,
To disjoin.	These boards are quite *disjoined* (or *disjointed)*.
Enjoindre,	Je lui *enjoignis* de garder le silence,
To order.	I *ordered* him to be silent.
Peindre,	Il a *peint* toute la famille,
To draw, to paint.	He has *drawn* (or *painted)* the whole family.
Restreindre,	Je l' ai *restreint* un peu dans sa dépense,
To limit.	I have *limited* him a little in his expenses.
Teindre,	Je ferai *teindre* cet habit en noir,
To dye.	I will have this coat *dyed* black.
Se déteindre,	Ne craignez-vous pas qu' il ne *se déteigne?*
To lose colour.	Are you not afraid that it will *lose* its *colour?*
Eteindre,	N' *éteignez* pas encore la chandelle,
To put out.	Do not yet *put* the candle *out*.
Atteindre,	Je ne saurais l' *atteindre*,
To reach.	I cannot *reach* it.

THE FOLLOWING ARE THE

EIGHT CLASSES OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CLASS, AS *OFFRIR*, TO OFFER.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To offer, Offrir. *Offering*, Offrant. *Offered*, Offert.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle.*	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles.*
J' offr-e,	es,	e.	Offr-ons,	ez,	ent.
offr-ais,	ais,	ait.	offr-ions,	iez,	aient.
offr-is,	is,	it.	offr-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
offr-irai,	ras,	ra.	offr-irons,	irez,	iront.

IMPERATIVE.

Offre,	Offr-ons,	ez.

CONDITIONAL.

Offri-rais,	rais,	rait.	Offr-irions,	iriez,	raient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Offr-e,	es,	e.	Offr-ions,	iez,	ent.
offr-isse,	isses,	ît.	offr-issions,	issiez,	issent.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS
ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *OFFRIR*.

Mésoffrir,	Vous n' aurez pas ce drap, vous en *mésoffrez* trop,

To undervalue.	You shall not have this cloth, you *undervalue* it too much.
Couvrir,	Les charpentiers n' ont pas encore *couvert* ma maison,
To cover.	The carpenters have not yet *covered* my house.
Découvrir,	On a *découvert* son dessein à tems,
To discover.	They have *discovered* his design in time.
Recouvrir,	*Recouvrez*-le, ou bien il se refroidira,
To cover up.	*Cover* it *up*, or else it will get cold.
Ouvrir,	Je vous défends de lui *ouvrir* la porte,
To open.	I forbid you to *open* the door to him.
Entr' ouvrir,	J' avais laissé une des fenêtres de la salle *entr' ouverte*,
To open a little.	I had left one of the parlour windows *open a little*.
Rouvrir,	Je n' ai jamais pu *rouvrir* le buffet,
To open again.	I could never *open* the cupboard *again*.
Souffrir,	Vous avez eu tort de *souffrir* une pareille insolence.
To suffer.	You were wrong to *suffer* such a piece of insolence.

SECOND CLASS, AS *COURIR*, TO RUN.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To run, Courir. *Running*, Courant. *Run*, Couru.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle.*	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles.*
Cou-rs,	rs,	rt.	Cour-ons,	ez,	ent.
cour-ais,	rais,	rait.	cour-ions,	iez,	aient.
cour-us,	us,	ut.	cour-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
cour-rai,	ras,	ra.	cour-rons,	rez,	ront.

IMPERATIVE.

Cours.	Cour-ons,	ez.

CONDITIONAL.

Cour-rais,	rais,	rait.	Cour-rions,	riez,	raient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle*.	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles*.
Cour-e,	es,	e.	Cour-ions,	iez,	ent.
cour-usse,	usses,	ût.	cour-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *COURIR*.

Accourir, To run to.	Il *accourut* en hâte à son secours, He *ran* in haste to his assistance.
Concourir, To concur.	Tout a *concouru* à sa perte, Every thing *concurred* to his loss (*or* disadvantage).
Discourir, To discourse.	Il *discourut* sur l' immortalité de l' ame, He *discoursed* on the immortality of the soul.
Encourir, To incur.	Il a *encouru* la peine prononcée par la loi, He has *incurred* the penalty pronounced by the law.
Parcourir, To over-run.	Il *parcourra* toute l' Europe, He *will over-run* all Europe.
Recourir, To have recourse to.	Je ne *recourrai* pas à lui dans mon malheur, I will not *have recourse to* him in my misfortune.
Secourir, To succour.	Il faut *secourir* ses amis dans le besoin, We must *succour* our friends in want.

THIRD CLASS, AS *CONNAITRE*, TO KNOW.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To know, Connaître. *Knowing*, Connaissant. *Known*, Connu.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle*.	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles*.
Conn-ais,	ais,	aît.	Conn-aissons,	aissez,	aissent.
conn-aissais,	aissais,	aissait.	conn-aissions,	aissiez,	aissaient.
conn-us,	us,	ut.	conn-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
conn-aîtrai,	aîtras,	aîtra.	conn-aîtrons,	aîtrez,	aîtront.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle*.	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles*.
	Connais,		Conn-aissons,	aissez,	

CONDITIONAL.

Conn-aîtrais,	aîtrais,	aîtrait.	Conn-aîtrions,	aîtriez,	aîtraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Conn-aisse,	aisses,	aisse.	Conn-aissions,	aissiez,	aissent.
conn-usse,	usses,	ût.	conn-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *CONNAITRE.*

Croître,	Cette pluie a bien fait *croître* les blés,
To grow.	This rain has made the corn *grow* very fast.
Accroître,	Il a par son économie *accru* de beaucoup son revenu,
To increase.	He has by his economy *increased* his income much.
Décroître,	Les jours commencent déjà à décroître,
To decrease.	The days begin already to *decrease.*
Paraître,	Dieu *apparut* plusieurs fois à Moïse,
To appear.	God *appeared* several times to Moses.
Disparaître,	Il *disparut* aussitôt de la ville,
To disappear.	He immediately *disappeared* from the town.
Comparaître,	Il n'a pas osé *comparaître* devant ses juges,
To appear.	He did not dare *to appear* before his judges.
Méconnaître,	Il est devenu si gros que tout le monde l' a *méconnu*,
Not to know again, to forget.	He is become so fat that no body *knew* him *again.*
Reconnaître,	Je l' ai *reconnu* du premier abord,
To remember.	I *remembered* him at first sight.
Reconnaître,	Toute l' Europe *reconnut* l' indépendance des Etats-Unis,
To acknowledge,	All Europe *acknowledged* the independence of the United States.

FOURTH CLASS, AS *METTRE*, TO PUT.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To put, Mettre. *Putting*, Mettant. *Put*, Mis.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle*.	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles*.
Me-ts,	ts,	t.	Mett-ons,	ez,	ent.
mett-ais,	ais,	ait.	mett-ions,	iez,	aient.
m-is,	is,	it.	m-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
mett-rai,	ras,	ra.	mett-rons,	rez,	ront.

IMPERATIVE.

Mets.	Mett-ons,	ez.

CONDITIONAL.

Mett-rais,	rais,	rait.	Mett-rions,	riez,	raient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Mett-e,	es,	e.	Mett-ions,	iez,	ent.
m-isse,	isses,	ît.	m-issions,	issiez,	issent.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *METTRE*.

Admettre,	Il a été *admis* dans la Société Royale de Londres,
To admit.	He has been *admitted* into the Royal Society of London.
Commettre,	Vous *commîtes* une grande faute en le lui disant,
To commit.	You *committed* a great fault by telling it to him.
Compromettre,	Je ne vous *compromettrai* pas, comptez sur ma parole,
To compromise, to expose one.	I will not *expose* you, depend on my word.

Se démettre,	Il *se démit* aussitôt de sa charge,
To resign.	He immediately *resigned* his office.
S' entremettre,	Je me suis *entremis* pour les accorder,
To mediate.	I *mediated* to make them agree.
Permettre,	Lui avez-vous *permis* de venir?
To permit.	Did you *permit* him to come?
Omettre,	Je n' ai *omis* aucune des particularités de cette affaire,
To omit.	I *omitted* none of the particularities of this business.
Promettre,	On lui a *promis* une belle récompense, s' il réussissait,
To promise.	A handsome reward has been *promised* him, if he succeeded.
Remettre,	Lui avez-vous *remis* le paquet & les plumes?
To deliver.	Have you *delivered* him the bundle and the quills?
Remettre,	Avez-vous *remis* les livres à leur place?
To replace.	Have you *replaced* the books?
Soumettre,	Je ne me *soumettrai* jamais à des conditions si inhumaines.
To submit.	I will never *submit* to such brutal conditions.
Transmettre,	Les sciences nous ont été *transmises* par les Grecs & par les Romains.
To transmit.	The sciences have been *transmitted* to us by the Greeks and Romans.

FIFTH CLASS, AS *PRENDRE*, TO TAKE.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To take, Prendre. *Taking,* Prenant. *Taken,* Pris.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle.*	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles.*
Pren-ds,	ds,	d.	Pren-ons,	ez,	ent.
pren-ais,	ais,	ait.	pren-ions,	iez,	aient.
pr-is,	is,	it.	pr-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
prend-rai,	ras,	ra.	prend-rons,	rez,	ront.

IMPERATIVE.

Prends.	Pren-ons, ez.

CONDITIONAL.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle.*	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles.*
Prend-rais,	rais,	rait.	Prend-rions,	riez,	raient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Prenn-e,	es,	e.	Pren-ions,	iez,	nent.
pr-isse,	isses,	ît.	pr-issions,	issiez,	issent.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *PRENDRE*.

Apprendre, To learn.	Combien y a-t-il que vous *apprenez* le Français? How long have you been *learning* French?
Comprendre, To understand.	Avez-vous *compris* ce qu' il a dit? Did you *understand* what he said?
Désapprendre, To unlearn.	Vous *désapprenez* au lieu d' apprendre. You *unlearn* instead of learning.
Entreprendre, To undertake.	Vous *entreprenez* trop de choses à la fois. You *undertake* too many things at once.
Se méprendre, To make a mistake.	Vous vous êtes *mépris* sur son compte. You have *made a mistake* about him.
Reprendre, To take back.	J' ai *repris* mon argent & lui ses marchandises, I *took* my money *back* and he his goods.
Reprendre, To blame, to censure.	Il a été *repris* sévèrement par un conseil de guerre, He was severely *blamed* (or *censured*) by a court martial.
Surprendre, To surprise.	Vous me *surprenez* d' agir comme vous faites, You *surprise* me to act as you do.

SIXTH CLASS, AS *FAIRE*, TO DO OR TO MAKE.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To do, Faire. *Doing*, Fesant. *Done*, Fait.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle*.	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles*.
F-ais,	ais,	ait.	F-esons,	aites,	ont.
fes-ais,	ais,	ait.	fes-ions,	iez,	aient.
f-is,	is,	it.	f-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
fe-rai,	ras,	a.	fer-ons,	ez,	ont.

IMPERATIVE.

	Fais.		F-esons,	aites.	

CONDITIONAL.

Fe-rais,	rais,	rait.	Fe-rions,	riez,	raient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Fass-e,	es,	e.	Fass-ions,	iez,	ent.
f-isse,	isses,	ît.	f-issions,	issiez,	issent.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *FAIRE*.

Contrefaire,	Il a été pendu pour avoir *contrefait* des billets de banque,
To counterfeit.	He was hanged for having *counterfeited* bank notes.
Défaire,	Vous *défaites* tout ce que je fais,
To undo.	You *undo* all that I do.
Défaire,	Nous *défîmes* l' ennemi avec un grand carnage,
To defeat.	We *defeated* the enemy with great slaughter.
Refaire,	Il est inutile de le *refaire*,
To do again.	It is useless *to do* it *again*.
Satisfaire,	C' est un homme qui *satisfait* tous ceux qui ont affaire avec lui,
To please.	He is a man who *pleases* all those who deal with him.
Satisfaire,	Il n' a *satisfait* aucun de ses créanciers,
To satisfy.	He has not *satisfied* any of his creditors.
Surfaire,	Ce marchand vous a *surfait* de moitié,
To ask too much.	This shopkeeper *asked* you *too much* by half.

SEVENTH CLASS, AS *ECRIRE*, TO WRITE.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To write, écrire. *Writing*, écrivant. *Written*, écrit.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle*.	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles*.
Ecri-s,	s,	t.	Ecri-vons,	vez,	vent.
écriv-ais,	ais,	ait.	écriv-ions,	iez,	aient.
écriv-is,	is,	it.	écriv-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
écri-rai,	ras,	ra.	écri-rons,	rez,	ront.

IMPERATIVE.

Ecris.	Ecriv-ons,	ez.

CONDITIONAL.

Ecri-rais,	rais,	rait.	Ecri-rions,	riez,	raient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Ecriv-e,	es,	e.	Ecriv-ions,	iez,	ent.
écriv-isse,	isses,	ît.	écriv-issions,	issiez,	issent.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE *ECRIRE*.

Circonscrire,	Dieu ne se peut *circonscrire* ni par les lieux ni par les tems,
To limit, to circumscribe.	God cannot be *circumscribed* either by place or time.
Décrire,	Il a fort bien *décrit* ce pays,
To describe.	He has *described* this country very well.
Inscrire,	Je vous *inscrirai* sur mon livre,
To set down, to enter.	I will *set* you *down* (or *enter*) on my book.
Prescrire,	*Prescrivez*-moi ce que vous voulez que je fasse,
To prescribe.	*Prescribe* to me what you wish me to do.

Proscrire,	Il a été *proscrit* pendant la tyrannie de Robespierre,
To proscribe.	He was *proscribed* during the tyranny of Robespierre.
Récrire,	Dites au commis de lui *récrire*,
To write again.	Tell the clerk *to write* to him *again*.
Souscrire,	Je *souscrivis* pour dix exemplaires de cet ouvrage,
To subscribe.	I *subscribed* for ten copies of this work.
Transcrire,	Avez-vous *transcrit* toutes mes lettres ?
To transcribe.	Did you *transcribe* all my letters ?

EIGHTH AND LAST CLASS,

EXEMPLIFIED IN *DIRE*, TO SAY OR TO TELL.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

To say, Dire. *Saying*, Disant. *Said*, Dit.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Je	*tu*	*il* ou *elle.*	*Nous*	*vous*	*ils* ou *elles.*
Di-s,	s,	t.	Di-sons,	tes,	sent.
dis-ais,	ais,	ait.	dis-ions,	iez,	aient.
di-s,	s,	t.	d-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
di-rai,	ras,	ra.	di-rons,	rez,	ront.

IMPERATIVE.

	Dis.		Di-sons,	tes.	

CONDITIONAL.

Di-rais,	rais,	rait.	Di-rions,	riez,	raient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Dis-e,	es,	e.	Dis-ions,	iez,	ent.
d-isse,	isses,	ît.	d-issions,	issiez,	issent.

The following are conjugated like *Dire*, except the 2d person plural of the *Indicative present* and the same person of the *Imperative* of the *seven* first Verbs, where *isez* instead of *ites* is the termination.

Confire,	Avez-vous *confit* des concombres cette année-ci?
To pickle.	Did you *pickle* any cucumbers this year?
Confire,	Elle est occupée maintenant à *confire* du fruit,
To preserve.	She is now busy about *preserving* fruit.
Contredire,	Vous me *contredisez* toujours,
To contradict.	You always *contradict* me.
Se dédire,	Les témoins se sont *dédits* de ce qu' ils avaient dit d'abord,
To disown, to recant.	The witnesses have *disowned* (or *recanted*) what they had said first.
Interdire,	On lui a *interdit* l' entrée de la ville,
To forbid.	They have *forbid* him from entering the city.
Médire,	Vous *médisez* trop de votre prochain,
To slander.	You *slander* your neighbour too much.
Prédire,	Je lui ai *prédit* ce qui lui est arrivé,
To foretell.	I have *foretold* him what has befallen him.
Redire,	*Redites* ce que vous avez entendu,
To tell again, to repeat.	*Repeat* (or *tell again*) what you have heard.

OF THE *IRREGULAR* VERBS THAT COULD NOT BE CLASSED.

WE present the scholar with the respective conjugations of those Verbs already mentioned, that, from their extreme irregularity, would not admit of being classed among the Verbs, whose conjugations we have just exhibited. In order to take up as little room as possible, we shall only give the tenses that are chiefly formed by a deviation from analogy; of each of those in which this law is observed, we need only mention the *first* person, as the pupil will certainly be able, from the knowledge he has now acquired of the French conjugation, to supply the persons omitted.

Acquérir, *to acquire*, acquérant, acquis.	Assaillir, *to assault*, assaillant, assailli.
J' acqu-iers, iers, iert; nous acqu-érons, ez, acquièrent. J' acquérais.—J' acquis. J' acquerrai.—J' acquerrais. Que J' acqu-ière, ières, ière; que nous acqu-érions, ériez, ièrent. Que j' acquisse. *Are conjugated alike;* Conquérir, *to conquer.* requérir, *to require.* s' enquérir, *to inquire.* Ex. Je me suis *enquis* de sa santé. I *inquired* after his health.	J' assaill-e, es, e; nous assaill-ons, ez, ent. J' assaillais.—J' assaillis. J' assaillirai.—J' assaillirais. Que j' assaill-e, es e; que nous assaill-ions, iez, ent. Que j' assaillisse. *Is conjugated alike;* Tressaillir, *to start.* Ex. Il *tressaillit* de peur, He *started* for fear.

S' assoir, *to sit down*, s' assoyant, assis.	Boire, *to drink*, buvant, bu.
Je m' assois, tu t' assois, il s' assoit; nous nous assoyons, vous vous assoyez, ils s' assoient. Je m' assoyais.—Je m' assis. Je m' assoirai.—Je m' assoirais. Que je m' ass-oie, oies, oie; que nous nous ass-oyions, oyiez, oient. Que je m' assisse. *Are conjugated alike;* Se rassoir, *to sit down again.* sursoir, *to adjourn* or *postpone* (a law term).	Je bois, tu bois, il boit; nous buv-ons, ez, boivent. Je buvais.—Je bus. Je boirai.—Je boirais. Que je boiv-e, es, e; que nous buv-ions, iez, boivent. Que je busse.

Bouillir, *to boil*,

bouillant, bouilli.

Je bous, tu bous, il bout;
nous bouill-ons, ez, ent.
Je bouillais.—Je bouillis.
Je bouillirai.—Je bouillirais.
Que je bouill-e, es, e;
que nous bouill-ions, iez, ent.
Que je bouillisse.

N. B. This Verb, as well as its derivative *rebouillir*, to boil again, is seldom used except in the *Infinitive* or third person of its tenses: to supply the persons corresponding to the English we employ the Verb *faire:* Ex. I *boil* that, Je *fais* bouillir cela.

Conclure, *to conclude.*

concluant, conclu.

Je concl-us, us, ut;
nous conclu-ons, ez, ent.
Je concluais.—Je conclus.
Je conclurai.—Je conclurais.
Que je conclu-e, es, e;
que nous conclu-ions, iez, ent.
Que je conclusse.

☞ *Exclure* its only derivative may make in the Past Participle either *exclu* or *exclus* for the masculine, and of course *exclue* or *excluse* for the feminine.

Coudre, *to sew*,

cousant, cousu.

Je cou-ds, ds, d;
nous cous-ons, ez, ent.
Je cousais.—Je cousis.
Je coudrai.—Je coudrais.
Que je cous-e, es, e;
que nous cous-ions, iez, ent.
Que je cousisse.

Note. Decoudre, *to unsew;* and recoudre, *to sew again;* are conjugated in the same manner.

Fuir, *to fly*,

fuyant, fui.

Je fu-is, is, it;
nous fu-yons, yez, ient.
Je fuyais.—Je fuis.*
Je fuirai.—Je fuirais.
Que je fuy-e, es, e;
que nous fuy-ions, iez, fuient.
Que je fuisse.*

* Instead of using *je fuis* and *que je fuisse*, we say now a-days je *pris la fuite* and *que je prisse la fuite.*

Haïr, *to hate*,

haïssant, haï.

Je hai-s, tu hai-s, il hai-t.
Nous haïss-ons, vous haïss-ez, ils haïss-ent.

The irregularity of this Verb is only in the *three first* persons singular of the *Indicative*, and the *second* singular of the *Imperative*, in which it is deprived of the *dots* placed over its *i*. As to the other tenses, it is conjugated like *punir*.

Lire, *to read*,

lisant, lu.

Je l-is, is, it;
nous lis-ons, ez, ent.
Je lisais.—Je lus.
Je lirai.—Je lirais.
Que je lis-e, es, e;
que nous lis-ions, iez, ent.
Que je lusse.

Derivatives.
Elire, *to elect.*
Relire, *to read again.*

Moudre, *to grind*,

moulant, moulu.

Je mou-ds, ds, d;
nous moul-ons, ez, ent.
Je moulais.—Je moulus.
Je moudrai.—Je moudrais.
Que je moul-e, es, e;
que nous moul-ions, iez, ent.
Que je moulusse.

Derivatives.
Emoudre, *to whet.*
Remoudre, *to grind again.*

Mourir, *to die*,

mourant, mort.

Je meur-s, s, t;
nous mour-ons, ez, meurent.
Je mourais.—Je mourus.
Je mourrai.—Je mourrais.
Que je meur-e, es, e;
que nous mour-ions, iez, meurent.
Que je mourusse.

This Verb is sometimes used *reflectively*, as se mourir, *to be dying*. Ex. Je me meurs, *I am dying*.

Mouvoir, *to move*,
mouvant, mu.

Je meu-s, s, t;
nous mouv-ons, ez, meuvent.
Je mouvais.—Je mus.
Je mouvrai.—Je mouvrais.
Que je meu-ve, ves, ve;
que nous mouv-ions, iez, meuvent.
Que je musse.

Derivative.

Emouvoir, *to move*, *to stir up*.

Naître, *to be born* or *to arise*,
naissant, né.

Je nai-s, s, t;
nous naiss-ons, ez, ent.
Je naissais.—Je naquis.
Je naîtrai.—Je naîtrais.
Que je naiss-e, es, e;
que nous naiss-ions, iez, ent.
Que je naquisse.

Its derivative renaître, *to rise again*, is defective in the past participle and present anterior of the *Indicative*.

Plaire, *to please*,
plaisant, plu.

Je plais, tu plais, il plaît;
nous plais-ons, ez, ent.
Je plaisais.—Je plus.
Je plairai.—Je plairais.
Que je plais-e, es, e;
que nous plais-ions, iez, ent.
Que je plusse.

Are conjugated alike,
Déplaire, *to displease*.
Taire, *to conceal*.
Se taire, *to be silent*.

Pleuvoir, *to rain*,
pleuvant, plu,

Il pleut.
il pleuvait.
il plut.
il pleuvra.
il pleuvrait.
qu' il pleuve.
qu' il plût.
il a plu.—Il avait plu, &c.

Pouvoir, *to be able*, pouvant, pu.	Résoudre, *to resolve*, résolvant, résolu.
Je p-uis, eux, eut; nous p-ouvons, ouvez, euvent. Je pouvais.—Je pus. Je pourrai.—Je pourrais. Que je puiss-e, es, e; que nous puiss-ions, iez, ent. que je pusse. This Verb can have no *Imperative.*	Je rés-ous, ous, out; nous résolv-ons, ez, ent. Je résolvais.—Je résolus. Je résoudrai.—Je résoudrais. Que je résolv-e, es, e; que nous résolv-ions, iez, ent. Que je résolusse. Absoudre, *to absolve*, Dissoudre, *to dissolve*, are conjugated in the same manner, the Participle Past excepted which is *absous*, *dissous*, m. *absoute*, *dissoute*, f.

Rire, *to laugh*, riant, ri.	Savoir, *to know*, sachant, su.
Je ri-s, s, t; nous ri-ons, ez, ent. Je riais.—Je ris. Je rirai.—Je rirais. Que je ri-e, es, e; que nous ri-ions, iez, ent. Que je risse. Sourire, *to smile*, is conjugated in the same manner.	Je s-ais, ais, ait; nous sa-vons, vez, vent. Je savais.—Je sus. Je saurai.—Je saurais. Que je sach-e, es, e; que nous sach-ions, iez, ent. Que je susse. *Imper.* Sach-e, ez; sachons.

Suffire, *to suffice*, suffisant, suffi.	Suivre, *to follow*, suivant, suivi.
Je suffi-s, s, t; nous suffis-ons, ez, ent. Je suffisais.—Je suffis. Je suffirai.—Je suffirais. Que je suffis-e, es, e; que nous suffis-ions, iez, ent. This Verb is often used impersonally as *il suffit*, &c.	Je su-is, is, it; nous suiv-ons, ez, ent. Je suivais.—Je suivis. Je suivrai.—Je suivrais. Que je suiv-e, es, e; que nous suiv-ions, iez, ent. Que je suivisse. Poursuivre, *to pursue*, is conjugated in the same manner.

Vaincre, *to vanquish*, vaincant, vaincu.	Valoir, *to be worth*, valant, valu.
Je vain-cs, cs, c; nous vainqu-ons, ez, ent. Je vainquais.—Je vainquis. Je vaincrai.—Je vaincrais. Que je vainqu-e, es, e; que nous vainqu-ions, iez, ent. Que je vainquisse. Convaincre, *to convince*, is thus conjugated.	Je v-aux, aux, aut; nous va-lons, lez, lent. Je valais.—Je valus. Je vaudrai.—Je vaudrais. Que je v-aille, ailles, aille; que nous v-alions, aliez, aillent. Que je valusse. Equivaloir, *to be equivalent*, is thus conjugated—Prévaloir, *to prevail*, makes préva*le* instead of préva*ille* in the Present of the Subjunctive.

Vêtir, *to clothe*,
vêtant, vêtu.

Je vêt-s, s, il vêt;
nous vêt-ons, ez, ent.
Je vêtais.—Je vêtis.
Je vêtirai.—Je vêtirais.
Que je vêt-e, es, e;
que nous vêt-ions, iez, ent.
Que je vêtisse.

☞ The singular person of the *Indicative* and *Imperative* are now seldom used.

It is used most commonly with the Personal Pronouns and signifies *to dress one's self.*

Ex. Vous êtes long-tems à vous *vêtir*, You are long *dressing yourself.*

Vivre, *to live*,
vivant, vécu.

Je vi-s, s, t;
nous viv-ons, ez, ent.
Je vivais.—Je vécus.
Je vivrai.—Je vivrais.
Que je viv-e, es, e;
que nous viv-ions, iez, ent.
Que je vécusse.

Voir, *to see*,
voyant, vu.

Je v-ois, ois, oit;
nous v-oyons, oyez, oient.
Je voyais. Je vis.
Je verrai. Je verrais.
Que je voi-e, es, e;
que nous v-oyons, oyez, oient.
Que je visse.

Its derivatives are,
Entrevoir, *to have a glimpse of.*
Prévoir, *to foresee.*
Pourvoir, *to provide.*

Prévoir, makes je pré*voi*rai,—je pré*voi*rais instead of je pré*ver*rai—je pré*ver*rais.

Pourvoir, makes je pourv*us*,—je pourv*oi*rai—je pourv*oi*rais instead of je pourv*is*—je pour*ver*rai—je pour*ver*rais.

Vouloir, *to be willing*,
voulant, voulu.

Je veu-x, x, t;
nous voul-ons, ez, veulent.
Je voulais.—Je voulus.
Je voudrai.—Je voudrais.
Que je veuill-e, es, e;
que nous voul-ions, iez, veuillent.
Que je voulusse.

This Verb has no Imperative.

We conceive the following Table, which contains the terminations of every Verb, may be useful to the Scholar, as a *Memorandum* and even a *Shield* to guard his *Orthography* from the blunders so often made by the English Learners in writing the Verbs.

A TABLE
OF THE TERMINATIONS OF EVERY FRENCH VERB.

MOODS.	TENSES.	NUMBERS.	PERSONS.	
INDICATIVE.	*Present.*	Plural.	1st	ons.
			2d	ez.
			3d	ent.
	Present Anterior.	Singular.	1st	ais.
			2d	ais.
			3d	ait.
		Plural.	1st	ions.
			2d	iez.
			3d	aient.
	Present Anterior Periodical.	Plural.	1st	mes.
			2d	tes.
			3d	rent.
	Present Posterior.	Singular.	1st	rai.
			2d	ras.
			3d	ra.
		Plural.	1st	rons.
			2d	rez.
			3d	ront.
CONDITIONAL.	*Present.*	Singular.	1st	rais.
			2d	rais.
			3d	rait.
		Plural.	1st	rions.
			2d	riez.
			3d	raient.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	*Present.*	Singular.	1st	e.
			2d	es.
			3d	e.
		Plural.	1st	ions.
			2d	iez.
			3d	ent.
	Present Anterior.	Singular.	1st	sse.
			2d	sses.
			3d	t.
		Plural.	1st	ssions.
			2d	ssiez.
			3d	ssent.

Who could fail, in the above Table, not to know the Verb *être* placed, as we have shown, at the *end* of every French Verb?

CONVERSATION X.

FINAL REMARKS ON THE FRENCH CONJUGATION.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT more have you to say on French conjugation?

MASTER.

I have to acquaint you with the remaining tenses that may be formed with the auxiliaries *Venir*, *Devoir*, and *Aller* (which we have introduced in the French conjugation), and to give you an idea of the tenses denominated *Comparative*, I have deferred making known to you all those various tenses until the present time; as I now perceive with inexpressible satisfaction, that you can, with facility, conjugate every French Verb. My motives for postponing it, were to ease your memory, which would, in the first instance, have been burthened with a number of tenses, some of which are seldom used in French or English: which last would not only have perplexed you, but would have impressed your mind with the erroneous notion that our system of conjugation was more difficult than the old, where many of our tenses have been, with much impropriety entirely concealed from the knowledge of the scholar.†

SCHOLAR.

Please to let me know the tenses formed by *Venir*, with which I am unacquainted.

MASTER.

There are six more past tenses *just elapsed*, which are as follow, viz.

INFINITIVE.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Venir de porter, To have just carried.

---

† For instance, I have met with many pupils, who, after several years instruction, were unacquainted with the Past Just Elapsed, *Je viens de*, &c. (which occurs so often in speech, and is besides an *idiom*) and always translated it by *I come from*, &c. which implies *nonsense* in this case.

INDICATIVE.

PAST ANTERIOR JUST ELAPSED.

Je venais de porter, &c. I had just carried, &c.

PAST POSTERIOR JUST ELAPSED.

Je viendrai de porter, &c. I shall have just carried, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Je viendrais de porter, &c. I should have just carried, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Que *je vienne de porter*, &c. *That* I may have just carried, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR JUST ELAPSED.

Que *je vinsse de porter*, &c. *That* I may have just carried, &c.

You may easily supply the persons not expressed in the above tenses.

SCHOLAR.

I should be happy to acquire the same knowledge of the other tenses formed with *Devoir* and *Aller*.

MASTER.

Those tenses are all futures.

FUTURES EXPRESSED BY *DEVOIR*.

INFINITIVE.

Devoir porter, To have to carry.

PARTICIPLE.

Devant porter, Having to carry.

INDICATIVE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je devais porter, &c. I was to carry, &c.

FUTURE POSTERIOR.

Je devrai porter, &c. I shall have to carry, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

FUTURE.

Je devrais porter, &c. I should have to carry, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

FUTURE.

Que *je doive porter*, &c. *That* I may have to carry, &c.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Que *je dusse porter*, &c. *That* I might have to carry, &c.

FUTURES OF *ALLER*.

INDICATIVE.

INSTANT FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J' allais porter, &c. I was going to carry, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

INSTANT FUTURE.

Que *j' aille porter*, &c. I must soon carry, &c.

INSTANT FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Que *j' allasse porter*, &c. I was obliged to carry, &c.

SCHOLAR.

What are the *Comparative* tenses?

MASTER.

They are all *past* tenses, but properly termed *Comparative*, because they exhibit an *anterior* event *compared* with an event which is also *anterior*, yet not so much so as the *first*. They are formed with the radical tenses of *Avoir* and its past participle *eu* placed before the past participle of another Verb.—EXAMPLE.

Quand *J' ai eu fini* mon ouvrage, votre frère est entré.

When I had [*just*] done my work, your brother came in.

In the above sentence you perceive clearly that the *Comparative* tense *j' ai eu fini* is used merely to acquaint you with the precise time *your brother came in.*—It is of course supposed you know when my work was done; for two unknown epochs instead of one would be presented to your view.—The *Comparative* tense may, therefore, with propriety, be compared to a kind of measure or needle which, on the dial of human actions, shows pointedly the very instant of the existence of an action unknown till then.

The *Comparative* tenses are chiefly used in plays, epistolary correspondence, and novels. Eminent French writers on subjects of general utility to society, furnish us with but few examples of their use. The reason, I believe, why they are used so seldom by them, is owing to the epochs of the subjects they treat on, which do not require to be determined with that precision which the common incidents, related in the works before mentioned, demand.

A VIEW
OF THE *COMPARATIVE* TENSES.

INFINITIVE.

Avoir eu porté, To have [had] carried.

PARTICIPLE.

Ayant eu porté, Having [had] carried.

INDICATIVE.

PAST COMPARATIVE.

J' ai eu porté, &c. I have [had] carried, &c.

PAST COMPARATIVE ANTERIOR.

J' avais eu porté, &c. I had [had] carried, &c.

PAST COMPARATIVE ANTERIOR PERIODICAL.

J' eus eu porté, &c. I had [had] carried, &c.

PAST COMPARATIVE POSTERIOR.

J' aurai eu porté, &c. I shall have [had] carried, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

PAST COMPARATIVE.

J' aurais eu porté, &c. I should have [had] carried, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PAST COMPARATIVE.

Que *j'aie eu porté*, &c. *That* I may have [had] carried, &c.

PAST COMPARATIVE ANTERIOR.

Que *j' eusse eu porté*, &c. *That* I might have [had] carried, &c.

CONVERSATION XI.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT is a *Preposition?*

MASTER.

It is a word placed between two other words, to point out or express a relation between the ideas denoted by those two words.

SCHOLAR.

What do you mean by a relation between two ideas?

MASTER.

I mean to say, in other words, that the two ideas have a correspondence together: this correspondence or relation, which renders them mutually necessary to each other, is pointed out by the term called *Preposition*. When I say, for instance, *Alexander* was the son of *Philip;* in this sentence, there is evidently a relation between Alexander and Philip, which is, that the *former* is the son of the *latter*. The Preposition *of* points it out.

The relation, which the mind perceives between ideas, has its foundation, or prototype, in nature, the objects of which are dependent upon one another, thus: The *universe* supposes a *Creator;* a mother awakens the idea of a *husband*, *children*, *education*, &c. as Pope so elegantly expresses in the following lines:

> "Nothing is foreign; parts relate to whole,
> One all-extending—all-preserving soul!
> Connects each being, greatest with the least,
> Made beast in aid of man, and man of beast,
> All serv'd, all serving—Nothing stands alone,
> The chain holds on, and where it ends, unknown."

The relations between objects being various, have given rise to different Prepositions to distinguish them.

SCHOLAR.

Could not man have communicated his sentiments without Prepositions?

MASTER.

Yes he might, with the help of unconnected sentences; but how poor would that language have been, which could only express ideas in a slow and circuitous manner, without any of those shades and lively gradations, that render them at once so impressive, so elegant, just, and tractable.

Man's reason being created and improved by his use of language†, he was no longer satisfied with solely comparing the *object* with the *quality;* ambitious of emerging, from such a narrow sphere, and observing the relation of one idea to another, of one action to another, he soon felt the necessity of expressing his enlarged views, and the existence of the *relations* he discovered in the various objects of nature: it was then he resorted to Prepositions; so termed from the Latins, to imply that they are placed before the words they govern.

SCHOLAR.

How did man proceed in the invention of those new words?

---

† See Hobbes and Condillac.

MASTER.

On this occasion he made use of the Adjectives and Nouns his language was already composed of; which tends to confirm our fundamental principle on the formation of language, that every part of speech sprung from a Noun.

SCHOLAR.

I do not find, however, among those *laconic terms* denominated *Prepositions*, many traces or features of their origin.

MASTER.

It is because they have been reduced by constant use: you have seen in my preliminary discourse that the mind is in perpetual need of such words to manifest its ideas. Terms so often employed, could not remain long entire; they were gradually worn out (if I may be allowed the expression) by the *friction* of speech, and many of them became mere monosyllables, apparently devoid of a primitive meaning; just as a piece of gold coin, by a rapid and continued circulation, diminishes in weight and retains but faint marks of its effigy and stamp.

An English philosopher, armed with great courage, and supported by the intuitive suggestions of genius, conceived that those *brief* expressions, now void of signification, had once a real import, concealed now from our intellectual view, by our ignorance of their origin, and that they were nothing but abbreviations of Nouns or Verbs†. To ascertain these points, he consulted the most ancient works of the different languages, from which the English language emanated, and discovered, to a certainty, by the help of his discriminating powers, that Prepositions are, in fact, nothing more than abbreviations of the two parts of speech above mentioned, to wit, *Nouns* and *Verbs*. This holds good for all languages, as it is founded in the nature of things, and in the simplicity of the means, which nature suggested to man in his formation of language. If you wish to extend your ideas of grammar, and to be convinced of this truth, read the *Diversions* of *Purley*, by *Horne Tooke*.

SCHOLAR.

Are there as many *Prepositions* as there are relations?

MASTER.

No: For the same Preposition is often used to express different relations: the same relation is also sometimes expressed by different Prepositions. These circumstances have induced me to present to your view, at the end of this conversation, a table that will give you an idea of the proper use of Prepositions in the French language; as it contains, in alphabetical order, the *Prepositions*, with the various relations shown by them, exemplified in a series of familiar phrases.

---

† That is to say, of Adjectives in our System of Grammar.

SCHOLAR.

Is the *Preposition* always placed between two words?

MASTER.

It should be so; as the Preposition has been introduced to serve as a canal of communication between two words reciprocally necessary to each other, for the complete expression of the thought. However exceptions have been made in favour of poetical harmony and brevity of language. This accounts for the Preposition being separated from, or deprived of, its first term, which is called *Antecedent*, to denote its place. In French poetry, you will often meet with the *Preposition* separated from its *Antecedent*, as in the two following lines:

Aux êtres sans raison le Ciel par indulgence,
De leur dernière fin *cache* la *connaissance*.

To each unthinking being, Heav'n, a friend,
Gives not the useless knowledge of its end.

The antecedents of the Preposition *à* (*aux* put for *à les*) and *de*, are the words *cache* and *connaissance*.

In the following inscription on the statue of *Maffei*, at *Verona*, viz.

à Scipion Maffei, vivant.
To Scipio Maffei, during his life.

The antecedent words *statue consacrée* are understood.

On the direction of letters, for instance,

à Messieurs Brugière & Co. à Philadelphie.
To Messrs. Brugière & Co. at Philadelphia.

The words *cette lettre sera rendue*, this letter will be delivered, are understood.

SCHOLAR.

Is the second term of a Preposition always expressed in French?

MASTER.

No. There are seven Prepositions, after which, it may be understood, viz. *auparavant*, before; *depuis*, since; *dehors*, out; *alentour*, round; *dedans*, within; *dessus*, over *or* above; and *dessous*, under, exemplified in the following phrases:

Ce n'est pas d'aujourd'hui que je le sais, il me l'avait dit *auparavant*,

It is not to-day that I know it, he had told it me *before*.

Si vous vous plaisez dans ma bibliothèque, restez *dedans*, or, in better terms, restez, *y*.

If you are pleased in my library, stay *within* it.

Au lieu de mettre les souliers sous la table, il les a mis *dessus*,

Instead of putting the shoes under the table, he put them *over* (or on it.)

Il s' est trompé s' il les a mis dessus; il aurait dû les mettre *dessous*,

He made a mistake if he put them on the table; he should have put them *under* it.

On m'a refusé l'entrée du jardin; pour m' en dédommager, je me suis promené *alentour*,

They refused me entrance into the garden; to make up for it, I took a walk *round* it.

Vous le vîtes l' année dernière, mais ne l' avez vous pas vu *depuis?*

You saw him last year, but have you not seen him *since?*

The words *aujourd'hui*, *chambre*, *bibliothèque*, *table*, *jardin*, *l'année dernière*, are understood. We call such words the *consequents* or *complements** of a Preposition.

---

* We observe here, once for all, that in this treatise the word *complement* of which we already gave an idea in treating on the adjective, means, as in the Grammars of Beauzée, Sicard, &c. that which is added to a word to determine its signification in any manner whatever.

There are two sorts of words the signification of which may be determined by complements: 1st, all those that have a general signification susceptible of different degrees; 2d, all those that have a signification relative to any term whatever.

Those of the first class are *nouns common* and *every adjective* and *adverb*, which, implying in their signification an idea susceptible of quantity, are

SCHOLAR.

Are Prepositions useful only to express relations between objects and qualities?

MASTER.

They possess a very important property in forming the derivatives of Verbs. You have seen instances of it in our conjugation in the derivatives of *mettre*, *venir*, &c.

Here follow those in use for that purpose, many of which are borrowed, in that instance, with a slight alteration, from the Latin.—*Ad* ou *A:* mettre, *admettre;* prendre, *apprendre.*—*Con*, *com*, *contre:* courir, *concourir;* battre, *combattre;* venir, *contrevenir.*—*De*, *dis:* faire, *défaire;* paraître, *disparaître.*—*E*, *en*, *em*, *entre*, *ex:* puiser, *épuiser;* traîner, *entraîner;* porter, *emporter;* prendre, *entreprendre;* traire, *extraire.*—*In*, *im*, *inter:* disposer, *indisposer;* poser, *imposer;* rompre, *interrompre.*—*Me*, *mau:* connaître, *méconnaître;* dire, *maudire.*—*Ob:* tenir, *obtenir.*—*Par*, *per*, *pré*, *pro*, *pour:* venir, *parvenir;* mettre, *permettre;* munir, *prémunir;* poser, *proposer;* suivre, *poursuivre.*—*Re*, *ré:* commencer, *recommencer;* former, *réformer.*—*Se*, *sou*, *sur*, *sus:* courir, *secourir;* tenir, *soutenir;* prendre, *surprendre;* pendre, *suspendre.*—*Trans:* porter, *transporter.*

An accurate knowledge of the meaning of the *Prepositions* and primitive Verbs, will, in general, lead you to that of the *derivatives.*

You are now to commit to memory the following table, subjoined to this conversation. You will find the Prepositions sufficiently exemplified in it, to direct you in their use and application.

---

themselves susceptible of what is called degrees of signification; and finally every *verb* the individual idea of which may also receive those various degrees.

Those of the second class are several nouns common, several adjectives, a few adverbs, every active verb as well as some others, and every preposition.

If we abstain from giving examples, it is in order not to swell this note, and because the doctrine of complements has been treated in a masterly manner by Beauzée, to whom we refer all those whom a love for Grammatical science would induce to explore that delicate part of Grammar.

AN ALPHABETICAL TABLE

OF RELATIONS,

COMMONLY EXPRESSED BY PREPOSITIONS.

Relations.	*Prepositions.*	*Exemplifications.*
Addition.	*outre.*	*Outre* mon cheval je lui ai donné cent écus, *Besides* my horse I gave him one hundred crowns.
Approximation.	*environ.*	Nous avons fait *environ* deux lieues, We have gone about two leagues.
Assimilation.	*pour.*	Je me suis trompé, j' ai pris l' un *pour* l' autre, I have made a mistake, I took one *for* the other.
Attribution.	*à.*	Rendez *à* César ce qui est *à* César, Restore *to* Cæsar what is Cæsar's.
	concernant.	J' ai quelque chose à vous dire *concernant* cette affaire, I have something to tell you *concerning* that business.
	de.	J' ai reçu *de* Monsieur un tel, I have received *of* Mr. such a one.
	pour.	Ce n' est pas *pour* vous qu' il l' a fait, It is not *for* you that he has done it.
Comparison.	*de.*	Il est plus grand que vous *de* trois pouces, He is taller than you *by* three inches.

Relations.	*Prepositions.*	*Exemplifications.*
Composition.	*de.*	On le trouva enseveli sous un tas *de* blessés, They found him buried under a heap *of* wounded.
Conformity.	*selon.*	Il faut raisonner *selon* Locke & Condillac, We must reason *according* to Locke and Condillac.
	suivant.	J' obéis *suivant* vos ordres, I obey *according* to your orders.
Consequence.	*attendu.*	Il fut exempté de la milice, *attendu* son âge, He was exempted from the militia, *owing* to his age.
Contiguity.	*attenant.*	Son jardin est *attenant* du mien, His garden is *contiguous* to mine.
	joignant.	Il demeure *joignant* l' hôtel de la monnaie, He lives *adjoining* the mint.
Distance of place.	*depuis.*	J' ai voyagé avec lui *depuis* Paris jusqu' à Lyon, I have travelled with him *from* Paris *to* Lyons.
	à.	Il demeure *à* trois milles d' ici, He lives three miles from hence.
	loin.	Vous êtes *loin* de lui, You are far from him.
	près.	Venez demeurer *près* de moi, Come and live *near* me.
Distance of time.	*dépuis.*	Il ne m' a pas écrit *depuis* quatre ans, He has not written to me these four years.

Relations.	*Prepositions.*	*Exemplifications.*
Distance of order.	*depuis.*	Il a visité les malades *depuis* le premier jusqu' au dernier, He has visited the patients *from* the first *to* the last.
Division.	*en.*	Vous couperez les pommes *en* trois. You will cut the apples *in* three.
	par.	La viande a été coupée *par* morceaux, The meat has been cut *in* pieces.
Duration.	*durant.*	Il était triste *durant* la fête, He was sad *during* the entertainment.
	pendant.	Il a plu *pendant* toute la journée, It has rained during the whole day.
Exchange.	*pour.*	J' ai échangé ma jument *pour* une meilleure, I have exchanged my mare *for* a better one.
Exclusion.	*excepté.*	Il travaille toute la semaine, *excepté* le dimanche, He works the whole week, Sunday *excepted.*
	hormis.	Il aime tous les hommes *hormis* les ingrats, He loves all men *except* the ungrateful.
Privation.	*de.*	Le ministre l' a privé *de* sa place, The minister has deprived him *of* his office.

Relations.	*Prepositions.*	*Exemplifications.*
Extension.	*jusque.*	Je l' ai cherché depuis la cave *jusqu'* au grenier, I looked for it from the cellar *to* the garret.
Habitation.	*chez.*	Venez loger *chez* moi, Come and live *at* my house.
Imitation.	*après.*	Ce tableau est peint d' *après* Rubens—d' *après* nature, This picture is painted *after* Rubens—*from* the life.
Matter.	*de.*	J' ai perdu ma tabatière *d'* or, I have lost my gold snuff-box.
Manner of living dressing, &c.	*à.*	Il vit *à* la Française, s' habille *à* l' Anglaise, & couche sur un lit *à* la Turque, He lives *after* the French fashion, dresses after the English, and sleeps *in the* Turkish mode.
Manner.	*avec.*	Comportez-vous *avec* prudence, Behave *with* prudence.
Means.	*avec.*	Il s' est tué *avec* son épée, He killed himself *with* his sword.
	en.	Il l' a attendri *en* pleurant, He softened him *by* shedding tears.
	par.	Il l' obtiendra *par* l' entremise de cette femme, He will obtain it *through* the medium of this woman.
	moyennant.	J' en viendrai à bout *moyennant* votre secours, I will bring it about *by means* of your assistance.

Relations.	*Prepositions.*	*Exemplifications.*
Measure.	*à.*	Vous a-t-il vendu son drap *à* l' aune ? Did he sell you his cloth *by* the yard ?
Mixture.	*parmi.*	On le trouva *parmi* les morts, He was fouud *among* the dead.
Motion.	*à.*	Il est allé *à* la Chine, He is gone *to* China.
	de.	Je croyais que vous veniez *de* Portugal, I thought you came *from* Portugal.
	en.	Il est résolu de passer *en* Espagne, He is resolved to go to Spain.
	sur.	Bonaparte se porta *sur* Mantoue, Bonaparte directed his march *toward* Mantua.
	vers.	Nous fîmes voile *vers* les Indes, We sailed *towards* the Indies.
Motive.	*par.*	Il l' a fait *par* crainte, He did it *through* fear.
	pour.	Il étudie *pour* s' instruire, He studies *in order to* get instruction.
Opposition.	*contre.*	Il ne faut pas disputer *contre* lui, You must not argue *against* him.
Order.	*à.*	Les soldats défilèrent deux *à* deux, The soldiers filed off two *by* two.
	après.	Ils ont passé les uns *après* les autres, They have passed one *after* another.

Relations.	*Prepositions.*	*Exemplifications.*
Origin, cause.	*de.*	Il descend *d'* une famille illustre, He descends *from* an illustrious family.
	par.	L' armée combinée fut vaincue *par* les Français, The combined army was defeated *by* the French.
Passage.	*par.*	Ne passez plus *par* ma chambre, Do not pass any more *through* my room.
Place.	*après.*	Vous trouverez *après* le vestibule un magnifique salon, You will find *after* the entry a magnificent parlour.
	derrière.	Cachez-vous *derrière* la tapisserie, Hide yourself *behind* the hangings.
	en.	Il vit *en* sa propre maison, He lives *in* his own house.
	devant.	Mettez cela *devant* le feu, Put that *before* the fire.
Possession.	*de.*	Voilà le tombeau *d'* Henri quatre, That is the tomb *of* Henry the fourth.
Price.	*à.*	Ce blé s' est vendu *à* deux écus le boisseau, This corn sold *for* ten crowns a bushel.
Relation between persons.	*envers.*	Il a été ingrat *envers* son bienfaiteur, He has been ungrateful *towards* his benefactor.

Relations.	*Prepositions.*	*Exemplifications.*
Resistance.	*malgré.*	J' entrerai *malgré* vous, I will enter *in spite* of you.
	nonobstant.	Ils ont été faits prisonniers *nonobstant* leur défence courageuse. They have been made prisoners *notwithstanding* their courageous defence.
Situation.	*à.*	Vous prendrez *à* gauche au lieu de prendre *à* droite, You will take *on* the left instead of taking *on* the right.
	entre.	Ne vous placez pas *entre* lui & moi, Dont place yourself between him and me.
	sous.	Je l' ai trouvé caché *sous* le lit, I found him concealed *under* the bed.
	vers.	Vous le placerez *vers* la porte, You will place it *about* the door.
Species.	*de.*	Il lui faut un habit *de* cheval. He wants a riding-habit.
	en.	Ce livre est relié *en* veau, This book is bound *in* calf.
State.	*en.*	Il est *en* bonne santé, *en* belle humeur, He is *in* good health, *in* good humour.
	en.	Son vignoble est déjà *en* fleur. His vineyard is already *in* blossom.
Time.	*à.*	Il partira *à* la fin du mois, He will set off *at* the end of the month.
	vers.	Il est arrivé *vers* l' heure du dîné, He arrived about dinner time.

CONVERSATION XII.

OF THE ADVERB.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT is an Adverb?

MASTER.

It is a word which serves to modify the *quality interwoven with the very existence of the Verb*, or *separated* from it when the generating Verb *to be* itself is used.

SCHOLAR.

What do you mean by the expressions *to modify the quality?*

MASTER.

I mean to express that the quality, with the help of this new word, undergoes a change in its primitive acceptation, and is thereby fitter to represent the light in which it is instantly viewed by the mind.

SCHOLAR.

I believe I shall understand you better if you have recourse to an example.

MASTER.

Well, let it be so: When I say, for instance, this man speaks, or rather is speaking *elegantly*, I intend to express, 1st, that the man is *speaking;* 2dly, that to his quality of *speaking* I add that of *elegance;* it is to convey this last idea that I make use of the word *elegantly*, which modifies the quality of speaking, (implying neither *elegance* nor *inelegance* in itself), and represents it in such a manner as it makes an impression upon me.

SCHOLAR.

Most grammarians appear to differ very widely from you; for they say, among other things, in their definition of the *Adverb*, that this part of speech is thus called from being placed close to the Verb which it modifies. *You* make it modify the *quality* and *they* the *Verb:* What a difference in opinion!

MASTER.

The grammarians you allude to, having given us false and erroneous notions of the other parts of speech, and especially of the Verb, it was not to be expected they should be right in treating of the *Adverb*. To prove it I might here analyse several of their definitions, but as it would be wasting time to little purpose, I will, therefore, for your satisfaction only, consider that definition of the Adverb you oppose to mine.

If you have now present to your mind our definition of the *Verb*, the truth of which I am daily more and more convinced of, you will immediately perceive the defect of that definition, for as the Verb expresses nothing but *existence*, it cannot be modified, nor can we say of a thing that it exists more or less. By simply existing, it exists as much as it possibly can exist. The Verb being unmodifiable in its own nature, apply what they say of the Verb to the *quality*, and you will have the true definition of the *Adverb*. I will conclude these remarks by observing, that the denomination given to that part of speech, derived from its local situation with respect to the Verb, rather than from its function, is on that account extremely erroneous. I would propose to have it termed *Super-attribute;* in fact the Adverb is to the Attribute, what the Adjective is to the Noun. The Adjective would have been properly denominated *Super-noun*, as it may be said to cover the *Noun*, as a man's coat covers his body. The Adverb being in the same manner placed on the Attribute, no denomination appears to suit better than that I propose. *Urbain Domergue*, a member of the National Institute, and author of several valuable treatises on grammar, for the above reasons, calls it, in French, *Sur-attributif*, which is the very equivalent of Super-attribute.

SCHOLAR.

In lieu of saying this man speaks *elegantly*, in the example you have chosen to illustrate your definition of the *Adverb*, I believe you might have said, with equal propriety, this man speaks *with elegance*. This Adverb may then be rendered by a *Preposition* and its *complement*.

If this is the case with every *Adverb*, why then invent an useless word, since others already in circulation might supply its place.

MASTER.

Admitting there should be no difference with respect to meaning between the Preposition and its *complement*, and the Adverb, an *elliptical term containing in itself* the value of a Preposition with its complement, certainly for the sake of brevity, as well as to prevent a disagreeable monotony in speech by the frequent return of the same Prepositions, the *Adverb* would well deserve to be introduced in language.

Some reflections on the province of these two parts of speech, will make you sensible, that, though they have similar functions, yet they are not quite the same ; for the Preposition and its *complement* cannot always be rendered by an Adverb. In the following sentence for example : He brought it about *by his perseverance.* No Adverb in any language could replace the Preposition *by* and its *complement.*

Such a substitution may take place only when the relation exists between an object and a quality. Thus *courageously* could be substituted in lieu of *with courage; quickly* in lieu of *with quickness.*

However should we, in the expression of our thoughts, aim at as great a degree of accuracy as language can admit of, we should not when the above substitution can take place, even use indistinctly one for the other ; for to express that the quality modified is habitually so, the *Adverb* is more properly used than the Preposition with a *complement.*

The Preposition or adverbial phrase, on the contrary, is better used to modify a simple act of it ; with propriety we may say, a man who conducts himself *wisely*, cannot promise himself that all his actions will be done *with wisdom;* un homme qui se conduit *sagement* ne peut pas se promettre que toutes ses actions seront faites *avec sagesse:* an author who does not write *elegantly*, may, however, now and then express his thoughts *with elegance;* un auteur qui n' écrit pas *élégamment* peut toutefois rendre de tems en tems ses penseés *avec élégance:* resist *with courage* this temptation, and always follow *courageously* the road to virtue ; résistez *avec courage* à cette tentation & suivez toujours *courageusement* le chemin de la vertu. The fundamental principle, that no perfect synonymy exists between different expressions, has induced me to think that it might be in English as it is in the French language, where exists the difference we have noticed between the Adverb, the Preposition or adverbial phrase.

I hope that your doubts concerning the propriety of introducing the Adverb into language are now removed.

SCHOLAR.

In English we form the greatest part of our Adverbs by adding to our Adjectives the termination *ly:* What termination answers to it in French?

MASTER.

The termination *ment*, which you may have noticed in the preceding examples. In subjoining that termination to an Adjective, to make it an Adverb, the three following rules are to be observed:

1st. When the *Adjective* ends with a *vowel* you have only to add *ment* to it; thus *honnéte*, *aisé*, *poli*, *ingénu* will give the Adverbs: honnête*ment*, aisé*ment*, poli*ment*, ingénu*ment*.

The Adjectives *aveugle*, *commode*, *conforme*, *énorme*, *incommode*, *opiniâtre*, when transformed into Adverbs, agreeably to the above rule, will require an accent on their *e* mute, thus: aveuglé*ment*, commodé*ment*, &c.

Note—The Adjective *impuni* giving the Adverb *impunément* instead of *impuniment*, is the only exception to this rule.

2dly. Adjectives ending in *nt* change that termination into *mment*, thus *méchant*, *ardent*, will give mécha*mment*, arde*mment*.

Note—*Lent* and *présent* are to be excepted, since they produce the Adverbs lente*ment*, présente*ment*.

3dly. Adjectives ending in *consonants* require the adverbial termination *ement* to be added to their *feminine* gender; thus, *grand*, *égal*, &c. will give grand*ement*, égale*ment*, &c.

The Adjectives *commun*, *confus*, *exprès*, *importun*, *obscur*, *précis*, *profond*, require the acute accent on the *e* mute of their termination *feminine* before *ment* is added to it, as commun*ément*, confus*ément*, &c.

Note—The Adjective *gentil* that gives the Adverb genti*ment* instead of gentill*ement*, is the only exception to this rule.

SCHOLAR.

How many classes of *Adverbs* are reckoned?

MASTER.

They have been variously calculated, but I think *nine* classes will comprehend them all; for we may say that there are Adverbs of *manner*—*time*—*place*—*quantity*—*number*—*comparison*—*interrogation*—*affirmation* and *negation*—*doubt and reasoning*. The following is a list of a few of each class to establish your ideas on that subject. But I consider with *Beauzée* such classifications as objects rather of curiosity than real utility.

ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES

OF MANNER.

Sagement, prudemment, conformément, bien, mal, à la hâte, peu à peu, &c.

OF TIME.

Quand, combien de tems, autrefois, dernièrement, hier, aujourd'hui, demain, alors, &c.

OF PLACE.

Où, ici, là, y, en, ailleurs, auprès, autour, &c.

OF QUANTITY.

Combien, beaucoup, assez, peu, davantage, médiocrement, &c.

OF NUMBER.

Souvent, rarement, premièrement, &c. *une fois, deux, fois* &c.

OF COMPARISON.

Autant, plus, moins, très, fort, aussi, &c.

OF INTERROGATION.

Pourquoi, comment, quand? &c.

OF AFFIRMATION AND NEGATION.

Certainement, vraiment, sans doute, nullement, point du tout, &c.

OF DOUBT AND REASONING.

Peut-être, ainsi, conséquemment, pareillement, &c.

SCHOLAR.

You said in the beginning of your account of the *Adverb*, that this part of speech was an *elliptical term* containing the value of a *Preposition* and a *complement*, that is to say, as you spoke in general terms, that any Adverb may be solved by a Preposition and a complement, as it is the equivalent of both. I believe there are Adverbs that would puzzle you to show it; such as the following: *y*, *en*, *auprès*, *autour*, *hier*, *aujourd'hui*, *demain*.

MASTER.

I shall endeavour to show you: 1st, that *y* and *en*, which are indeed very ellyptical expressions, are the equivalent of a *Preposition* and a *complement*. The first is derived from the Latin word *hîc*, which was itself the *ellipsis* of the phrase *in hoc loco*,* meaning *in* that place, *dans* ou *à* ce lieu, according to circumstances. Thus *y* stands in French for the Prepositions *dans* or *à* with a complement.—Examples: j' *y* vais, I am going *there*, stands for je vais *dans* or *à ce lieu*. J' *y* pense, means, according to circumstances, je pense *à lui*, *à eux*, *à elles*, *à cela*, *à cette chose*, *à ces choses*.

En is derived from the Latin word *indè;* we can resolve it by the Preposition *de* and a *complement*.—Examples: J' *en* viens, I come *from there*, is, according to local circumstances, for Je viens *de ce pays*, *de cette ville*, *de ce village*, *de cet endroit*, &c.

J' *en* parle, is for Je parle *de moi*, *de nous*, *de toi*, *de vous*, *de lui*, *d' eux*, *d' elle*, *d' elles*, *de cela*, *de cette chose*, *de ces choses*, *de l'homme qui*, &c.

You see by the above *analysis* of *y* and *en*, how erroneous was the opinion of grammarians, that made *Pronouns* of them. Without it, indeed, the bare recollection of our principles on the nature and functions of the Pronoun, would have been sufficient to guard you against this error.

Autour and *auprès* indicate themselves sufficiently their *adverbiality*, being composed of the Preposition *à*, the Article indicative *le*, and the Noun *près*, or *tour;* from *à le près*, *à le tour*, they gradually and naturally became *auprès*, *autour;* the first is an Adjective taken substantively, and signifies a neighbouring place; the second is a Noun, meaning the roundness of a thing.

You might perhaps have mentioned some Adverbs that would have puzzled me to find an equivalent to them in a Preposition and a complement, without invalidating our general principle, that an Adverb stands for a Preposition and its complement; for as *Des Brosses* observes in his ingenious and learned work, entitled, *De la Formation mécanique des Langues*.

---

* See Gebelin.

" La preuve connue d' un grand nombre de mots d'une " espèce, doit établir un précepte général sur les autres " mots de même espèce à l' origine desquels on ne peut " plus remonter. On doit, en bonne logique, juger des " choses que l' on ne peut connaître, par celles de même " espèce qui sont bien connues, en les ramenant à un principe dont l'évidence se fait apercevoir partout où la vue " peut s' étendre."

I will conclude my answer to your remark, by observing that the words *hier*, *aujourd'hui*, *demain*, which we have ranked among the Adverbs, are truly *Nouns;* an undeniable proof of it, is, that they are the *complements* of various Prepositions ; in the following examples, taken from *the Dictionary of the French Academy : d'hier* en huit jours, *from yesterday* week ; la journée *d' aujourd'hui* est plus belle que celle *d'hier*, *this day* is finer than that *of yesterday;* l'affaire est remise *à demain*, the affair is postponed *until to-morrow.* Besides, these words may be modified by *Adjectives*, which still more forcibly proves them to be real Nouns.—Examples: *tout* aujourd'hui, the *whole* day; hier *passé*, yesterday *past*, &c.

When the above expressions are used by themselves after the Verb, the Preposition, with the help of which they would modify the quality, is understood*; this accidental circumstance, by which they are stript of the accidents of *Nouns*, renders them *Adverbs*, as they fulfil the functions thereof. Losing sight, therefore, of the other circumstances where they play the part of *Nouns*, we might, without deviation from our general principle, give them, with other nouns having similar properties, a place among the *Adverbs*.

---

* See Beauzée, Grammaire Générale.

CONVERSATION XIII.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT is a Conjunction?

MASTER.

A Conjunction is a word which serves to connect *Propositions* with one another, in order to make them represent the better *judgments* which are connected together in the mind, and thereby renders language fitter to represent the unity of thought.

SCHOLAR.

What do you mean by *judgment* and *Proposition?*

MASTER.

A definition of either is prefixed in a note to the first conversation, to which I refer you.

SCHOLAR.

Could not man, strictly speaking, have dispensed with *Conjunctions?*

MASTER.

Yes, he might; but mark the consequence: Speech deprived of the conjunctive or connective words would be a skeleton without colour and life, while conjunctions render it not only lively and interesting, but even precise, concise, and energetic.—It was not, therefore, luxury that introduced those terms into language, but the necessity of clearly and speedily manifesting one's thoughts. Do you wish to be firmly convinced of their useful and interesting functions? Well, take off the Conjunctions of any well written piece, of *Burke's speeches* for instance, and you will see all their masterly eloquence, and sublime energy, suddenly vanish.

SCHOLAR.

How many *Conjunctions*, or kinds of Conjunctions do you admit in French?

MASTER.

You will be surprised, to know that there exists but *one fundamental Conjunction*, through which alone the other words (so called) exist.

SCHOLAR.

This is so much the more surprising to me, indeed, that I have not long ago perused several grammars highly esteemed, such as Harris's, wherein is given a very extensive list of Conjunctions, carefully divided into classes denominated as follows:—*Adjunctive*, *disjunctive*, *subdisjunctive*, *copulative*, *continuative*, *subcontinuative*, *positive*, *suppositive*, *collective*, *effective*, *approbative*, *discretive*, *presumptive*, *preventive*, *illative*, *suspensive*, *conclusive*, *abnegative*, *casual*, *hypothetical*, &c. &c.—What will become of all those classes in your system of grammar?

MASTER.

I will, like Horne Tooke, send them back to the chaos from which these insignificant terms should never have been brought.

It behoves me now to explain to you my system, which is founded on the nature of language and things. We will acknowledge, in order to establish ideas, *three* kinds of Conjunctions:

The *elementary* Conjunctions, at the head of which the fundamental Conjunction we have just spoken of will be.

The *ellpitical* Conjunctions, and the *combined* Conjunctions.

The fundamental Conjunction answers to the Verb *étre* that generated all other Verbs, as we have shown.—The *elliptical* Conjunction to our *Adjective* Verbs.—The *combined* Conjunctions to the Verbs called *passive*, in French or English, by Latino-English—or Latino-French grammarians.

SCHOLAR.

I am anxious to know that *fundamental* Conjunction.

MASTER.

It is *et:* It draws its origin from the Verb *étre*. Dont you perceive a family resemblance between *et* and *est?* Well, as striking a resemblance may be observed in the functions they perform—*est* is placed between a Noun and its Adjectives, to signify the qualities are brought back on the objects from which the mind had, by abstraction, separated them, in order to consider them *apart*, or in other words to connect in speech, as are in nature, the *qualities* with the objects in which they coexist—*et* is also placed between two Propositions to connect them in speech, as the judgments which they portray are connected in the mind.

If you recollect our principles on language, that words could not have been chosen in an arbitrary manner, you will not be surprised after what has been said, that *est*, which is the *link-word*, should have been the natural generator of the Conjunction *et;* and if a trifling difference is observed in their pronunciation, it arises from that natural propensity of mankind to variety, and their aversion to a dull and fatiguing uniformity.

SCHOLAR.

What are the other Conjunctions which, with the first, form the class denominated by you *elementary?*

MASTER.

They are only the following three: *Que*, that, than, or how; *ni*, neither, nor; and *ou*, either, or.

QUE.

Je crois *qu'* il est malade.	I believe *that* he is sick.
Le soleil est plus grand *que* la lune.	The sun is larger *than* the moon.
Que vous êtes bonne & aimable!	*How* good and amiable you are!
Que le ciel comble vos vœux!	*May* heaven fulfil your vows!

NI.

That Conjunction implying a denial, demands, according to the sense, to be preceded or followed by the negative *ne*.

EXAMPLES.

Ne prenez *ni* cette fleur-ci, *ni* celle là.	Take *neither* this flower *nor* that.
Ni l'or *ni* les grandeurs *ne* nous rendent heureux.	*Neither* gold *nor* greatness make us happy.

But though *ni* is repeated in an enumeration as often as there are things to which the denial is applied, *ne* is used but once.

> *Il* n' *entend* ni *les vents qui grondent sur sa tête,*
> Ni *le bruit des rochers battus par la tempête,*
> Ni *ses tristes parens de douleur éperdus,*
> Ni *son amante, hélas! qui meurt, s' il* ne *vit plus.*
>
> DELILE.

> Ni *l' ardeur dont tu sais que je l' ai recherchée,*
> Ni *déjà sur son front ma couronne attachée,*
> Ni *cet asile même où je la fais garder,*
> Ni *mon juste corroux* n' *ont pu t' intimider.*
>
> RACINE.

OU.

This Conjunction leaves the liberty of choice, and it is used in doubt.

EXAMPLES.

C'est *ou* moi, *ou* vous, *ou* lui.	It is *either* I, *or* you, *or* he.

Enfin votre rigueur emporta la balance
Vous sûtes m' imposer l' exil ou *le silence.*

RACINE.

Demain j' attends la haîne ou *la faveur des hommes,*
Le nom de parricide ou *de libérateur;*
César, celui de prince ou *d' un* usurpateur.*

CORNEILLE.

Selon que vous serez plus ou *moins misérable,*
Les jugemens de cour vous rendront blanc ou *noir.*

LA FONTAINE.

Quelque sujet qu' on traite ou *plaisant* ou *sublime*
Que toujours le bons sens s' accorde avec la rime.

BOILEAU.

Scholar.

What difference do you discover between *que* and *et?*

Master.

I perceive a great analogy of functions between them; and your surprise will cease when you are told their origin is the same. *Que*, as well as *et*, draws its conjunctive force from the link-word *est*, which is represented by *e*, the very name for connection or life itself, united with *qu* an ancient word, the origin of which cannot, owing to its antiquity, be satisfactorily ascertained; the difference, however, observable between the two expressions is, that *que* serves to connect two Propositions, the first of which leaves the mind in suspense without the second one, which is absolutely necessary to complete the thought; while *et* connects two Propositions, the first of which offers a complete sense without the second one.

In the first sentence abovementioned, "Je crois *qu'* il est malade" *Je crois* and *il est malade* are both united by *que*: The Proposition which follows that *que*, serves evidently to render more complete, or determine, the sense begun by the Proposition which precedes it.

---

* It is to complete the metre that *un* is used. *D'usurpateur* (alone) should have been used; for the epithets of *parricide*, and *usurpateur*, are applied in a general sense.

SCHOLAR.

Is the *que* denoting comparison, and the *que* denoting admiration or desire, of the same species with the *que* just mentioned?

MASTER.

Exactly so.

SCHOLAR.

I am not altogether sensible of it, for instance; in "Je crois *qu'* il est malade," I clearly see two Propositions, but in "Le soleil est plus grand *que* la lune; *Que* vous êtes bonne & aimable! *Que* le ciel comble vos vœux!" I see but one Proposition in each of these sentences: those *que* must, therefore, certainly be of different species with your first *que*, which serves to connect two Propositions.

MASTER.

I am so much the more pleased with your remark, that you furnish me with an opportunity of speaking to you about the *ellipsis*, which is nothing but a suppression or an omission of words, which man, with the help of an active imagination, discovered he might dispense with in the expression of his sentiments, in order to come the more speedily to the manifestation of them before his hearers. The ellipsis, which is very frequent in language, has been one of the chief causes of the innumerable errors of grammarians.

The sentence "*Le soleil est plus grand* que *la lune*," stands for that other "*Le soleil est plus grand* que *la lune n' est grande*," in which you may perceive the whole part of the second proposition which the *que* was designed to unite with the first *Le soleil est plus grand.*

In the sentences { *Que* vous êtes bonne & aimable!
Que le ciel comble vos vœux!

the whole of the first Proposition is suppressed: It is for the former, such a one as, *On ne peut répéter assez* que, &c. one cannot repeat enough, *how*, &c. It is for the latter *Je désire* que, &c. I wish *that*, &c.

From the above, I have a right to conclude that the comparative, exclamative, and admirative *que*, are nothing but the conjunctive *que*. We will treat in the next conversation of the two kinds of Conjunctions which I call *elliptical* and *combined.*

SCHOLAR.

Before we begin that conversation, please to acquaint me with the origin of *ni* and *ou*.

MASTER.

Ni[*] is formed from the negative *ne:* the latter was generated by the nasal *n*, which is pronounced by driving the air with force through the nostrils, *n* was therefore of all sounds the fittest to represent negative which is always forbidding. Hence came the *ne* and *non* of the Latins, which are common to our modern languages formed from theirs. This *n* preceded by *e* or *ei* formed the word *ain*, which is the negative of the eastern nations, and from which sprung the negative *in* of the Latins which is kept up in its primitive pronunciation *ain* in the French words in-*civil*, in-*juste*, in-*constant*, &c.

Ou, which designates an opposition between two objects, comes therefore from the primitive word *ou*, by means of which one designated a place different from that where one was, and beings different from those that had just been the subject of conversation; it was, therefore, opposed to *E*, which designated the place itself where one is; and of course, properly devised to designate objects opposed or placed in opposite directions. Hence was formed the name of ou-*est* (west) which signifies, word for word, opposed to *est*, (east) &c.

The two Conjunctions *ni* and *ou* may be considered rather as words devised to give variety and conciseness to speech, than as words of primary necessity; as they can both be supplied by the conjunctive *et* and other words.

Ni, for instance, can be expressed by *et* and a negative, thus: "Il n' a *ni* vice *ni* vertu" may be rendered by "Il *n*' a point de vice *&* il *n*' a point de vertu."

Ou is used for *et* and the Preposition *entre;* when for instance, one leaves you the choice and says, "choisissez la paix *ou* la guerre;" it is the same as if "choisissez *entre* la paix *&* *entre* la guerre" had been said.

---

[*] See Grammaire Universelle.

CONVERSATION XIV.

OF ELLIPTICAL AND COMBINED CONJUNCTIONS.

SCHOLAR.

HOW many *elliptical* Conjunctions do you admit in French?

MASTER.

Four: viz. *Si*, if; *mais*, but; *car*, for; *or*, which is wanting in English; and *donc*, therefore.

SCHOLAR.

Please to show me what suppressed expressions these elliptical Conjunctions stand for.

MASTER.

With infinite pleasure.—*Si* comes from the Latin *sit*, which means *qu' il soit*, and whereas some Verb was understood before *qu' il*, as no phrase could begin with it; it follows that *si*, stands for, or is the abridgement of, that long conjunctive phrase, as, *Je suppose qu' il soit vrai que*, I suppose it is true that.

EXAMPLES.

Pensez bien & parlez peu, *si* vous voulez qu' on vous regarde comme un homme d' esprit.	Think well and speak little, if you wish to be looked upon as a man of understanding.

> Si *mon coeur, de tout tems, facile à tes désirs.*
> *N' a jamais d' un moment différé tes plaisirs;*
> Si, *pour te prodiguer mes plus tendres caresses,*
> *Je n' ai point exigé ni sermens ni promesses;*
> Si, *toi seul à mon lit, enfin, eus toujours part,*
> *Diffère au moins d' un jour ce funeste départ.*
>
> BOILEAU.

MAIS

is a word that once signified *plus* (in French) as may be ascertained principally by the works of the old French romance writers where this expression occurs often: Now, that it is used to connect a phrase with another, it has preserved a part of its ancient meaning, and signifies that "*quelque* chose de *plus que*," something more than has been said, is going to be said, that will fix the ideas completely about the subject of the discourse. It may also be solved by the expressions *et de plus*. *Mais* is, therefore, to all intents and purposes, an elliptical Conjunction. Mr. Horne Tooke, who has cleared so much rubbish out of grammar, proves that by its origin, the Conjunction *but*, which corresponds to our *mais*, instead of intimating a stop, as some grammarians had thought, always intimates something to follow, or an addition.

EXAMPLES.

La satisfaction qu' on tire de la vengeance, ne dure qu' un moment; *mais* celle que l' on tire de la clémence, est éternelle.	The satisfaction we derive from revenge, lasts, but one moment; *but* that we derive from clemency, is eternal.

Louis du haut des cieux lui prêtait son appui,
Mais *il cachait le bras qui combattait pour lui.*

VOLTAIRE.

............................il chérit la critique,
Vous avez sur ses vers un pouvoir despotique;
Mais *tout ce beau discours dont il vient vous flatter,*
N' est rien qu' un piége adroit pour vous les réciter.

BOILEAU.

CAR

is an elliptical Conjunction, used to account for a Proposition brought forward.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne pourrai y aller, *car* je suis retenu au lit par uue fièvre ardente.	I shall not be able to go thither, *for* I am confined to my bed by an ardent fever.

Tout ce que les mortels ont de plus redoutable,
Semble s' être assemblé contre nous par hasard;
Je veux dire la brigue & l' éloquence, car:
D' un côté le crédit du défunt m' épouvante.

RACINE.

In the above sentences *car* stands very clearly for *par la raison que;* it is therefore an elliptical Conjunction.

OR.

This Conjunction, which, as we have said, is wanting in English, designates the actual existence of a condition without which what one is speaking about could not take place; it is derived from the Latin word *hora* which became *hor* then *or* in French. Here is an application of this Conjunction.

Tous les hommes sont mortels.
Or *vous êtes homme.*
Donc vous êtes mortel.

Or stands for those expressions: *à cette heure*, *à présent*, *dans ce moment.*

DONC,

which generally follows that Conjunction, may according to Sicard, be analysed thus:

" Tous les hommes sont mortels."
or vous êtes homme.
. . .
. . .
. . .
. . .
. . .
. . .
...
.
De ce la vient.
De là vient.
D' ou vient.
De unde venit quod.
De un venit q.
D ON C
. .. .
. .. .
. .. .
. .. .
. .. .
. . . .
DONC.

Thus the word donc contains in itself the value of the Preposition *de*, the Latin Adverb, *unde*, and the Latin word *quod.* In French, *donc* is the equivalent of these words: *De là vient que.* Every body knows that the guttural, *c*, replaces *q*, and reciprocally; it is, therefore, easy to find in the word *donc* the representation of the four Latin words *de unde venit quod.*

Scholar.

What are the *combined* Conjunctions?

Master.

They are the following, which we have divided into two classes, according as they govern the indicative or subjunctive: They are called *combined*, because the Conjunction *que* which gives them a conjunctive property is combined with some of the other parts of speech. They have, owing to that circumstance, with some propriety, been denominated *conjunctive* phrases.

COMBINED CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE *INDICATIVE*, EXEMPLIFIED.

Ainsi que,	Je l'ai fait *ainsi que* je vous l'ai promis,
As, as well as.	I have done it *as* I have promised you.
Aussi que,	Une place *aussi* forte *que* l' était cette ville, n' aurait pas dû être prise,
As as.	A place *as* strong *as* that city was should not have been taken.
Aussi peu que,	Vous en prendrez *aussi peu qu'* il vous plaira,
As little as.	You will take *as little* of it *as* you please.
Aussitôt que,	Je suis arrivé *aussitôt qu'* il m' a été possible,
As soon as.	I arrived *as soon as* I could.
Aussi bien que,	Il est en état de le faire *aussi bien que* vous,
As well as.	He is able to do it *as well as* you.
Autant que,	Il aime la lecture *autant que* vous aimez le jeu,
As much as.	He loves reading as much as you love play.
Après que,	Nous sortirons *après que* vous aurez dîné,
When.	We will go out *when* you have dined.
Attendu que (seldom used),	Je l'ai puni *attendu qu'* il avait tort,
As, because.	I punished him *because* (or *as*) he was in the wrong.

A (*à*) *ce que*,	*A ce que* je vois, vous ne l' aurez pas à tems,
By, according as.	*By* what I see, you will not have it in time.
A (*à*) *mesure que*,	*A mesure qu'* ils paraissaient, ils étaient accablés d' une grêle de balles,
In proportion as.	*In proportion as* they appeared, they were overpowered by a shower of balls.
A (*à*) *cause que*,	Faut-il qu' il soit insolent, *à cause qu'* il est riche?
Because.	Must he be insolent, *because* he is rich?
A (*à*) *condition que*,	J' y consens, *à condition qu'* il viendra,
On condition that.	I agree to it, *on condition that* he will come.
A (*à*) *la charge que*,	Je vous loue cette maison, *à la charge que* vous l'entretiendrez,
On condition that.	I let this house to you *on condition that* you'll keep it in repair.
Bien entendu que,	Je vous l'accorde, *bien entendu que* vous tiendrez parole,
Provided.	I grant it to you, *provided* you will keep your word.
C'est pour cela que,	*C' est pour cela que* je ne lui ai pas accordé sa demande,
It is for that.	*It is for that* I did not grant him his request.
Dès que,	*Dès que* la paix sera faite, je partirai pour l' Europe,
As soon as.	*As soon as* peace is made, I shall set off for Europe.
Depuis que,	Qu'avez-vous fait, *depuis que* vous êtes ici?
Since.	What have you done *since* you are here?
De manière que,	*De manière qu' il* n'était pas content du tout,
So that.	*So that* he was not pleased at all.
De sorte que,	*De sorte qu'* il n' a pu en venir à bout,
So that, insomuch.	*So that* he could not bring it about.

De façon que,	La nuit vint, *de façon que* je fus contraint de me retirer,
So that.	Night came on, *so that* I was obliged to retire.
Lorsque,	*Lorsqu' il* apprit cette fatale nouvelle, il partit sur le champ,
When.	*When* he learned this fatal news, he set off immediately.
Parceque,	Je vous reprends de vos fautes, *parceque* je vous aime,
Because.	I chide you for your faults, *because* I love you.
Pendant que,	*Pendant que* vous jouez, il étudie sa leçon,
While.	*While* you play, he studies his task.
Puisque,	*Puisque* vous le voulez, cela m' est égal,
Since.	*Since* you will have it so, it is all one to me.
Sitôt que,	*Sitôt que* j' eus reçu le paquet, je le lui adressai,
As soon as.	*As soon as* I had received the bundle, I forwarded it to him.
Tandis que,	*Tandis que* vous causez, le chat emporte la viande,
While.	*While* you prate, the cat carries off the meat.
Tant que,	*Tant que* j' aurai de l' argent, vous n' en manquerez pas,
As long as.	*As long as* I have money, you shall not want any.
Tellement que,	*Tellement que* vous ne voulez pas me répondre,
So that.	*So that* you refuse to answer me.
Tellement que,	Il est *tellement* occupé *qu'* il ne reçoit personne,
So very that.	He is *so very* busy *that* he admits nobody.
Vu que,	Il ne le fera pas, *vu qu'* on le lui a défendu,
Seeing that, considering.	He will not do it, *seeing that* it is forbidden to him.

COMBINED CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE *SUBJUNCTIVE*, EXEMPLIFIED.

A (*à*) *Dieu ne plaise que*,	*A Dieu ne plaise que* j' en aie envie,
God forbid.	*God forbid* I should wish for it.
Afin que,	Je suis sa caution, *afin qu'* il soit mis en liberté,
That, to the end that.	I am his surety, *that* he may be set at liberty.
A (*à*) *moins que*,	Vous ne l' aurez pas, *à moins que* vous n' en payiez la moitié,
Unless.	You shall not have it, *unless* you pay the half of it.
Avant que,	Il est entré *avant que* nous fussions levés,
Before.	He came in *before* we were up.
Au cas que,	Il faudra nous retirer, *au cas que* cela arrive,
In case, if.	We must withdraw, *in case* it should happen.
En cas que,	*En cas qu'* elle vienne, dites-lui que je suis sorti,
In case, if.	*If* she comes, tell her I am gone out.
A (*à*) *la bonne heure que*,	*A la bonne heure qu'* il sorte, pourvu qu' il revienne bientôt,
I, &c. agree.	*I agree* he should go out, provided he soon comes back.
Bien que,	Il est honnête homme, *bien qu'* il soit pauvre,
Tho', altho'.	He is an honest man, *tho'* he be poor.
Encore que,	*Encore qu'* il soit riche, il n' en vaut pas mieux,
Tho', altho'.	*Altho'* he be rich, he is not a bit the better for it.
Ce n' est pas que,	*Ce n' est pas que* je croie un mot de ce qu' il dit,
It is not that.	*It is not that* I believe one word of what he says.
De peur que,	Il a fait son testament, *de peur qu'* il ne mourût,
For fear, lest.	He made his will, *for fear* or *lest* he should die.

De crainte que.	Dépêchez-vous, *de crainte que* l'heure ne soit passée,
For fear.	Make haste, *for fear* the hour be over.
Loin que,	*Loin qu'*il fasse du bruit, il est tranquille,
Far from.	*Far from* making a noise, he is quiet.
Moyennant que,	Il l'aura, *moyennant qu'*il en paye la valeur,
Provided that.	He shall have it, *provided* that he pays its value.
Non que ou *non pas que,*	*Non que* (ou *non pas que*) j'y prétende,
Not that.	*Not that* I should pretend to it.
Plût à Dieu,	*Plût à Dieu* que les hommes entendissent leurs vrais intérêts!
Would to God.	*Would to God* that men should understand their own interests!
Pour que,	Il faut un autre gouvernement, *pour que* j'aille en France,
To the end that.	*To the end that* I may go to France, there must be another government.
Pour peu que,	Il le fera, *pour peu que* vous lui en parliez,
If ever so little.	He will do it, *if* you speak to him *ever so little* about it.
Pourvu que,	Ils travailleront, *pourvu qu'*on les paye bien,
Provided.	They will work, *provided* they are well paid.
Quoique,	Sa philosophie fut adoptée, *quoi qu'*on s'y opposât d'abord,
Tho'.	His philosophy was adopted, *tho'* they opposed it at first.
Sans que,	Cela pourrait arriver, *sans qu'*il méritât des reproches,
Without.	That might take place, *without* his deserving reproaches.
Soit que,	*Soit qu'*il parte ou qu'il demeure,
Whether.	*Whether* he sets out or remains.
Supposé que,	Quel fruit en retirerez-vous, *supposé qu'*il y consente?
Supposing that.	What will you gain by it, *supposing that* he consent to it?

NOTE....The following modes of expressions having *de* instead of *que*, require the Verb in the *infinitive* only.

A (à) la charge de,	Je lui ai vendu ma terre, *à la charge de* payer mes créanciers,
On condition of.	I sold him my estate, *on condition of* his paying my creditors.
Afin de,	Il est allé le trouver, *afin d'* obtenir sa grâce,
In order to.	He called upon him, *in order to* obtain his pardon.
De crainte de,	Les troupes se fortifièrent, *de crainte d'* être surprises.
Lest, for fear of.	The troops fortified themselves, *for fear of* being surprised.
De peur de,	Nous avons fait venir du blé, *de peur d'* en manquer,
Lest, for fear of.	We ordered corn, *for fear of* wanting it.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

SCHOLAR.

What are the Interjections?

MASTER.

They are *sounds* which serve to portray in a lively manner the affections of the soul, whether in joy, pain, trouble, despair, indignation, admiration, surprise, &c.

SCHOLAR.

Why do you not call them words, instead of sounds, as you called the other parts of speech?

MASTER.

Because, their functions are very different from words. A word is the sign of an *idea*—an Interjection is that of a *sensation*. The difference is, therefore, very great, and as the sensation has generated the idea which is the effect of it; so has the Interjection generated words, the signs of our ideas and thoughts.

SCHOLAR.

Permit me then to express my surprise to you, for not having treated of them first of all.

MASTER.

I did not, because it would have been of no use to you; the Interjections having no influence on the other parts of speech, and being a kind of strangers among them; they must, of course, be presented the last to the investigation of grammarians; whilst they must, first, be presented to the eyes of the etymologist, whose business is to search the origin and filiation of words deduced from one another.

SCHOLAR.

Please to acquaint me with the principal French Interjections, exemplified in French sentences.

MASTER.

With pleasure. They are as follow: *Ah! ha! aïe! eh! hé! fi! O! oh! ouf! him! hom! hon! hélas! hi, hi, hi!*

Ah! expresses remorse, wrath, admiration, or joy.

Ah! si tu l'avais vu le poignard dans le sein,
S' attendrir à la vue de son lâche assassin!
Voltaire.

Ah! que ton imprudence excite mon courroux!
Racine.

Ah! qu' il t' en coûtait peu pour charmer Héloise!
Tu parlais, à ta voix tu me voyais soumise.
Colardeau.

Ah! je respire; enfin nous l'emportons:
Vous devenez un homme raisonnable.
Voltaire.

Ha! expresses nothing but surprise, and is used only in this sense:

Ha! vous voila.

Aïe! expresses pain.

Aïe! Aïe! voilà mes douleurs qui me reprennent.

Eh! expresses mercy, pity, or tenderness.

Jouis—je le ferai—Mais quand donc? Dès demain—
Eh! mon ami, la mort te peut prendre en chemin:
Jouis dès aujourd'hui.
La Fontaine.

Eh! seigneur, excusez sa jeunesse imprudente.
Voltaire.

Eh! mon père, oubliez votre rang à ma vue.

Racine.

Hé! serves chiefly to call.—It is used also with *bien* in interrogation, and when it expresses no passion.

Hé, Petit-Jean, Petit-Jean!

Racine.

Hé bien, ton maître, enfin, a-t-il trouvé sa botte?

Regnard.

Hé bien, ma chère sœur, quel soin ici t'amène?

Regnard.

Fi! expresses contempt, or disgust.

————fi du plaisir
Que la crainte peut corrompre!

La Fontaine.

O! expresses inward and profound grief, despair, love, or indignation.

O douleur, *ô* regrets; *ô* vieillesse pesante!
O vengeance, *ô* tendresse, *ô* nature, *ô* devoir!

Voltaire.

O ciel! il est donc vrai que mon amant me fuit!

Colardeau.

O douce volupté! plaisirs où je me noie!

Colardeau.

O jour! jour exécrable!
Jour affreux! où l' acier, dans une main coupable,
Osa————

Colardeau.

Oh! expresses surprise, as in,

Oh! oh! je n' y prenais pas garde.

Oh! expresses affirmation, as in,

Oh! parbleu, je vous tiens.

Oh! expresses indignation, as in,

Oh! vieillesse facile! *Oh!* Jeunesse imprudente!
Oh! de mes cheveux gris, honte trop évidente!
Est-il dessous le ciel, père plus malheureux?

Gresset.

Oh! is sometimes followed by *que*, then it expresses desire, as,

> *Oh!* que le ciel soigneux de notre poésie,
> Grand Roi, ne nous fit-il plus voisins de l' Asie!
> *Boileau.*

> *Oh!* que si cet hiver un rhume salutaire.
> *Boileau.*

Ouf! expresses suffocation, excess of fatigue.

> *Ouf!* ne m' étrangle pas—*Ouf!* je n' en puis plus.

Him, *hom*, *hon*, express doubt, interrogation, and astonishment.

> *Hon!* que dites-vous là?

Hélas! expresses grief, complaint.

> *Hélas!* plus je lui parle, & plus il m' intéresse.
> *Voltaire.*

> *Hélas!* petits moutons, que vous êtes heureux!
> *Madame Deshoulières.*

Hi, *hi*, *hi*, expresses laughing.

> *Hi*, *hi*, *hi*, comme vous voilà bâti! Vous êtes si plaisant que je ne saurais m' empêcher de rire, *hi*, *hi*, *hi*.
> *Moliere.*

SECTION II.

OF SYNTAX.

INSTRUCTION THE FIRST.

SCHOLAR.

WHAT is the meaning of *Syntax*?

MASTER.

Syntax is the right *ordering* of words united to express thoughts, and is founded on the polite *custom* of the language of which it treats.

SCHOLAR.

Instead of so many words and phrases, why did you not first teach me the laws and rules of Syntax, according to the plan chalked out by every writer on French grammar for the use of the English pupil?

MASTER.

For one reason only, and this is irresistible.—Those very *words* and *phrases* you mention, constitute the language with which I wished you to be acquainted, while all the rules of the language put together do not in the least.

SCHOLAR.

What then are the rules of a language?

MASTER.

They are the result of observations on a language; and as observations on a language cannot be the language itself, a language must necessarily be learned before the rules thereof can be taught.

Those principles have guided me in the course of your instruction in French. What is the consequence? You, now, owing to the numerous phrases and modes of expression with which your memory is stored, and which, I trust, are correct, are not only able to speak and understand French *grammatically*, but even to understand and relish the *poets*, although three months ago, you knew not a single word of that language.

Moreover, behold from the plan pursued with you, besides the advantage of acquiring, in an amazing short space, a sufficient knowledge of the French language, you have derived another one equally precious, though unperceived at present, that of improving the faculty of thinking; nor is this to be at all wondered at, if it be considered that the true teachers of all things, *Nature* and *Analysis* have been our only guides.

The part of my work intitled "*The Philosophy of Language*" is a treatise on Logic (in disguise), which as it rests on the same basis (the origin and generation of ideas, and the use of general and abstract terms in language,) will enable you easily to understand the works of the best metaphysicians such as Locke, Condillac, &c.

Before closing this conversation, I cannot avoid giving you some interesting advice on the mode of conducting your studies. If you have in view to improve in knowledge, I would recommend to you the study of *metaphysics*, and particularly of the works of Condillac, in French: as metaphysics is the basis of all science, an acquaintance with the writings of this celebrated author, who has fallen into very few errors, will pave your way to the greatest progress in all your future studies.—Nor need you be surprised at this, as metaphysics is the science of *ideas*, and teaches how to govern the mind in the search of *truth* and useful discoveries; which knowledge, indeed, is so much the more necessary, in the present age, as, without it, one would easily become the dupe of writers, who, assisted by *abstract terms* which they only abuse, endeavour to seduce the morals or corrupt the politics of their readers.

My heart groaning under the most poignant wounds of affliction, cannot, in proof of what is here advanced, avoid recurring to the late ever deplorable revolution in France. —How many millions of men have been the dupes of the words LIBERTY, EQUALITY, PHILOSOPHY! Had the individuals to whom those lofty terms were incessantly sounded, been able to analyse or review in their mind the abstract ideas of which they are the signs, these deluded people would soon have discovered that instead of *liberty* they were in fact presented with nothing but fetters, that the boasted *equality* was an absurd chimera, and that vain sophistry was the *philosophy* of the day.

INSTRUCTION THE SECOND.

ON THE ARTICLE.

MASTER.

The rules concerning the *Article* being many, and it being contrary, in almost every instance, to the genius of the French language, to use a *Noun* as subject or object in a sentence, without preceding it by the *Article*, I shall begin with it. Please, therefore, to give particular attention to the following rules.

RULE I.

The *Article*, though it may be omitted in English, in French *precedes* every Noun, and *accords* with it in gender and number.

EXAMPLES.

La crainte *de la* mort est naturelle à l' homme.	*The* fear *of* death is natural *to* man.
La paix ramène *le* repos, *la* tranquillité & *les* richesses.	Peace brings back rest, tranquillity and wealth.
Il apprend *le* dessin, *la* dance & *les* mathématiques.	He is learning drawing, dancing, and mathematics.
L' ignorance est *la* mère *de l'* admiration, *de l'* erreur, *du* scrupule, *de l'* irrésolution, *de la* superstition, *des* ridicules & *des* préventions de toute espèce.	Ignorance is *the* mother *of* admiration, error, scruple, irresolution, superstition, ridicule, and prejudices of all kinds.
Les Egyptiens accoutumaient leurs enfans *à l'* obéissance, *au* travail, *à la* sobriété, *au* désintéressement, *à l'*amour *des* arts ou *des* lettres & *au* désir *de l'* honneur.	*The* Egyptians trained up their children *to* obedience, labour, sobriety, disinterestedness, the love of arts or letters and thirst of honour.
Apportez moi *un* essuie-main, *un* verre, *un* couteau, *une* fourchette, *une* assiette & *une* serviette.	Bring me *a* towel, tumbler, knife, fork, plate and napkin.
J' ai besoin d' *un* manteau, d' *un* parapluie & d' *une* paire de bottes.	I want *a* cloak, umbrella and *a* pair of boots.

RULE II.

Although proper names of *men* and *cities*, in general, require *not* the *Article*, proper names of *countries*, *seas*, *rivers*, and *mountains* always admit it before them.

EXAMPLES.

La France est au nord *de la* Méditerranée.	France lies to the north *of the* Mediterranean.
J' ai passé par *la* Hollande, *l'*Allemagne, & *la* Pologne.	I have passed through Holland, Germany, and Poland.
J' ai traversé plusieurs fois *la* Tamise en bateau.	I have crossed *the* Thames several times in a boat.
Le Parnasse, *le* Pinde, & l' Hélicon, sont les montagnes favorites des Poëtes.	Parnassus, Pindus, and Helicon are the favorite mountains of poets.
La cîme *du* Mont-Blanc a 2400 toises au-dessus du niveau de la mer.	The top *of* Mont-Blanc is 4800 yards above the level of the sea.

REMARKS ON THE ABOVE RULE.

Some provinces and kingdoms having the *same* names with the capital cities thereof, always *dispense* with the Article.

EXAMPLES.

Naples est un pays délicieux.	*Naples* is a delightful country.
Valence est une des plus agréables provinces d'Espagne.	*Valence* is one of the most agreeable provinces of Spain.

To or *in* when followed by the name of a country of Europe, is expressed by the Preposition *en*, and *from* by *de;* but when followed by the name of any of the *four quarters* of the *world*, *from* is better expressed by the Preposition and Article *de l'*.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai dessein d'aller *en* Italie, au printems.	I intend going *to* Italy, in the spring.
J' ai voyagé *en* Angleterre, *en* Ecosse & *en* Irlande.	I have travelled *in* England, Scotland, and Ireland.
Comptez-vous rester long-tems *en* Prusse ?	Do you intend to stay long *in* Prussia ?
D' où venez-vous ? Je viens *d'* Espagne, *de* Portugal, &c.	From whence do you come ? I come *from* Spain, Portugal, &c.
J' arrive *de l'* Europe, *de l'*Asie, *de l'* Afrique & *de l'* Amérique.	I arrive *from* Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.

But when the country mentioned is *out* of *Europe* and not *generally* known or of little importance, then the Articles *au*, *à la*, *aux*; *du*, *de la*, *des*, instead of the Prepositions *en* or *de*, should always precede.

EXAMPLES.

Il m'a dit qu'il devait aller *au* Méxique, *au* Bengal, *à la* Floride, *au* Peloponèse, *au* Milanais.	He told me he was to go *to* Mexico, Bengal, Florida, Peloponnesus, Milaneze.
Il vient d' arriver *du* Mexique, *du* Bengal, *de la* Floride, *du* Peloponèse, *du* Milanais.	He is just arrived *from* Mexico, Bengal, Florida, Peloponnesus, Milaneze.

RULE III.

When *national* or *nominal* Adjectives of *European* nations or of the *four quarters* of the *globe* are used, in English, before a Noun denoting some *commodity*, *production* or *peculiarities* relative to that country, or city, the Adjective is translated, in French, by the name of the country *itself* and placed after the Noun of *commodity*, &c. which is immediately followed by the Preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Les fruits *de France* valent mieux que ceux *d' Angleterre*.	The *French* fruits are better than the *English*.
Le drap *d' Espagne* est excellent.	*Spanish* cloth is excellent.
La bière *de Flandres* n' est pas aussi bonne que celle *de Hollande*.	*Flemish* beer is not so good as the *Dutch*.
Les vins *d' Asie* sont fort estimés.	*Asiatic* wines are highly esteemed.
La pourpre *de Tyr* était fort recherchée.	The *Tyrian* purple was much sought after.
Les côtes *d' Angleterre* sont bien défendues.	The *English* coasts are well defended.

Remark, although we may say, with equal propriety, la noblesse *Française*, or la noblesse *de France*, the French nobility, we cannot say, le Roi *Français*, but le Roi *de France*, the French king.

If the *national* Adjectives of countries *out* of *Europe*, or those of countries not *generally* known, be used, the Article *du*, *de la* &c. should be used, instead of the Preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

L' or *du Pérou* fit commettre bien des crimes aux Espagnols.	*Peruvian* gold induced the Spaniards to commit a great many crimes.
Les mouchoirs *de l' Inde* sont à présent très à la mode.	*Indian* handkerchiefs are now much in fashion.
Les vins *du Mantouan* sont fort bons.	*Mantuan* wines are very good.

SCHOLAR.

Do proper names of *individuals* and *cities* ever take the *Article?*

MASTER.

Yes, in particular cases: 1st. We can place the Article *plural* before the names of *great men*, as it has been remarked in a former part of this work, to which you are referred (page 45).

2d. Before the name of a *woman*, (in the *singular* only), by way of *derision* or *contempt*.

3d. It may sometimes be used before the names of *play-actresses*.

EXAMPLES.

La Brinvilliers était une fameuse empoisonneuse.	*The Brinvilliers* was a famous poisoner.
La Saint-Huberti a charmé tout Paris par la mélodie de sa voix.	*The Saint-Huberti* charmed all Paris by the melody of her voice.

N. B. Before the proper name of the first example, the words *femme appelée*, a woman called; and before that of the second, the words *actrice appelée*, an actress called, are understood.

The *Article* is also placed before some originally *Italian* names such as *Le* Tasse, *Le* Carrache, &c: before the first, the word *poëte*, and before the second, the word *peintre*, are understood. Proper names of *cities* take the Article, only when they have kept up their original *appellative* signification, as, *le Châtelet* (for le petit château) *la Rochelle*—*le Hâvre*—*le Caire* (la ville, in Arabian) &c.

Remark, the *Article* may be used in French before *Adjectives*, *Prepositions*, *Adverbs*, *Conjunctions*, and the *Infinitives* of some Verbs, which thereby become so many Nouns. As we have attended before (in page 44) to this property of the *Articles*, the learner is there referred for examples.

RULE IV.

The *Indicative* Article, instead of the *declarative*, as in English, is used, in French, before Nouns of *measure*, *weight*, and *number*.

EXAMPLES.

MESURE.	MEASURE.
Le drap vaut tant *la* verge.	Cloth is worth so much *a* yard.
Le charbon se vend trois chelings *le* boisseau.	Coals sell (or are sold) at three shillings *a* bushel.
POIDS.	WEIGHT.
Les chandelles se vendent quinze sous *la* livre.	Candles are sold at fifteen pence *a* pound.
Le foin coûte à présent une demi-guinée *le* quintal.	Hay costs now half a guinea *a* hundred.
NOMBRE.	NUMBER.
Les œufs se sont vendus jusqu' à vingt sous *la* douzaine—& les choux jusqu' à deux gourdes *le* cent.	Eggs have been sold as high as twenty-pence *a* dozen—and cabbages as much as two dollars *a* hundred.

Remark, that in the following examples and the like, the Article *indicative* is elegantly rendered by the Preposition *par*.

EXAMPLES.

Elle donne à son maître de musique une guinée *par* leçon.	She gives her music master a guinea *a* or *per* lesson.
Je prends trois leçons d'armes *par* semaine.	I take three lessons in fencing *a* week.

RULE V.

Whenever the word *some* be expressed or understood, in English, before a *Noun*, singular or plural, or an *Adjec-*

tive preceding a Noun, in the singular only, it is rendered in French, by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, and accords with the gender and number and the initial letter of the Substantive.

EXAMPLES
FOR THE *NOUN*, SINGULAR OR PLURAL.

Envoyez-moi *du* poisson, *de l'* ail, *de l'* huile, *de la* moutarde & *des* anchois.	Send me *some* fish, *some* garlic, oil, mustard, and anchovies.
J'ai acheté *du* papier, *de la* cire à cacheter, *de l'* encre & *des* plumes toutes taillées.	I have bought paper, sealing-wax, ink, and *some* ready made pens.

EXAMPLES
FOR THE *ADJECTIVE*, IN THE SINGULAR.

Du bon pain & *de la* bonne viande suffisent à l' homme tempérant.	Good bread and meat suffice a temperate man.
Il nous a envoyé *de l'*excellent fromage, mais *du* mauvais beurre.	He sent us excellent cheese, but bad butter.

RULE VI.

If the word *some* be placed or understood before one of those Adjectives, whose correspondents, in French, are put before their Nouns, and are in the *plural* number, the preposition *de* alone must be placed before the *former*—If the Adjective be one of these that may change place and come so immediately after the Noun, *de* is changed for *des* (*).

EXAMPLES.

Il a *de* beaux chevaux dans son écurie.	He has fine horses in his stable.
Ce boulanger fournit *de* bons pains à ses pratiques.	This baker supplies his customers with good loaves.
J'ai vu *de* bonnes viandes, à la boucherie.	I saw good meats, at the market.
De célèbres auteurs (* ou *des* auteurs célèbres) pensent ainsi.	Celebrated authors think so.

SCHOLAR.

You appear to differ very widely in opinion with the writers of French grammars for the use of Englishmen. They all maintain invariably that *de* (preposition), answering to *some* expressed or understood, must always be used before an *Adjective*, whether *singular* or *plural*, when preceding its *Noun*: for instance; instead of saying with you, "*du* bon pain & *de la* bonne viande suffisent," &c. they would, according to their rule, say, "*de* bon pain & *de* bonne viande suffisent," &c.

MASTER.

This impropriety of expression struck, not long ago, some of our best grammarians, who maintained, that a preference should be given to the mode of expression I recommend, and which now begins to be also sanctioned by polite custom. In fact, when you say, "*de* bon pain & *de* bonne viande suffisent," owing to the pronunciation, which is the same, in both cases, one cannot discriminate, whether you do mean, de bon*s* pain*s* & de bonne*s* viande*s* suffisent, &c. the meaning of which is very different.

By analysing those two modes, it might easily be proved that not only perspicuity, but logic entitles our mode of expression to a just preference. Nor am I deficient in the best authorities on my side of the question; such are, DOMERGUE, FABRE, and SICARD.

Please to give your attention to the following rule, which is rather difficult, and has been very wrongly explained in such *French* grammars as have fallen into my hands.

RULE VII.

When a French Noun is accompanied by several *Adjectives*, the *Article* must be repeated before each of them, if they do not qualify the same object *individually*, although the same Noun may be qualified—But, should the Adjectives qualify both the *Noun* and an *object* which is the same individually, the *repetition* of the *Article* may be dispensed with.

EXAMPLES

WITH THE REPETITION OF THE *ARTICLE*.

Le bon & *le* mauvais fruit, *ou* *Le* bon fruit & *le* mauvais.	ne sont pas encore cueillis	*The* good and bad fruits are not yet gathered.

Les vieux & *les* nouveaux soldats, *ou* *Les* vieux soldats & *les* nouveaux.	firent des merveilles.	*The* old and new soldiers did wonders.

In the above examples it is evident that the sense requires the *repetition* of the *Article;* as *bon & mauvais* cannot qualify the same object; for a thing cannot be *good* and *bad* at the same time, which would imply a *contradiction*—Two kinds of fruit must, therefore, be contrasted together; one *good* and the other *bad*—The *Article* must then be *repeated*, as there are *two* nouns implied, though one only be expressed. The same reasoning applies to the second example as well as to all others of the same kind.

EXAMPLES

WITHOUT THE REPETITION OF THE *ARTICLE.*

La sage & belle femme, *ou* *La* femme sage & belle.	que vous avez épousée.	*The* wise and handsome woman you have married.
La chaste & timide bergère, *ou* *La* bergère chaste & timide.	qui conduit son troupeau.	*The* chaste and bashful shepherdess who tends her flock.

In the preceding examples the two Adjectives concur to qualify an object which is the same *individually*, as there is but *one* woman who is both *sage* and *belle*, and *one* shepherdess who is both *chaste* and *bashful.*

I shall conclude, by observing, that the manner in which the above rule is treated of in *French* grammars, will not shelter the scholar from making blunders; for, in them, it is generally thus explained,

" If a *Substantive* be accompanied by several *Adjectives*,
" the *Article* is to be *repeated* before *both* Adjectives, when
" they, each of them, imply *opposite* qualities; otherwise
" the *Article* is used before the *first* Adjective only."

According to this rule we could not say, in French,

Les beaux & *les* jolis objets n'inspirent pas les mêmes sentimens.	Handsome and pretty objects do not inspire the same feelings.

For *beaux* and *jolis* are nearly *synonymous* terms: but logic, which binds more than the rules of grammar, would reprove this construction; and though the two epithets be nearly *synonymous*, yet, as the matter does not relate to objects altogether, *beaux* and *jolis*, but to some that are exclusively *beaux*, and some that are exclusively *jolis*, it requires that the Article be repeated. Our rule, being founded on a *distinction* of objects (which distinction precludes any error) must, of consequence, be more correct than theirs, which is founded only on the *vague* and many times *fanciful* comparison of *opposite* or *synonymous* meaning of Adjectives.

RULE VIII.

Whenever a Noun is *preceded* by an Adjective, in the *superlative*, the Article is used but *once*.

EXAMPLES

WITHOUT THE REPETITION OF THE *ARTICLE*.

Les plus habiles gens font quelquefois *les* plus grossières fautes.	*The* most skilful men sometimes commit the grossest blunders.
Il parle d' un *des* plus savans hommes.	He speaks of one *of the* most learned men.
Les plus sûrs moyens ne sont pas toujours permis.	*The* surest means are not always lawful.
Les plus profondes pensées & *les* plus brillantes idées sont toujours les fruits du génie.	*The* most profound thoughts and most brilliant ideas are always the fruits of genius.

RULE IX.

But should the *Adjective* be placed *after* the *Noun*, the *Article* is repeated immediately *before* the *Adjective*.

EXAMPLES

WITH THE REPETITION OF THE *ARTICLE*.

Les gens *les* plus habiles font quelquefois *les* fautes *les* plus grossières.
Il parle d' un *des* hommes *les* plus savans.
Les moyens *les* plus sûrs ne sont pas toujours permis.
Les pensées *les* plus profondes & *les* idées *les* plus brillantes sont toujours les fruits du génie.

MASTER.

Though it must appear to you that the French delight in often using the *Article* where it might be dispensed with, as is done, in English, in corresponding cases, yet they suppress it in several cases, where, in English, it must be expressed. Your attention to the following, concerning the suppression of the *Indicative Article*, will serve effectually to secure you, in such cases, from *Anglicisms*.

RULE X.

The *Indicative* Article *le* &c. is not expressed, in French, before *Ordinal* numbers: 1st. When the preceding Noun is mentioned with a view of *quoting* it, or as a *title* of a book: 2dly. When they are annexed to *proper* names, to distinguish the same *proper* names from one another.

EXAMPLES.

Livre *premier*, chapitre *second*, paragraphe *trois*, section *six*.	Book *the first*, chapter *the second*, paragraph *the third*, section *the sixth*.
George *premier*, *second*, *trois*.	George *the first*, *the second*, *the third*.
Louis *seize*, Roi de France, fut assassiné le vingt-un Janvier, mil sept cent quatre-vingt-treize.	Lewis *the sixteenth*, king of France, was murdered the twenty-first of January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three.

RULE XI.

The *Indicative* Article is also suppressed in the following modes of expressions and the like.

EXAMPLES.

Mieux vous étudiez, *mieux* vous apprenez.	*The more* you study, *the more* you learn.
Plus une chose est difficile, *plus* elle est honorable.	*The more* difficult a thing is, *the more* honourable it is.
Plus une femme est belle, *plus* elle doit être modeste.	*The more* handsome a woman is, *the more* modest she ought to be.
Moins on est riche, *moins* on a d' embarras.	*The less* rich one is, *the less* trouble one has.
Plutôt vous aurez écrit votre devoir, *plutôt* vous sortirez.	*The sooner* you have written your exercise, *the sooner* you will go out.

RULE XII.

Before a Noun *common*, modifying and immediately following one preceding it, the *Indicative* and *Declarative* Articles are suppressed.

EXAMPLES.

Voltaire est né à Paris, *ville* capitale de France.	Voltaire was born at Paris, *the capital* of France.
Guillaume Bingham, Ecuyer, mourut à Bath, *ville* d' Angleterre.	William Bingham, Esquire, died at Bath, *a city* of England.
J'ai lu la Vengeance, tragédie célèbre du Dr. Young, & la Femme Jalouse, *comédie excellente* de Colman.	I have read the Revenge, *a celebrated tragedy* of Dr. Young, and the Jealous Wife *an excellent comedy* of Colman.
Télémaque, fils d' Ulysse, *Roi* d' Ithaque.	Telemachus, *the son* of Ulysses *King* of Ithaca.
Marie-Thérèse, *Impératrice* d' Allemagne.	Maria-Theresa, *the Empress* of Germany.
Le Duc d' York, *Prince* du sang Royal d'Angleterre.	The Duke of York, *a Prince* of the Royal blood of England.

RULE XIII.

Nouns *common* stand without *Articles*, when an appeal is made, or an exclamation used.

EXAMPLES.

O *héros* de la France! C' est à toi de rétablir la religion de nos pères.	O *hero* of France! It becomes thee to restore the religion of our forefathers.
Rois! soyez attentifs. *Peuples!* prêtez l' oreille.	*Kings!* be attentive. Nations! listen.
Courage! *Matelots*, à l'abordage.	Courage! *Sailors*, let us board.

RULE XIV.

The *Article* may also be omitted in the *enumeration* of objects, in the most general sense, or for the purpose of rendering the diction more lively.

EXAMPLES.

Femmes, *enfans*, *vieillards*, *troupeaux*, *cabannes*, *maisons*, *palais*, tout fut englouti par les flots de la mer.	*Women*, *children*, *old men*, *huts*, *flocks*, *houses*, *palaces*, all was swallowed up by the waves of the sea.
Cet homme n'a ni *vice* ni *vertu*; ni *talens* ni *défauts;* ni *passions* d' aucune espèce.	This man has neither *vices* nor *virtues;* neither *talents* nor *defects;* nor *passions* of any kind.

RULE XV.

No *Article* is used after the Preposition *en* and other Prepositions, when they, with the following Noun, have the sense of an *Adjective*, or of an Adverb.

EXAMPLES.

Il regarde tout le monde *en* pitié.	He looks on every body *with* contempt.
Il me reçut *avec* amitié.	He received me kindly (or, *with* kindness.)
Il est sans amis.	He is without friends.

Note, a number of French verbs will admit of no *Article* between them and the following Noun, which is their complement—A list of such of them that occur more frequently in conversation, is subjoined at the end of this *instruction.*

RULE XVI.

The *Declarative* Article used, in English, after the Verb *to be*, before a Noun expressing *title*, *profession*, *trade*, *country*, or other attribute of the preceding Noun, is omitted, in French—but should *être* be preceded by *ce*, then the *Declarative* Article must be used.

EXAMPLES.

Il est marchand *ou* c' est *un* marchand.	He is *a* shop-keeper.

On m'a dit qu'il était négociant *ou* que c' était *un* négociant.	I was told he was *a* merchant.
Il se vante que son père est noble, & moi, je crois qu' il est roturier *ou* que c' est *un* roturier.	He boasts of his father being a nobleman, and I believe he is *a* plebiean.
Il est ou Français, ou Italien, ou Espagnol *ou* c' est ou *un* Français, ou *un* Italien, ou *un* Espagnol.	He is either *a* Frenchman, *an* Italian, or *a* Spaniard.

RULE XVII.

In the following cases, the *Declarative* Article is not expressed in French: 1st. Before a Noun beginning an incidental phrase, which is a *reflection* on what has been precedently said.

EXAMPLES.

Cet artiste a obtenu cinq cents guinées : *récompense* qu' il méritait bien.	This artist has obtained five hundred guineas : *a reward* he well deserved.
Fontenelle était membre de l'Académie Française, & de celle des Sciences : *preuve* de l'universalité de ses talens.	Fontenelle was *a* member of the French Academy, and that of the Sciences : *a proof* of the extent of his talents.

2dly. Before the *title* of a book, or any other performance.

EXAMPLES.

Dictionnaire Critique de la langue Française.	*A* Critical *Dictionary* of the French Language.
Histoire d' Angleterre, par Hume.	*The History* of England, by Hume.
Plan de la ville de Philadelphie.	*A Plan* of the city of Philadelphia.

3dly. After the word *quel*, &c. (what) when used to express surprise.

EXAMPLES.

Quel homme vous êtes !	*What a* man you are !
Quel tintamarre vous faites !	*What a* thundering noise you make !

Quelle nouvelle vous m' apprenez !	*What a* piece of news you tell me !

MASTER.

Your particular attention is now required to a mode of expression, which, as it is truly *idiomatical* for the French themselves, must appear very strange to you. The following rules will explain it.

RULE XVIII.

Whenever *two* Nouns are joined together, in English, if the *first* adjectively modify the second, and, without trespassing on sense, may be transposed after the second, by placing the Preposition *with*, or such an equivalent as *having*, *containing*,* &c. before it ; then, in French, the *first* Noun is put *last*, and is joined to the second by the Preposition and Articles—*au*, *à l'*, *à la*, *aux*, according to circumstances of gender and number.

EXAMPLES.

Appelez l' homme *au* beurre—*aux* huîtres—*à la* volaille—*à l'* habit gris—*au* chapeau rond—*au* cou tors—*à la* figure rubiconde—*au* gros nez—& *à la* mine patibulaire.	Call the *butter*-man ; the *oyster*-man ; the *poultry*-man ; the man *with* a grey-coat ; *with* a round hat ; *with* a wry neck ; *with* a claret face ; *with* a big nose ; *with* a gallows look.
Je préfère la sauce *aux* capres à celle *au* vinaigre—*aux* œufs ou *à l'* oignon.	I prefer the *caper*-sauce to the *vinegar*, the *egg* or *onion* sauce.
On nous servit de la soupe *au* vermicel—*au* riz—*aux* pois—*aux* choux—un poulet *à la* crapaudine & une tourte *à l'* anguille.	They served us with *vermicelli*, with *rice*, with *pease*, with *cabbage*-soup, a *barbequed*-chicken, and an *eel*-pye.
Elle vend dans sa boutique de la poudre *à l'* œillet—*à la* rose—& du chocolat *à la* vanille.	She sells in her shop *pink-scented*, *rose-scented* powder and *vanilla*-chocolate.

---

*Il demeure au marché *au* foin, ou *à la* poissonnerie.	He lives at the *hay* or *fish-market*.
Il a cassé le pot *à l'* eau & la bouteille *à l'* encre.	He has broken the *water-pot* and the *ink-bottle*.

Note, that, in French, the *Preposition* and *Article* are sometimes rendered by the Preposition *à* alone, instead of *au*, *à la*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Voulez-vous coucher dans le grenier *à* foin ou dans celui *à* blé ?	Will you lie in the hay-loft or in the corn-loft ?
Il suivait la voiture *à* huit places dans un cabriolet *à* deux chevaux.	He followed the eight-seat coach in a two-horse chaise.
Sa boite *à* mouches est dans la boite *à* poudre.	Her patch-box is in the powder-box.
On servit sur la table *à* dix couverts une cafetiere *à* vingt tasses.	They served on the table for ten persons a twenty-dish coffee-pot.

RULE XIX.

An English Adjective expressing the idea of *pattern* or *resemblance* is rendered, in French, in the same manner as the first Noun in the preceding rule ; it becomes then *feminine*, in the singular, and is *substantively* taken.

EXAMPLES.

Les habits *à la* Française sont à présent à la mode.	French coats are now fashionable, or in fashion.
J'ai troqué ma selle *à l'*Anglaise pour une *à la* Prussienne.	I bartered my English saddle for a Prussian one.
Il porte un manteau *à l'*Espagnole & des bottes *à l'* Américaine.	He wears a Spanish cloak and American boots.

RULE XX.

When the words *fit*, *good* are understood, in English, before the second Noun when transposed as above, they are rendered by the Preposition *à*.

EXAMPLES.

Je voudrais avoir une terre *à* bois & une *à* blé.	I wish I had some wood land and some corn land.
La colline est couverte de moulins *à* vent, & la vallée de moulins *à* eau.	The hill is covered with windmills and the valley with water-mills.

RULE XXI.

When, in English, the *past* Participle of a Verb is preceded by the Infinitive *to be*, and such Adjectives as *fit*, *good*, in French, the Adjective *fit* and Infinitive *to be* are both rendered by the Preposition *à*, and the *past* Participle is rendered by the *Infinitive* of the corresponding Verb.

EXAMPLE.

C'est une fille *à marier*.	She is a girl fit to be married, or, she is a marriageable girl.
Voilà du bois *à couper* & des arbres *à planter*	That wood is fit to be cut, and those trees to be planted.
C' est un homme *à mépriser*.	That is a man *fit to be despised*.
C' est un coquin *à pendre*.	That scoundrel is *fit to be hung*.

MASTER.

I have not yet made any mention of the Preposition *de* which sometimes must be placed between the two French Nouns, instead of *à*, *au*, *à la* &c. To prevent mistake, I hasten to acquaint you with the following

RULE XXII.

When *two* Nouns come together, in English, and the *second* is said to be composed or made of the materials expressed by the *first*, the first is, in French, transposed after the *second*, with the Preposition *de* preceding.

EXAMPLES.

Il a perdu sa tabatière *d'* or, sa montre *d'* argent, sa chaîne *d'* acier & sa bague *de* diamans.	He has lost his gold snuff-box, silver watch, steel chain and diamond ring.
Il demeurait dans une maison *de* pierre, à présent il demeure dans une maison *de* brique.	He lived in a stone house, now he lives in a brick house.
J'ai besoin de six paires de bas *de* soie, de quatre *de* laine, de deux *de* coton & d'une *de* fil.	I want six pair of silk stockings, four worsted, two cotton and one thread.

Il porte un habit *de* velours noir, un gilet *d'* écarlate & une culotte *de* casimir bleu.	He wears a black velvet coat, a scarlet jacket and blue cassimere breeches.

MASTER.

The words for which the following table is intended, always require the Preposition *de* after them, as,

Genre, m.	*Kind.*
Il mène un *genre de* vie qu'on ne saurait approuver.	He leads a *kind of* life one cannot approve.
Espèce, f.	*Kind, species.*
Quelle *espèce d'* homme nous avez-vous amené là?	What *kind of* a man have you brought us here?
Sorte, f.	*Sort.*
On voyait toute *sorte d'* animaux dans la ménagerie du Roi.	All *sorts of* animals were seen in the king's menage.
Mélange, f.	*Mixture.*
La jalousie est un *mélange d'* amour & *de* haîne; *de* crainte & *de* déssepoir.	Jealousy is a *mixture of* love and hatred; *of* fear and despair.
Composé, m.	*Compound.*
Cette femme est un *composé de* bonnes & *de* mauvaises qualités.	This woman is a *compound of* good and bad qualities.
Ne pas ou *ne point* (the latter more forcible).	*No, not.*
Il *n'* a *pas* ou *point de* pain, *de* vin, *de* viande, *d'* argent, *d'* amis.	He has *no* bread, *no* wine, *no* meat, *no* money, *no* friends.
(Ne) jamais.	*Never.*
Ne me parlez *jamais de* ces choses-là, ni *de* ce coquin de valet.	*Never* speak to me *about* those things nor that rascally servant.
Abondance, f.	*Plenty.*
Il est dans *l' abondance de* toutes choses.	He has *plenty* of every thing.
Nombre, m.	*Number* or *many.*
J' ai vu *nombre de* sots & *de* fats, qui se croyaient de grands personnages.	I have seen *many* fools and coxcombs who took themselves to be great people.
Quantité, f.	*Number, quantity.*
Il a recueilli cette année une grande *quantité de* blé, *de* foin & *de* fruit.	He has had this year a large *quantity of* corn, hay and fruit.

J'ai rencontré *quantité de* cabriolets, *de* voitures, *de* carrosses, *de* phaétons, & *de* beaux chevaux de selle.	I met a *number of* chairs, carriages, coaches, phaetons and fine saddle horses.
Quelque chose, m.	*Something.*
Il a toujours *quelque chose de* joli, *d'* agréable & *de* gracieux à dire aux gens.	He has always *something* pretty, agreeable and kind to tell people.
(Ne) rien, m.	*Nothing.*
Il *n'* y a *rien de* plus insolent qu 'un parvenu.	*Nothing* is more insolent than an upstart.
Peu.	*Little, a few.*
Donnez-moi un *peu de* bière ou *de* cidre.	Give me a *little* beer or cider.
Je vous dirai en *peu de* mots toute l'affaire.	I will tell you in a *few* words the whole of the matter.
Assez.	*Enough.*
Il y a *assez de* tems que je vous attends.	I have been waiting for you long *enough.*
Plus, moins.	*More, less.*
Il a *plus de* talens & *de* mérite que son frère ; mais *moins de* savoir-vivre & *d'* usage du monde.	He has *more* talents and merit than his brother, but *less* good breeding and habit of company.
Autant.	*As much as.*
Elle a *autant de* vertu que de douceur dans le caractère.	She has *as much* virtue *as* mildness in her temper.
Tant.	*So much, so many.*
Il est doué de *tant d'* esprit & *de* sagesse qu' il réussira, & il a *tant d'*amis qu'il ne manquera jamais de rien.	He is endowed with *so much* understanding and wisdom that he will succeed, and he has *so many* friends that he will never want any thing.
Trop.	*Too much, too many.*
Cet auteur embrasse *trop de* matières, *de* faits & *de* détails.	This author embraces *too much* matter, *too many* facts and particulars.
Combien.	*How much, how many.*
Combien de fromages avez-vous achetés ? *combien de* livres de chandelle avez-vous apportées ?	*How much* cheese have you bought ? *how many* pounds of candles have you brought?
Il y avait je ne sais *combien de* gens.	There were, I do not know, *how many* people.
Que !	*How much, how many !*
Que de sang répandu dans cette fatale querelle !	*How much* blood was spilt in this fatal quarrel !
Que de chagrins vous aurez à souffrir !	*How many* sorrows you'll have to bear !

Quoi !	*What !*
Quoi deplus agréable pour des parens, que des enfans vertueux & bien élevés !	*What* is more agreeable for parents than to have virtuous and well bred children !
Beaucoup.	*Much, many.*
Il y a *beaucoup de* bien, mais ils sont *beaucoup d'* héritiers à partager cette succession.	There is *much* property, but this estate is to be divided among *many* heirs.

EXCEPTION.

Bien when it means *much* or *many*, in English, is an *exception;* for instead of the Preposition *de* alone, it must be followed by that Preposition and the Article *Indicative.*

EXAMPLES.

Il y avait *bien du* monde à la comédie.	There were *many* people at the play.
Il y a *bien des* gens qui le croient ainsi.	There are *many* people who believe it so.

A TABLE OF FRENCH VERBS

IMMEDIATELY FOLLOWED BY NOUNS (WHICH ARE THEIR COMPLEMENT) WITHOUT BEING CONNECTED WITH THEM, BY ANY *ARTICLE* OR *PREPOSITION.*

AVOIR.	*appétit,*	to have	an appetite.	*Avez* vous bon *appétit ?* *Have* you a good *appetite ?*
	compassion,		mercy.	*Ayez compassion* de son infortune, *Have compassion* on his misfortunes.
	cours,		to take. to be in vogue.	Je ne crois pas que son livre *ait cours,* I dont believe his book *will take.*
	coutume,		to be used to.	Il *a coutume* de se lever de bonne heure, He *is used* to rise early.
	dessein,		to intend.	J' *ai dessein* de partir pour France, I *intend* to set off for France.
	droit,	to have	a right.	Vous n' *avez* pas *droit* de le faire, You *have* not a *right* to do it.
	envie,		a mind.	J' *ai* grand' *envie* de lui frotter les oreilles, I *have* a great *mind* to thrash him.
	mal,		to ache.	J' *ai mal* à la tête & aux oreilles, My head and ears *ache.*
	part au gâteau,		to share in the booty.	Si vous venez, vous aurez *part au gâteau,* If you come, you'll *share in the booty.*
	pitié,		to pity.	Il ne mérite pas qu' on *ait pitié* de lui, He does not deserve *to be pitied.*

NOTE......For other Nouns that may follow *Avoir,* see the TABLE at the end of the conjugation of this auxiliary Verb.

AJOUTER.	*foi,*	to believe.	Il n' *ajoute* pas *foi* à ce que vous dites, He does not *believe* what you say.
CHANTER.	*pouilles.*	to call names.	Il ne fallait pas lui *chanter pouilles,* You should not have *called* him *names.*
CHERCHER.	*chicane,*	to cavil.	Il *cherche chicane* à tous ses voisins, He *cavils* with all his neighbours.
	querelle,	to pick a quarrel.	Il a été *chercher querelle* à cet homme, He went *to pick a quarrel* with this man.
	fortune,	to seek a fortune.	Il est allé *chercher fortune* aux Indes, He went *to seek a fortune* in the Indies.
	malheur,	to hunt for a misfortune.	Qui *cherche malheur,* le trouve, Whoever *hunts for a misfortune,* finds it.
COUPER.	*court,*	to make short.	*Coupons court* à ces difficultés là, Let us *make* those difficulties *short.*
COURIR.	*fortune,*	to stand a chance.	Il *court fortune* d' être un jour fort riche, He *runs a chance* to be one day very rich.
	risque,	to run the risk.	Il *court risque* d'être pendu, He *runs the risk* of being hanged.
	hasard,		J' ai *couru hasard* de me tuer, I *ran the risk* of killing myself.
CRIER.	*vengeance,*	to call for vengeance.	Une pareille conduite *crie vengeance,* Such a conduct *calls for vengeance.*

DEMANDER.	*raison,*	to ask	satisfaction.	Je vous conseille de lui *demander raison,* I advise you *to ask satisfaction* of him.
	justice,		for justice.	J'ai *demandé justice,* sans pouvoir l' obtenir, I *asked for justice,* without being able to obtain it.
	grâce,		pardon.	Il a *demandé grâce* à genoux, He *asked pardon* on his knees.
	quartier,		to cry for quarters.	Les troupes *demandèrent quartier,* The troops *cried for quarters.*
	avis,	to ask	advice.	N'allez pas plus loin sans *demander avis,* Dont go farther without *asking advice.*
	caution,		a surety.	Il s'est fâché, lorsque je lui ai *demandé caution,* He got angry, when I *asked surety* of him.
	vengeance,		for vengeance.	Le sang de Louis XVI. *demande vengeance,* The blood of Lewis the XVIth *asks for vengeance.*
DEMEURER.	*court,*		to stop short.	Il *demeura court* au beau milieu de son discours, He *stopt short* in the very middle of his speech.
DIRE.	*vrai,*	to speak	the truth.	Croyez-vous réellement qu' il *dise vrai ?* Do you really believe he *speaks the truth ?*
	faux,		false.	Non, je crois qu' il *dit faux,* No, I believe he *speaks false.*
DONNER.	*prise sur soi,*	to give	others an advantage.	En parlant ainsi, vous *donnez prise* sur vous, In speaking thus, you *give* others *an advantage.*
	carrière,		full scope.	Il a *donné carrière* à tout son esprit, He gave *full scope* to all his wit.

DONNER.	*carte blanche,*	to give	full powers.	Je lui ai *donné carte blanche,* I *gave* him *full powers.*
	caution,		bail.	Il n' a pu *donner caution,* He could not *give bail.*
	quittance,		receipt.	Il a refusé de lui *donner quittance,* He refused to *give* him *a receipt.*
	avis,		advice.	Il nous a *donné avis* de l' arrivée du bâtiment, He *gave* us *advice* of the arrival of the vessel.
	sa parole,		one's word.	S'il vous *donne sa parole,* vous pouvez être tranquille, If he *give* you *his word,* you may be easy.
	leçon,		a lesson.	Je n' ai point le tems de vous *donner leçon,* I have not time to *give* you *a lesson.*
	rendez-vous,		a rendezvous.	Elle me *donna rendez-vous* à minuit, She *gave* me *a rendezvous,* at 12 o'clock at night.
	congé,		a holyday.	Ce maître ne *donne* jamais *congé,* This master never *gives a holiday.*
	ordre,		orders.	J'ai *donné ordre* au domestique de partir, I *gave orders* to the servant to set off.
	beau jeu,		fair play.	Est-ce que je ne lui *donne* pas *beau jeu ?* Dont I *give* him *fair play ?*
	audience,		audience.	Il a des jours réglés pour *donner audience,* He has stated days to *give audience.*
	envie,		to set agog.	Vos diamans lui *donnent* furieusement *envie,* Your diamonds *set* her mightily *agog.*

DONNÈR.	*jour,*	to appoint a day.	Elle ne m'a pas *donné jour* ou *heure,* She did not *appoint* me *a day* or *an hour.*
	atteinte,	to strike at.	Cette loi *donne atteinte* aux droits du peuple, This law *strikes at* the rights of the people.
L'ECHAPPER.	*belle,*	to have a narrow escape.	Vous l'avez *échappé belle,* en vérité, You *had a narrow escape,* indeed.
ENTENDRE.	*raison,*	to understand reason.	Faites-lui *entendre raison,* si vous pouvez, Make him *understand reason,* if you can.
	raillerie,	to take a joke.	Il *entend raillerie* aussi bien que personne, He *takes a joke* as well as any body.
Y ENTENDRE	*malice,*	to mean harm.	Je ne croyais pas qu 'elle *y entendait malice,* I did not think she *meant harm.*
	finesse,	to be sly.	Je vous assure qu' ils n' *y entendaient* pas *finesse,* I assure you they *were* not *sly* about it.
FAIRE.	*bonne chère,*	to live well.	On *fait bonne chère* dans cet hôtel, They *live well* in this hotel.
	vie qui dure,	to live within compass.	L' homme sage *fait vie qui dure,* A wise man *lives within compass.*
	argent de tout,	to make money of every thing.	Il est obligé de *faire argent de tout,* He is obliged to *make money of every thing.*
	envie,	to raise envy.	Il vaut mieux *faire envie* que pitié, It is better *to raise envy* than excite compassion.
	peur,	to frighten.	On a tort de *faire peur* aux enfans, One is in the wrong *to frighten* children.
	marché,	to make a bargain.	Je n' ai jamais pu *faire marché* avec lui, I never could *make a bargain* with him.

FAIRE.	*réflexion,*		to reflect.	J'ai *fait reflexion* qu 'il valait mieux s'en passer, I *reflected* that it was better to do without it.
	attention,		to mind.	Il ne *fait* point *attention* à ce qu' il dit, He does not *mind* what he says.
	alliance,	to make	an alliance.	L' Autriche a *fait alliance* avec la Prusse, Austria has *made an alliance* with Prussia.
	choix,		a choice.	J' ai *fait choix* de votre neveu pour mon gendre, I have *made a choice* of your nephew for my son-in-law.
	compassion,		to excite compassion.	L' état de ces pauvres gens *fait compassion,* The condition of those poor people *excites compassion.*
	mention,		to mention.	Il *fait mention* de vous dans son livre, He *mentions* you in his book.
	plaisir,		to please.	Votre lettre lui a *fait plaisir,* Your letter *pleased* him.
	honneur,		to do honor.	Vous me *faites honneur* de vous occuper de moi, You *do* me *honour* to think of me.
	cas,		to value.	Elle m' a dit qu' elle *fesait* grand *cas* de vous, She told me she *valued* you much.
	provision,		to provide.	Ce moine *fait provision* pour son couvent, This monk *provides* for his convent.
	honte,		to make one ashamed.	Vous aurez de la peine à lui *faire honte,* It will be hard for you *to make* him *ashamed.*
	face,		to face.	Nos troupes *firent* bravement *face* à l' ennemi, Our troops did bravely *face* the enemy.

FAIRE.	*voile,*	to set sail.	Le capitaine ordonna de *faire voile* vers Madère, The captain ordered *to set sail* towards Madeira.
	route,	to steer.	Nous *fîmes route* long-tems vers le nord, We *steered* a great while towards the north.
	difficulté,	to make a scruple.	Ils ne *font* pas *difficulté* de s' en servir, They *make* no *scruple* to use it.
	banqueroute,	to be a bankrupt.	Ce négociant a *fait* souvent *banqueroute,* This merchant has often *been a bankrupt.*
	gras,	to eat flesh.	L' évêque lui a permis de *faire gras,* The bishop gave him leave *to eat flesh.*
	maigre,	to eat fish.	Les Catholiques *font maigre* pendant le carême, The Roman Catholics *eat fish* during lent.
	emplette,	to purchase.	Elle a *fait emplette* d' un bonnet à la mode, She *purchased* a fashionable cap.
	sentinelle,	to stand centry.	On lui fit *faire sentinelle* toute la journée, They made him *stand centry* the whole day.
	feu,	to fire.	On ordonna aux troupes de *faire feu,* They ordered the troops *to fire.*
	main basse,	to put to the sword.	On *fit main basse* sur tous les habitans, All the inhabitants *were put to the sword.*
	mal—tort,	to hurt—to wrong.	Vous me *faites mal—tort,* You *hurt* me—you *wrong* me.
	serment,	to take an oath.	Il n' est pas nécessaire que vous *fassiez serment,* It is not necessary you should *take an oath.*
	mine,	to pretend.	Elle *fait mine* d' être fâchée, She *pretends* to be angry.

FAIRE.	*fond,*	to depend.	Il ne fallait pas *faire fond* sur lui, You should not have *depended* upon him.
	ombrage,	to give umbrage.	Cette jeune personne *fait ombrage* à sa belle-mère, This young lady *gives umbrage* to her mother-in-law.
GAGNER.	*pays,*	to scamper away.	Le plus sage est de *gagner pays,* The wisest plan is to *scamper away.*
	gros,	to get much. to make a fortune.	Il a *gagné gros* dans son commerce, He has *made a fortune* by his trade.
JETER.	*feu & flammes,*	to fret and fume.	Vous lui avez fait *jeter feu & flammes,* You made her *fret and fume.*
JOUER.	*gros jeu,*	to play deep.	On lui a défendu de *jouer gros jeu* à l' avenir, They forbid him *to play deep* for the future.
LACHER.	*prise,*	to let go one's hold.	Pourquoi avez-vous *lâché prise ?* Why did you *let your hold go ?*
METTRE.	*pied à terre,*	to alight.	Nous *mîmes pied à terre* au milieu du bois, We *alighted* in the middle of the wood.
	ordre,	to see to.	Je *mettrai ordre* à cela une autre fois, I *will see to it* another time.
	fin,	to put an end.	Je *mis fin* à la dispute, & les fis s' embrasser, I *put an end* to the dispute, and made them embrace one another.
PARLER.	*vrai,*	to speak truth.	Il n' a jamais *parlé vrai* de sa vie, He never *spoke truth* in his life.
	raison,	to speak reason.	Quand il *parlera raison*, je l' écouterai, When he *speaks reason*, I shall listen to him.

PARLER.	*bon sens,*	to speak good sense.	Je l' ai toujours entendu *parler bon sens;* I have always heard him *speak good sense.*
	français, &c.	to speak French, &c.	Il *parle Français, Anglais,* & *Allemand,* He speaks *French, English,* and *German.*
PORTER.	*amitié,*	to have a friendship.	Il *porte amitié* à des gens qui le détestent, He *has a friendship* for people who detest him.
	honneur,	to honor.	On doit *porter honneur* aux savans, We ought *to honor* the learned.
	envie,	to bear envy.	Le potier *porte envie* au potier, dit Hérodote, The potter *bears envy* to the potter, says Herodotus.
	respect,	to reverence.	Il faut toujours *porter respect* à ses père & mère, We must always *reverence* our father and mother.
	coup,	to injure.	Cet accident *a porté coup* à sa fortune, This accident has *injured* his fortune.
	bonheur, *malheur,*	to bring good luck. to bring bad luck.	J' espère que cela vous *portera* plutôt *bonheur* que *malheur,* I hope that it *will bring* you rather *good luck* than *bad.*
	parole,	to promise.	Je lui ai *porté parole* de dix mille guinées, I *promised him* ten thousand guineas.
	témoignage,	to bear witness.	Il n' a pas voulu *porter témoignage* contre lui, He would not *bear witness* against him.

PRENDRE.	*congé*,	to take	leave.	A présent, je vais *prendre congé* de vous, Now, I shall *take my leave* of you.
	conseil,		counsel.	Il ne *prend conseil* que de lui-même, He *takes counsel* only from himself.
	exemple,		example.	Vous devriez *prendre exemple* sur lui, You should *take example* from him.
	faveur,		to succeed.	On m' a mandé que son livre *prenait faveur*, They wrote me word that his book *succeeded*.
	garde,		to regard.	Elle ne *prend* pas *garde* à ce que vous dites, She does not *regard* what you say.
	goût,		to take a liking.	Vous y *prenez goût*, à ce que je vois, You *take a liking* to it, by what I see.
	jour,		to appoint a day.	Il a *pris jour* pour régler cette affaire, He has *appointed a day* to settle that business.
	langue,		to obtain intelligence.	Le Général a envoyé son Aide de camp pour *prendre langue*, The General sent his Aid-de-camp to *obtain intelligence*.
	leçon,	to take	a lesson.	Je *prends leçon* tous les deux jours *ou* de deux jours l' un, I *take a lesson* every other day.
	médecine,		physic.	Le médecin lui fit *prendre médecine*, The physician made him *take physic*.
	patience,		to have patience.	*Prenons patience*, nos maux vont finir, *Let us have patience*, our ills will soon be at an end.

PRENDRE.	*parti dans,*	to enlist in.	Il a *pris parti dans* l' armée des rebelles, He *enlisted in* the rebel army.
	parti pour,	to take the side of.	Le cœur doit toujours *prendre parti pour* la justice, The heart should always *take the side of* justice.
	séance,	to take a seat.	Ausitôt qu' il fut fait pair, il *prit séance* au Parlement, As soon as he was created a peer, he *took his seat* in Parliament.
	terre,	to land.	Nous fûmes long-tems sans pouvoir *prendre terre,* We were a great while before we could *land.*
RENDRE.	*amour pour amour,*	to return love for love.	Vous ne lui *rendez* pas *amour pour amour,* You dont *return* her *love for love.*
	compte,	to give an account.	Il est tems qu' il *rende compte* de l' argent, It is time he *should give an account* of the money.
	gorge,	to refund.	Il avait volé l' Etat, mais on lui a fait *rendre gorge,* He had robb'd the State, but they made him *refund.*
	grâces,	to return thanks.	*Rendons grâces* à l' Etre Suprême, *Let us return thanks* to the Supreme Being.
	honneur, *hommage,*	to render honor. to render homage.	Il faut *rendre honneur* ou *hommage* au mérite, We ought *to render honor* or *homage* to merit.
	justice,	to do justice.	On ne *rend* pas toujours *justice* aux grands talens, People do not always *do justice* to great talents.
	obéissance,	to obey.	Un bon citoyen *rend obéissance* aux lois de son pays, A good citizen obeys the laws of his country.

RENDRE.	*réponse,*	to answer, to give an answer.	Il exige qu' on lui *rende réponse* sur le champ, He requires that *an answer be given* him immediately.
	service,	to render service.	Il aime à *rendre service* à tout le monde, He likes to *render service* to every body.
	visite,	to pay a visit.	Je lui ai *rendu visite* aussitôt mon arrivée, I *paid* him *a visit* immediately on my arrival.
TENIR.	*auberge, école, &c.*	to keep a tavern, a school, &c.	Il *tenait auberge*, à présent il *tient école*, He *kept a tavern*, now he *keeps a school.*
	bon,	to hold out.	Il a *tenu bon* quinze jours à son poste, He *held out* a whole fortnight at his post.
	boutique,	to keep a shop.	Dans quel quartier de la ville *tenez-vous boutique?* In what part of the town do you *keep a shop ?*
	compte,	to make an allowance.	Je vous *tiendrai compte* de cela, I *will make* you *an allowance* for that.
	conseil,	to hold council.	Les jours que le Roi *tient conseil,* The days on which the King *holds council.*
	ferme,	to stand it out.	Ce bataillon *tint ferme* jusqu' au dernier moment, This batallion *stood it out* to the last.
	lieu,	to supply the place.	Il m' a *tenu lieu* de père, He *supplied the place* of a father to me.
	parole,	to keep one's word.	Soyez persuadé qu' il ne *tiendra* pas *parole,* Be persuaded he *will* not *keep his word.*
	table,	a table.	Il *tient table* tous les deux jours, *ou* de deux jours l' un, He *keeps a table* every other day.

TENIR.	*table ouverte,*	to keep	open house.	Elle *tient table ouverte* tous les trois jours, *ou* de trois en trois jours. She *keeps open house* every three days.
	tête,		to resist, to cope with one.	C' est un gaillard qui *tient tête* à tout le monde. He is a fellow who *resists* every body, or *copes with* every body.

This list of examples might have been extended farther; but as these are thought sufficient for the regulation of the pupil in the formation of similar sentences, we shall conclude here with remarking, that, except in such examples, the *Article*, in the purest style, ought seldom to be omitted.

INSTRUCTION THE THIRD.

OF THE NOUN.

RULE I.

When *two* Nouns in English are joined merely by a *Preposition*, or a *Preposition* and *Article*, either of these are generally rendered by *de* with the Article *Indicative*, or by the *Preposition* and *Article* contracted, according to circumstances of gender and number.

EXAMPLES.

L' étude *de la* géométrie est fort utile.	The study *of* geometry is very useful.
L' église est bâtie sur le sommet *de la* colline.	The church is built on the top *of the* hill.
La grandeur *des* vues & la profondeur *des* idées, annoncent l' homme *de* génie.	Greatness *of* views, and depth *of* ideas, bespeak the man *of* genius.

Remark, that when *two* Nouns, in English, are united by *s* with an apostrophe (thus '*s*), in French, the first Noun is to be placed last, and the Preposition *de* with the *Article*, or the *contraction* thereof, between the two Nouns.

EXAMPLES.

J' ai vu les chevaux *du* Roi & les appartemens *de la* Reine.	I saw the King'*s* horses, and the Queen'*s* apartments.
Le premier soin *d'* un homme est d' éviter les reproches de sa conscience, & son second, la censure *du* monde.	A man'*s* first concern, is to avoid the reproaches of his conscience, and his second, the world'*s* censure.
La sœur *de la* femme de chambre *de la* favorite *de la* Reine, vient de se marier.	The Queen'*s* favorite'*s* chambermaid'*s* sister is just married.

But, if the first Noun, in English, were preceded by an Article *demonstrative* or *possessive*, or were it a *proper* name, the Preposition *de* should then stand alone *without* the Article.

EXAMPLES.

Le langage *de* cet homme est indécent.	*This* man'*s* language is indecent.

Avez-vous vu la bibliothèque *de* mon père?	Did you see *my* father*'s* library?
J' ai trouvé l' éventail & les gants *de* Julie.	I have found Julia*'s* fan and gloves.
Avez-vous reçu le billet *de* Mademoiselle K......?	Did you receive Miss K......*'s* note?

RULE II.

When Nouns of *measure* such as *inch*, *foot*, *fathom*, *ell*, *yard*, are followed, in English, by Adjectives of *dimension* such as *long*, *wide*, &c. or their abstract Nouns, *length*, *width*, &c. then the *abstract* Nouns of dimension are used, in French, with the Preposition *de* preceding them, which must also be placed before the *numerical* Article specifying the number of times that the Noun of the measure is understood.

EXAMPLES.

J' ai sauté un fossé *de* trente pieds *de* largeur.	I jumped over a ditch thirty feet wide or *in* width.
C' est une rivière *de* quinze brasses *de* profondeur.	It is a river fifteen fathoms deep.
Il me faut des planches *de* vingt sept pouces *de* longueur & *de* quatre *d'* épaisseur.	I want boards twenty-seven inches *in* length and four inches *in* thickness.
Voilà un clocher *de* trois cents pieds *de* hauteur.	That is a steeple three hundred feet high.

Observe 1st, that when *two* dimensions, belonging to the same object, are mentioned, the Preposition *sur* will elegantly replace the Conjunction & and the Preposition *de*; so we may well say,

Les murs d' Alger ont seize pieds *d'* épaisseur *sur* trente *de* hauteur.	The walls of Algiers are sixteen feet thick, *and* thirty feet high.

2d, If, as in the examples following, the verb *to be*, be used, the Preposition *de* should be omitted before the *numerical* Article, and *être* rendered by *avoir*.

EXAMPLES.

Notre jardin *a* cent cinquante pieds *de* longueur & quarante huit *de* largeur, ou Notre jardin *a* 150 pieds *de* longueur, *sur* 48 *de* largeur.	Our garden *is* one hundred and fifty feet long, and forty eight feet wide.
L' église de St. Paul *a* 500 pieds *de* longueur en dedans; 100 *de* largeur à l' entrée; mais 249 d' un portique à l' autre.	St. Paul's church *is* 500 feet long within; 100 feet front; but 249 from the porticos.

MASTER.

Though it be more elegant, in French, to use the *abstract* Nouns of dimension than the *Adjectives*, yet the *latter* may also be used, as you will see in the following

EXAMPLES.

J' ai acheté un tapis *long* de six verges & *large* de deux.	I bought a carpet six yards *long*, and two *wide*.
On a bâti une muraille *épaisse* de douze pieds.	They have built a wall twelve feet *thick*.

RULE III.

When the *title*, *rank*, or *degree* of kindred of a person in a high or respectable station, is mentioned, polite custom often requires that such expressions as, *Monseigneur*, *Monsieur*, *Madame* or *Mademoiselle*, should be pronounced before the name of the individual entitled to that distinction.

EXAMPLES.

Monseigneur le Prince de Galles est l' héritier présomptif de la courronne d' Angleterre.	The Prince of Wales is the heir-apparent of the crown of England.
Monsieur le Colonel Williams s' est marié hier au soir.	Colonel Williams was married last evening.
J' ai causé au bal avec *Madame* votre tante & dansé avec *Mademoiselle* sa fille.	I conversed at the ball with your aunt and danced with her daughter.

Remark, that, when we speak of *our own* relations, then, as tenderness should prevail over formality, such expressions as above stated, are omitted.

MASTER.

We are now come to a very nice point in the French language; it relates to the law of *accord* or of *concordance:* and, as the observance thereof, together with its exceptions, constitute some of the principal difficulties of the French language, I advise you to give particular attention to the following rules.

RULE IV.

The *Noun* imposes its inflections on all its correspondents, viz. on the *Article*, which determines it; on the *Adjective* and *Participle*, which qualify it; on the *Pronoun*, which recalls it to the mind; and on the *Verb*, which announces the object which the Noun denominates, as existing.

EXAMPLES.

Le plaisir, *qui* ne *laisse* après soi que des remords, *est defendu* aux hommes, parce qu' *il est criminel.*	Pleasure, *which leaves* behind it nothing but remorse, *is forbidden* to man, because it is criminal.
Les consolations *les* plus *touchantes sont celles qui* nous *sont offertes* par la Religion.	*The* most *striking* consolations *are offered* to us by Religion.
Ames douces & paisibles, *qui* ne *voulez* que des jours sereins & des sentimens agréables, ne *désirez* pas les hautes places.	Gentle and peaceful souls, *who* only *want* serene days and agreeable feelings, *do* not *wish* for high stations.

You see that in the *first* of the above sentences, the Noun, *plaisir*, makes the words in *Italics* assume the *inflections* they are liable to, viz. the Articles and Adjectives, its *gender*, which is *masculine*, and its *number*, which is *singular;* and the Verb, the third person *singular*, because that Noun is the *thing* spoken of.

In the *second* example, the Noun, *consolations*, being *plural feminine*, the Articles and Adjectives become *so*, while the *Verb* is in the *third* person *plural.*

In the *third* example, *ames* being in the *second* person *plural*, the Verbs *voulez* and *désirez*, its correspondents, are also put in the *second* person *plural.*

If you reflect that an object could not be denominated under a gender and number, and be announced, qualified, recalled, and presented as existing by its correspondents under a different gender and number, without producing a shocking oddity that would render vague and doubtful the relations of words with the ideas they are designed to portray, you will easily conceive why all the words we have just noticed should appear with these inflections; and this more necessarily, as such a character of uniformity can alone manifest their dependence upon the *Hero* of the phrase (the Noun) for the sake of which they are used.—However rational this rule of concordance may appear, it is still liable to many exceptions, which *custom*, that imperious law-giver to language, and to whom even philosophers must often bow, has introduced.—Of these, without entering into any superfluous logical details, I will inform you; my design, in this Section, being to acquaint you solely with the particulars of the French syntax.

REMARK I.

Several Nouns *subjects*, occurring in a sentence, although singular and of different genders, impose on their correspondents the *plural* number and *masculine* gender.

EXAMPLES.

Le mérite & la vertu *sont seuls faits* pour plaire toujours.	Merit and virtue *are alone fitted* to be always pleasing.
Le mari & la femme *sont* toujours *malheureux*, lors qu' il ne règne pas entr' *eux* l' union la plus parfaite.	A husband and wife *are* always *unhappy*, when the most perfect harmony does not reign between *them*.
Notre valet & notre servante *sont paresseux*, *impertinens*, & *raisonneurs*.	Our man and our maid *are lazy*, *impertinent*, and *fond of retorting*.

But, should the Nouns be *objects* instead of being *subjects*, then the correspondent should follow in *number* and *gender* those of the *last* Noun.

EXAMPLES.

Cette femme a l' air & la physionomie *spirituelle*, ou Cette femme a la physionomie & l' air *spirituel*.	This woman has a *sprightly* air and countenance.

Il avait la bouche & les yeux *ouverts*, ou Il avait les yeux & la bouche *ouverte*.	He had his eyes and mouth *open*.
Cet acteur joue avec un goût & une noblesse *charmante*, ou Cet acteur joue avec une noblesse & un goût *charmant*.	This actor performs with taste and a *charming* dignity.
Il a la tête & les pieds *nus*, ou Il a les pieds & la tête *nue*.	His head and feet are *naked*.

REMARK II.

Nouns, of *number* expressing a *quantity* or *multitude* of objects characterized by another *Noun*, require their following correspondents to agree in *gender* and *number* with this *last*, which is always preceded by the Preposition *de*, except when *la plupart* is used, which last, like *bien*, requires the *Preposition* and *Article* du, de le, &c. after it.

EXAMPLES.

Une douzaine *d'* enfans *furent tués* le même jour.	Twelve children *were killed* the same day.
Une centaine *de* femmes *furent ensevelies* sous les ruines.	A hundred women *were buried* under the ruins.
Le peu *de* forces qu' avait ce malade ne *sont* pas *perdues*.	The little strength which this patient had, *is* not *destroyed*.
La moitié *de* ses forces lui *restent* fidèles.	The half *of* his troops *remain* faithful to him.
Il n' est sorte *de* soins qui ne lui *soient rendus* par le peu *d'* amis qui ne l' *ont* pas abandonné.	There is no kind *of* attention which *is* not *paid* him by the few friends who *have* not forsaken him.
Une foule *de* monde s' *est trouvé* à ce spectacle.	A crowd *of* people *was* at that show or exhibition.
Une foule *de* soldats *ont* été *fusillés*.	A great number *of* soldiers *were shot*.
Une infinité *de* monde *est inquiet* sur son sort.	Vast numbers *are uneasy* about his fate.
Une infinité *de* personnes en *sont instruites*.	Vast numbers *are acquainted with* it.
Un grand nombre *de* personnes *ont* été mécontentes.	A great number *of* people *have* been *discontented*.
Une grande quantité *de* dames *étaient présentes* à ce bal.	A great number *of* ladies *were present* at that ball.

Toute sorte *de* livres ne *sont* pas également *bons*.	All kind *of* books *are* not equally *good*.
Il n' est sorte *de* démonstrations de politesse qu' il ne lui ait *faites*.	There are no demonstrations *of* politeness whatever which he has not *shown* him or her.
Une partie *des* arbres qui me *restent sont chargés* de fruits.	A part *of* the trees which I have remaining *are loaded* with fruit.
Une troupe *de* Nymphes *couronnées* de fleurs *étaient assises* auprès d' elle.	A choir *of* Nymphs *crowned* with flowers *were seated* near her.
La plupart *du* monde s' *endort* sur ses propres intérêts.	The greatest part *of* the people *neglect* their own interests.
La plupart *des* femmes *ont* plus d' esprit que de savoir.	The greatest part *of* women *have* more wit than learning.

You will see by the *above* examples that the law of *concordance* is not observed with regard to the Noun of quantity, the *subject* of the phrase, but with regard to the Noun which *follows* it. The grammatical concordance is thereby violated; but logic requires it should be so; and, if correspondence appears to be infringed in respect to these words, in the above phrases, it is not so in respect to the ideas where it is faithfully observed.

In fact, the ideas expressed by the corresponding words are not suited to the *quantity*, but to the *objects* presented under that quantity. Let us take, for example, the first sentence; "*Une douzaine d' enfans furent tués le même jour.*" It is not *a dozen* that we wish to represent as killed, but *children*, twelve in number. It is, therefore, with *children*, that the Verb and Participle must agree; because, that Noun, presenting the principal idea of the subject of the phrase, must receive the attributions—*a dozen* is but a subordinate idea, and a mere *complement*, though, by considering only the grammatical form of the phrase, it is the principal word.

Observe, however, that there are circumstances when *correspondents* may assume the inflections of some of those Nouns of quantity; instances thereof are pretty often met with in the poets, who may claim more indulgence in that respect.—The attentive reading of good authors, however, will make you sensible which of the two constructions ought to be preferred in certain cases.

REMARK III.

The words of quantity, *beaucoup*, *peu*, *assez*, *moins*, *plus*, *trop*, *tant*, *combien*, & *que* in the sense of *combien*, exercise no influence on the *Verb* and the *Adjective* which may follow the subject, the *totality* of which they help to form; for the Verb and Adjective *receive* the law, as in the preceding rule, from the Noun that *follows* those words of *quantity*.

EXAMPLES.

Beaucoup de personnes vous *aiment*.	*A great many* people *love* you.
Peu de vin *suffit* à l' homme.	*A little* wine *is sufficient* for man.
Peu de soldats courageux *suffisent* pour remporter une victoire.	*A few* courageous soldiers *are sufficient* to obtain a victory.
Assez d'ambitieux *recherchent* les places.	*Enough of* the ambitious *seek* after places.
Moins de gens que vous ne pensez, vous *approuvent*.	*Less* people than you think *approve* of you.
Plus de sagesse vous *eût* préservé de tomber dans de grandes fautes.	*More* wisdom would *have* preserved you from falling into great faults.
Plus de fous que de sages *ambitionnent* les grands emplois; *trop* d'ignorans les *obtiennent*.	*More* fools than wise men *are desirous* of great employments (or offices); *too many* ignorant *obtain* them.
Tant de soldats *défendent* nos foyers, que les efforts de nos ennemis seront nuls.	*So many* soldiers *defend* our firesides, as will render the efforts of our enemies abortive.
Combien de héros *combattirent* aux Thermopyles ? Autant que de soldats.	*How many* heroes *fought* at Thermopyle ? As many as soldiers.
Que de gens sans mœurs *occupent* des places où la vertu est plus nécessaire que les talens !	*How many* people without morals *occupy* posts where virtue is more necessary than talents !

REMARK IV.

Nouns *collective*, that is to say, representing several persons or things under a Noun *singular*, such as *multitude*, *armée*, *forêt*, &c. require that their correspondents should be in the *singular*.

EXAMPLES.

La *multitude* des étrangers *rend* les denrées & le pain extrêmement cher.	The *multitude* of strangers *makes* provisions and bread excessively dear.
L' *armée* des Puissances combinées *a* été *taillée* en pièces.	The *army* of the combined powers *has* been *cut* to pieces.
La *troupe* des comédiens *est arrivée*.	The *company* of players *have come*.
La *forêt* des Ardennes *est* au couchant du Luxembourg.	The *forest* of Ardennes *is* to the west of Luxemburg.
La *flotte* des Alliés *a mis* à la voile pendant la nuit.	The *fleet* of the Allies *set* sail during the night.
Le *Sénat* des Etats-Unis *a* ratifié le traité pour la Louisiane.	The *Senate* of the United States *have* ratified the treaty of Louisiana.
La *Convention-Nationale était* presque *toute composée* de brigands & de scélérats.	The *National Convention was* almost *entirely composed* of banditti and villains.

SCHOLAR.

Why do not the correspondents of the *collective* Noun, when it is followed by a Noun in the *plural*, agree with this last, as in the examples you stated before ?

MASTER.

Because those words of *quantity* and the *plural* following them, which you refer to, are but an expression, while the Noun *collective* presents an idea independent of what may follow.—An example will make you sensible of this : I suppose that, instead of writing "L' armée des Puissances combinées *a* été *taillée* en pièces," one would write, "L' armée des Puissances combinées *ont* été *taillées* en pièces ;" would not you almost exclaim then, that peace must inevitably be the consequence, because you infer, though the sentence of the writer be defective, that it is the *Puissances combinées* that have been cut to pieces, as *tailleés*, by assuming the gender and number of *Puissances*, relates to them. But, upon reflecting on the construction of the sentence, you will perceive that it is the *army* only, and not the powers themselves, that have been *cut to pieces ;* while you would discover that the defect of the above sentence lies in the Verb and the Adjective (the correspondents of *armée*) which are plural, when they should be *singular*, and you would, therefore, correct them.

REMARK V.

The Noun *gens* exercises a very strange influence on the *Adjective*, as it is always put in the *feminine*, when the Adjective *precedes* it.

EXAMPLES.

Ce sont de fort *dangereuses* gens.	They are very *dangerous* people.
Toutes les *vieilles* gens, *toutes* les *sottes* gens & *toutes* les *méchantes* gens l' ont désapprouvé.	*All* the *old* people, *all* the *foolish* people, and *all* the *wicked* people have disapproved of it.

EXCEPTIONS.

We say *tous* les gens and not *toutes* les gens, all people ; Example ;

Tous les gens d' honneur & de probité l' estiment.	*All* people of honor and probity esteem him.

We also say, contrary to the rule,

Tous les *honnêtes* gens & *tous* les *habiles* gens l' honorent.	*All honest* people and *all skilful* people honour him.

Because the Adjectives *honnête* and *habile* have the same termination for *both* genders ; but, should the Adjective *follow* the word *gens*, the rule is very precise, as it is invariably of the *masculine* gender.

EXAMPLES.

Ce sont des gens fort *dangereux*.	They are very *dangerous* people.
Ce sont des gens *polis* & *prudens*.	They are *polite* and *prudent* people.
Il ne faut pas vous fier à des gens *indiscrets*.	You must not trust *indiscreet* people.

REMARK VI.

Quelque chose always requires that its *correspondents* should be in the *masculine* singular.

EXAMPLES.

Il a toujours *quelque chose* de *merveilleux* à raconter.	He has always *something wonderful* to relate.
On m' a dit *quelque chose* qui est très-*plaisant*.	I have been told *something* very *comical*.
Je sais *quelque chose* qui n' est pas *fait* pour vous réjouir.	I know *something* which is not *calculated* to make you merry.

REMARK VII.

On and *Quiconque* commonly require their correspondents to be in the *masculine* gender.

EXAMPLES.

On est *venu* vous demander.	*Somebody* is *come* to ask for you.
On n' est ni *vertueux* ni *méchant* à demi.	*One* is neither *virtuous* nor *wicked* by halves.
Quiconque fait le mal en est *puni* tôt ou tard.	*Whoever* does harm is *punished* for it sooner or later.
Quiconque parlera Anglais sera *mis* à l'amende.	*Whosoever* speaks English shall be *fined*.

But, should the above words pointedly refer to *women*, the *feminine* must always be used.

EXAMPLES.

On doit toujours être *soumise* à son mari.	*One* (or *a woman*) should always be *obedient* to her husband.
Quand *on* est *belle*, *on* ne l' ignore pas.	When *one* (or *a woman*) is *handsome*, *one* (or *she*) is not *ignorant* of it.
Quand *on* est *jolie*, *on* n' est pas *la dernière* à le savoir.	When *a woman* is *pretty*, *she* is not *the last* to know it.
Quiconque est *enceinte* doit être *attentive* à sa santé.	*Whoever* is *pregnant* must be *attentive* to her health.
Quiconque de vous, Mesdemoiselles, sera assez *imprudente* pour le faire, sera *punie*.	*Whichsoever* of you, young ladies, will be *imprudent* enough to do it, shall be *punished*.

SCHOLAR.

Have you no further observations to make on *on* ?

MASTER.

Several more :.....1st, When *on* is repeated in a sentence, it must refer to the *same* Noun.

EXAMPLES.

On veut être instruit & l' *on* ne veut prendre aucune peine pour l' être.	*People* wish to be enlightened, and yet will take no trouble for it.
On croit souvent être aimé & *l' on* est haï.	*People* often believe themselves to be beloved, while they are hated.

2d, We use *l' on* instead of *on*, in order to avoid a disagreeable clashing of Vowels, or the tedious repetition of the same sound ; therefore, *l' on* ought to be prefered after the following words, *et*, *si*, *ou*, & *que*, especially when *on* precedes a word beginning with *com*....*con*....

EXAMPLES.

Quand *on* pardonne *on* en est plus grand, & *l' on* s' abaisse en se vengeant.	When *one* forgives, he becomes the greater for it, and *one* degrades himself by revenge.
Si *l' on* veut voir la fin d' un procès, il faut souvent le commencer dans sa jeunesse.	If *one* wishes to see the end of a law-suit, it is often necessary that it should be begun in one's youth.
C' est par la vertu qu' *on* lutte avec tranquillité contre les passions des hommes, & que *l' on* con*nai*t le contentement au milieu de leurs injustices. C' est par elle qu' *on* voit venir la défaite sans abattement, & que *l' on* conserve encore du courage après la disgrâce.	It is by the help of virtue *one* struggles, with tranquillity, against the passions of men, and enjoys self-content amidst their injustice. It is through her *one* sees defeat come without being discourag'd, and *one* keeps still good heart after an overthrow.
Dites moi si *l' on* danse où *l' on* dine ?	Tell me if they dance where they dine ?

Observe, that, if *on* be followed by an *l* in the next word, the *l* should be omitted before it ; therefore, do not say, "& *l'* on l' entendit....si *l'* on le voit....où *l'* on le cherche, &c." but & *on* l' entendit....si *on* le voit....où *on* le cherche &c.

SCHOLAR.

Are there not some difficulties in the French language concerning the use of the word *Personne ?*

MASTER.

Yes ; I will explain them to you : when this word is preceded by an *Article*, it implies an individual of the human species, and requires that the *Adjective* correspondent be always *feminine*.

EXAMPLES.

J' ai rencontré *la* personne que vous avez trouvée si *ennuyeuse*.	I met with *the* person you found so *tedious*.
Nulle or *aucune* personne n' est assez *sotte* pour le croire.	*No one* is *foolish* enough to believe it.
Il n' y avait pas *une* personne qui n' en fut *fachée*.	There was not *one* person but was *sorry* for it.

If *Personne* be *alone*, and not preceded by an *Article*, it requires that its correspondent should be *masculine*, and is then used to express any human being whatever.

EXAMPLES.

Personne n' est assez *sot* pour le croire.	No body is *foolish* enough to believe it.
Il n' y avait personne qui n' en fut très-*fâché*.	There was no body who was not very *sorry* for it.

Hence it is, that the presence or absence of the *Article* before it, makes all the difference in its use. It is necessary to observe here, with the French Academy, that such modes of expression as *une jolie—une charmante—une belle* &c. *personne* are never used but for *women*.

SCHOLAR.

You have asserted in mentioning the rule of concordance, that the Noun always regulated its *correspondents*. As you point out no exception to that rule, I must take it for granted that there are none : however, I have heard of *one*, and this is a very remarkable one.

MASTER.

You will oblige me to mention it ; for, I confess, it has entirely escaped my notice ; though I cannot help expressing some surprise at it, as the *Noun* is the supreme power to which every other part of speech pays homage, it appears to me inconsistent that it should *receive* the law from its *subordinates*.

SCHOLAR.

My authorities are Professors of Languages and Authors of Grammars themselves.

One of them says that he is “ *Professeur des Langues Espagnole & Française*.”—The other says “ *Qu' il en-*

seigne par principes les langues Anglaise, Allemande & Suédoise." I see in the above examples, that two Adjectives, in the *singular*, require the corresponding *Noun* to be *plural;* is not that *receiving* law instead of *imposing* it? What say you now?

MASTER.

I say, that the two sentences you mention are incorrect; and, that the master who teaches so well *par principes*, teaches *par de faux principes*, and when he teaches, he had better leave his *principles* alone. The first should have said, he was *Professeur* de langue *Espagnole & Française*—and the second, *qu' il enseignait* la langue *Anglaise*, l' *Allemande* & la *Suédoise*. Our rule will stand for ever, without any exception, as it is founded on common sense, and a sense of due subordination between the parts of speech. Those Professors had no idea that such modes of expression are *elliptical*, and that the words *de langue*, placed in the first phrase before the feminine Adjective *Espagnole*, are *understood* before that of *Française*, and so on, if there were any number more of such Adjectives; and in the second phrase, the word *langue* is also *understood* before each of the feminine Adjectives *Allemande* and *Suédoise*.

I cannot conclude the Syntax of the Noun, without descanting upon particulars attending the gender of some *Substantives;* but, as these are not so important as the other points, you are yet unacquainted with, you will defer attending to them, till you have run over the whole of this Syntax.

A TABLE OF NOUNS,

WHOSE GENDER VARIES ACCORDING TO THEIR NUMBER, ACCEPTATION, &c.

The Nouns *amour*, *délice*, *orgue*, are masculine in the *singular*, and feminine in the *plural.*

EXAMPLES.

AMOUR, S. M.

Il est épris d' un *amour violent*.	He is intoxicated with *violent love*.

AMOURS, PL. F.

Il n' y a point de *laides amours.*	There are no *ugly loves*, or there is nothing ugly, or no ugliness in love.

But observe that *amour* is masculine, in the *plural*, when it means *graces personified*, or those small figures which serve as *emblems* in painting and sculpture.

EXAMPLES.

AMOURS, PL. M.

Les *petits amours* sont de *cruels* tyrans.	*Little loves* are *cruel* tyrants.
Il a fait sculpter de *jolis petits amours* autour de son lit.	He caused several *pretty little loves* to be carved round his bed

DELICE, SIN. M.

La promenade est *un délice* pour moi.	Walking is *a delight*, or *a luxury* to me.

DELICES, PL. F.

L' étude fait *toutes* mes *délices.*	Study is my *sole delight.*

ORGUE. SIN. M.

Voilà *un bel* orgue.	That is *a fine organ.*

ORGUES. PL. F.

Ce sont de fort *belles orgues.*	They are very *fine organs.*

Aide is *feminine* when it signifies *succour*, *assistance*, or the *person* who *gives* it; But, it is *masculine*, in the sense of being under the *command*, *direction*, &c. of a superior.

EXAMPLES.

AIDE, F.

Donnez-lui *une aide prompte.*	Give him *speedy help.*
Vous êtes *toute* mon *aide.*	You are *all* my *help*, or *support.*

AIDE, M.

Le Général Washington lui envoya *son aide* de camp.	General Washington sent him *his aid*-de-camp.
Avez-vous besoin d' *un aide* de cuisine?	Do you want *an under*-cook?
Non, il me faut *un aide* à maçon.	No, I must have *a* mason's *assistant.*

Aigle is *feminine*, in *aigle Impériale* Imperial eagle;—*aigle Romaine*, Roman eagle;—*aigle*, a constellation: under many other circumstances it is *masculine.*

EXAMPLES.

AIGLE, M.

Il est chevalier de l'*aigle blanc*, & de l' *aigle noir*.	He is a knight of the *white eagle*, and of the *black eagle*.
L' *aigle courageux* n' engendre point la timide colombe.	The *courageous eagle* does not beget the timid dove.

Couple, when signifying number, is *feminine*.

EXAMPLE.

COUPLE, F.

Envoyez-moi *une couple* d' œufs—*une couple* de poulets, & *une couple* de dindons.	Send me *a couple* of eggs—*a couple* of chickens, and *a couple* of turkeys.

But, when it is said of two persons united by the ties of *love*, or *hymen*, it becomes *masculine*.

EXAMPLE.

COUPLE, M.

Voilà *un couple* bien *uni*, bien *assorti*.	There is *a couple* happily *united*, well *matched*.
Couple heureux, puissent vos jours être longs !	*Happy couple*, may your days be long !

NOTE....Observe, you are never to use the above expression to designate two things made to go together; in this case the word *paire* must be used.

EXAMPLE.

PAIRE, F.

Prêtez-moi *une paire* de ciseaux—*une paire* de bas de soie & *une paire* de gants de peau.	Lend me *a pair* of scissars—*a pair* of silk stockings, and *a pair* of leather gloves.

Echo is *masculine* when it signifies the *repetition* of *sound*.

EXAMPLE.

ECHO, M.

L' *écho* répond *seul* à ma voix.	The *echo alone* answers to my voice.

It is *feminine* when it designates the *Nymph* of that name.

EXAMPLE.

ECHO, F.

Echo était *amoureuse* de Narcisse.	*Echo* was *in love* with Narcissus.

Enseigne is *masculine* only when it signifies a *standard-bearer* in a regiment.

EXAMPLE.

ENSEIGNE, M.

Cet *enseigne* a mérité d' être *fait* capitaine.	This *ensign* has deserved to be *made* a captain.

Exemple is *feminine* only when it signifies a *copy* of *writing*.

EXAMPLE.

EXEMPLE, F.

Les *exemples* de ce maître d' écriture sont bien faites.	The *copies* of this writing-master are well *written*.

Garde is *masculine* when said of a *keeper* of any thing.

EXAMPLES.

GARDE, M.

On avait placé en sentinelle un *garde* du corps, *un garde* du roi, *un garde* Française & *un garde* Suisse.	They had placed at centry *a* king's life *guard*, *a* king's *guard*, *a* French *guard*, and *a* Swiss *guard*.
Le garde-magasin s' est évadé.	*The keeper* of the magazine has *made his escape*.

It is *feminine* in every other acceptation.

Guide is *masculine* when it means a *conductor*.

EXAMPLE.

GUIDE, M.

Fiez-vous à lui, c' est *un bon guide*.	Trust him, he is *a good guide*.

But *feminine* when it means a *rein*.

EXAMPLE.

GUIDE, F.

La guide du côté droit de cette bride s' est *rompue*,	*The rein* on the right side of this bridle has been *broken*.

However, in this *last* sense, it is more frequently used in the *plural*.

EXAMPLE.

GUIDES, F.

Les *guides* lui échappèrent de la main, *elles* étaient trop *courtes*.	The *reins* slipt from his hand, *they* were too *short*.

Hymne is *feminine* when we speak of the hymns sung in *church*.

EXAMPLE.

HYMNE, F.

Santeuil a fait les plus *belles hymnes Latines*.	Santeuil has written the most *beautiful Latin hymns*.

In other circumstances it is *masculine*.

EXAMPLE.

HYMNE, M.

Je chante, l'Olympe m'écoute; & mon *hymne immortel* ajoute un plaisir aux plaisirs des Dieux.	I sing, Heaven listens to me; and my *immortal hymn* adds pleasure to the pleasures of the Gods.

Manœuvre is *masculine* when speaking of a *man*.

EXAMPLE.

MANOEUVRE, M.

C'est *un* manoeuvre laborieux.	He is *a laborious* workman.

But *feminine* in its other acceptations.

Remark, with the French Academy, that the word *manœuvre*, a workman, is used only in speaking of un *aide à maçon*, an help or assistant mason; un *aide à couvreur*, an help or assistant tiler. The word *manouvrier* is used to designate those who work with their hands and by the day.

Oeuvre is *masculine*, in the *singular*, only when it means the *philosophical stone*, and then the epithet *grand* is always prefixed to it.

EXAMPLE.

OEUVRE, M.

C'est un adepte *du grand œuvre*.	He is an adept in *Alchymy*.

It is also *masculine* when applied to the works of a *musician.*

Je voudrais avoir *le troisième œuvre* de ce *musicien.*	I wish I had *the third work* of this *musician.*

In its other applications it is *feminine*, both in the *singular* and *plural.*

EXAMPLES.

OEUVRE, F.

L' œuvre de la création fut *achevée* en six jours.	The *work* of the creation was *done* in six days.
C' est *une bonne œuvre* que vous ferez.	You will do *a good action.*

Office, when applied to the part of a house appropriated to preparing of *desserts* and containing *linen* and *plates*, is always *feminine.*

EXAMPLE.

OFFICE, F.

Cette office est *placée* commodément.	*This buttery* is conveniently *situated.*

In all its other acceptations it is *masculine.*

Parallèle is *feminine* when applied to signify a straight *line* parallel to another.

EXAMPLE.

PARALLELE, F.

Ces deux *parallèles* sont *égales* en longueur.	These two *parallels* are *equal* in length.

But *masculine* when it is intended to express a *circle* parallel to the Equator, or (figuratively) a *comparison* between two objects.

EXAMPLES.

PARALLELE, M.

Ceux qui sont sous *le même parallèle* ont la même latitude.	Those that are under *the same parallel* have the same latitude.
Montesquieu a fait *le parallèle* de Caton avec Cicéron.	Montesquieu has drawn *a parallel* between Cato and Cicero.

Pendule is *masculine* when used in relation to a *clock.*

EXAMPLE.

PENDULE, M.

Les vibrations de *ce pendule* sont très-rapides.	The motions of *this pendulum* are very rapid.

When it signifies a *clock* it is then *feminine.*

EXAMPLE.

PENDULE, F.

Combien voulez-vous de *cette pendule ?*	How much do you ask for *this clock ?*

Période is *feminine* when alluding to *grammatical* language.

EXAMPLE.

PERIODE, F.

C' est *une période nombreuse* & *conçue* en termes bien arrangés.	It is *an extensive period expressed* in terms well arranged.

It is also *feminine* when it signifies the *revolution* of a celestial body, or the *crisis* of a fever.

EXAMPLES.

PERIODE, F.

La lune fait *sa période* en vingt-neuf jours & demi.	The moon completes *her periodical revolution* in twenty-nine days and a half.
La fièvre quarte a ses *périodes réglées.*	The quartan ague has its *regular periods.*

But it is *masculine* when it signifies the highest *degree* of any thing, or the highest *point* one may reach.

EXAMPLES

PERIODE, M.

Démosthène & Cicéron ont porté l' éloquence à *son* plus *haut période.*	Demosthenes and Cicero have carried eloquence to *its highest pitch.*
Il est dans *le dernier période* de sa vie.	He is at *the last period* of his life.

Pâque, without an *s*, signifies the *Passover* of the Jews, and is *feminine*.

EXAMPLE.

PAQUE, F.

Notre Seigneur a célébré *la pâque* avec ses disciples.	Our Lord celebrated *the passover* with his disciples.

But, when signifying the *Easter* of the Christians, and spelt with an *s*, it is *masculine*, and admits of no *Article*.

EXAMPLE.

PAQUES, M.

Quand *pâques* sera *venu*, je réglerai mon compte avec vous.	When *Easter* comes, I will settle my account with you.

When *Pâques* is used in the plural, it takes on the *feminine*.

EXAMPLE.

PAQUES, F.

Cette vieille dévote ne fait point de *bonnes pâques*.	This old devotee does not perform her *Easter duty* conscientiously.

There are Nouns that, under the same acceptation, adopt *either* gender, according to the choice of him who speaks; such are, *automne* and *Duché-pairie*.

EXAMPLES.

AUTOMNE, M. & F.

Un bel automne, (masc. after the Adjective. *Une* automne *pluvieuse*, (fem. before the Adjective).	*A fine* *A rainy* Autumn.

DUCHE-PAIRIE, M. & F.

Un, ou *une* duché-pairie, (the masculine is more generally used).	*A* dukedom.

Foudre, in its primary acceptation, without epithet, is *feminine*, in the singular.

EXAMPLE.

FOUDRE, F.

Il a été frappé de *la foudre*.	He was struck *by thunder*.

But, if you add an *epithet* to it, or if it be *plural*, it is indifferently of *either* gender.

EXAMPLES.

FOUDRE, M. & F.

Le foudre vengeur, ou *La foudre vengeresse.*	les a punis.	*Avenging thunder* has punished them.

FOUDRES, M. & F.

Les *foudres impuissans* s' éteignent dans les airs.
Je pourrais t' écraser & les *foudres* sont *prêtes.*

Foudre is *masculine* in the following *figurative* mode of expression.

EXAMPLES.

FOUDRE, M.

Cet orateur est *un foudre* d' éloquence.	This orator is *a thunder-bolt* of eloquence.
Ce guerrier est *un foudre* de guerre.	This warrior is *a thunder-bolt* of war.

It is also *masculine* when used to signify an amazing large *vessel* for *liquids.*

EXAMPLE.

Le fameux foudre d' Heidelberg contient, dit-on, plus de cent bariques de vin.	*The famous* tun of Heidelberg contains, they say, above one hundred hogsheads of wine.

Pleurs; tears, is always *masculine.*

EXAMPLES.

PLEURS, M.

Le ciel dans *tous* leurs *pleurs* ne m' entend point nommer.
Voilà les *premiers pleurs* qui coulent de mes yeux.
Cesse tes *pleurs*, Alzire, *ils* outragent ton père.

There are some *nouns*, which, under the *same* inflection and gender, designate *two* sexes, such are, *auteur*, *docteur*, *écrivain*, *garant*, *témoin*, *médecin*, *orateur*, *peintre*, *soldat*, *poëte*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Cette *femme* est *auteur* de plusieurs bons ouvrages—c' est un charmant *écrivain*—un *poëte* élégant—un excellent *peintre*—en un mot, c' est un *amateur* éclairé de tous les beaux arts.	This *woman* is *author* of several good works—she is a charming *writer*—an elegant *poet*—an excellent *painter*—in a word, she is an enlightened *amateur* of the fine arts.

Hypparchia, femme Grecque, était *professeur* de philosophie & *orateur*.	Hypparchia,a Grecian woman, was a *professor* of philosophy and an *orator*.
Cette dame est ausi bon *médecin* & aussi grand *docteur* que son mari.	This lady is as good a *physician*, and as great a *doctress* as her husband.
La fameuse Madame D' Eon était un brave *soldat*.	The famous Madame D' Eon was a brave *soldier*.
Cette femme est un *témoin* irrécusable dans cette affaire.	This woman is *an* unobjectionable *witness* in this business.

I will conclude by making some remarks on the manner of forming the plural of compound Nouns.

1st, When a Noun is composed of a *Substantive* and an *Adjective*, *both* take the termination of the *plural*.

EXAMPLES.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Un arc-boutant.	Des arc*s*-boutan*s*.
un bout-rimé.	des bout*s*-rimé*s*.

2d, When compound Nouns are formed with a *Preposition*, or a *Verb* and a *Noun*, the *Noun* alone, can be made *plural*.

EXAMPLES.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Un avant-coureur.	Des avant-coureur*s*.
un entre-sol.	des entre-sol*s*.
un abat-vent.	des abat-vent*s*.
un garde-fou.	des garde-fou*s*.

3d, When a word is formed by uniting two Nouns by means of a *Preposition*, the *first* of the two Nouns *alone* takes the inflection of the *plural*.

EXAMPLES.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Un arc-en-ciel.	Des arc*s*-en-ciel.
un chef-d' œuvre.	des chef*s*-d' œuvre.
un cul-de-lampe.	des cul*s*-de-lampe.
un coq-à-l' âne.	des coq*s*-à-l' âne.

Nouns borrowed from *foreign* idioms, without being gallicised, are written in the *plural* as in the *singular*; thus we say in French,

des	alibi. alinea. ave. auto-da-fé. errata.	des	opéra. zéro. numéro. et cætera.

The words *factum*, *debet*, and *placet* are an exception, for to these the French Academy add an *s* in the *plural.*

Proper names used in a *figurative* sense, admit of the *plural* final.

EXAMPLES.

Les Racine*s* & les Voltaire*s* sont des hommes rares.	The Racine*s* and the Voltaire*s* are rare men.
Les Locke*s* & les Montesquieu*s* ont été les vrais législateurs du monde.	The Locke*s* and the Montesquieu*s* were the true legislators of mankind.

Proper names of persons, serving only to *distinguish* people by their name, though applied to several, do *not* assume the *plural.*

EXAMPLES.

Les deux *Corneille* se sont distingués dans la république des lettres.	The two *Corneilles* have distinguished themselves in the republic of letters.
Les trois *Bernard* ont été chantés par Voltaire.	The three *Bernards* have been sung by Voltaire.

INSTRUCTION THE FOURTH.

OF THE ADJECTIVE AND NUMBERS.

MASTER.

The Adjective, being the most intimate *correspondent* of the Noun from which it originated, must always, as we have already shown, agree with it in *gender* and *number*. —Having in the *first* part of this volume acquainted you with what relates to the gender and number of Adjectives, I will now proceed to trace out some difficulties of the French language, relative to the *place* which the Adjectives ought to occupy either, *before* or *after* the Noun, when they are not *attributes* in a sentence.

RULE I.

Several kinds of Adjectives, in French, are always placed *after* their Noun: 1st, Adjectives formed of the *present* or *past* participles of the Verbs.

EXAMPLES.

C' est un ouvrage *divertissant.*	It is an *entertaining* work.
Vous lui donnez là une preuve *convaincante* d' amitié.	You give him there a *convincing* proof of friendship.
Le médecin m' a dit que c' était un homme *mort.*	The physician told me he was a *dead* man.
Une belle pensée *embrouillée* est un diamant couvert de boue.	A fine thought when *confused* is a diamond covered with mud.

There are only few *exceptions* where Adjectives formed of the Participles *present* can be put *before* the Noun.

EXAMPLES.

Le plus *décidant* personnage n' est pas toujours le mieux instruit.	The most *positive* man is not always the best informed.
La campagne offre mille *riantes* images.	The country affords a thousand *delightful* prospects.

2dly, Adjectives that denote *figure*, *colour*, *taste*, *sound*, or relate to the sense of *feeling*.

EXAMPLES.

Il me faut une table *ronde*.	I want a *round* table.
J' ai acheté une tabatière *carrée*.	I bought a *square* snuff-box.
Je préfère le vin *blanc* au vin *rouge*.	I prefer *white* wine to *red*.
Il porte des bas *noirs* avec un habit *vert*.	He wears *black* stockings with a *green* coat.
Le médecin lui a ordonné de boire une décoction d'herbes *amères*, & de manger des fruits *aigres*.	The physician has ordered him to drink a decoction of *bitter* herbs, and to eat *sour* fruits.
Au dernier concert, il joua sur un violon *sonore ;* & elle enchanta tout le monde par sa voix *harmonieuse*.	At the last concert, he played on a *sonorous* violin; and she charmed every one by her *harmonious* voice.
La nuit passée, j' ai couché sur un lit *dur*.	Last night I slept on a *hard* bed.
A dîné, on nous servit une volaille *tendre* & des œufs *mollets*.	At dinner, they served us up a *tender* fowl and *soft* eggs.
Nous passâmes par plusieurs chemins *raboteux*.	We passed through several *rough* roads.

3dly, Those relating to *matter* or *spirit*, or that express any kind of *operation*.

EXAMPLES.

La partie *aqueuse* du sang est la plus considérable.	The *aqueous* part of the blood is the most considerable.
Les esprits *aériens* n' existent que dans une imagination *superstitieuse*.	*Aerial* spirits exist only in the imagination of the *superstitious*.
Cette substance contient bien des parties *salines*.	That substance contains many *saline* parts.
Je cherche par tout un domestique *actif*.	I look every where for an *active* servant.
Cet écrivain se sert toujours de mots *expressifs*.	This writer always uses *expressive* words.

4thly, Those expressing a quality relative to the *nature* or *species* of a thing.

EXAMPLES.

Cet avare n' a jamais éprouvé de plaisir *réel.*	This miser never experienced any *real* pleasure.
L' ordre *logique* doit passer avant l' ordre *grammatical.*	*Logical* order must go before *grammatical* order.
La philosophie a banni pour toujours les qualités *occultes.*	Philosophy has forever banished *occult* qualities.

5thly, Adjectives ending in *esque*, *ic*, *ique*, *il*, *ul*, *ier.*

EXAMPLES.

Scarron excellait dans le style *burlesque.*	Scarron excelled in the *burlesque* style.
Tous ceux qui voyagent en Suisse, en admirent les vues *pittoresques.*	All those who travel in Switzerland admire its *romantic* landscapes.
Le bien *public* est préférable à l' intérêt *particulier.*	*Public* good is preferable to *private* interest.
Ce souverain a l' esprit *pacifique.*	This sovereign has a *pacific* mind.
On lui a fait présent d' un carosse *magnifique.*	He *or* she has been presented with a *splendid* coach.
Cet homme a la conversation *puérile* & la conduite *incivile.*	This man has a *childish* conversation and *impolite* conduct.
Je ne crois pas que cette femme soit *crédule.*	I do not believe she is a *credulous* woman.

6thly, Adjectives of *Nations.*

EXAMPLES.

L' Iliade & l' Enéide sont les tableaux du peuple *Grec* & du peuple *Romain.*	The Iliad and Æneid are pictures of the *Greek* and *Roman* people.
Ce seigneur *Russe* a un cuisinier *Français* & un valet de chambre *Italien.*	This *Russian* lord has a *French* cook and an *Italian* valet de chambre.
La constitution *Américaine* est un chef-d' œuvre de sagesse humaine.	The *American* constitution is a master-piece of human wisdom.

Note, that adjectives chiefly relating to *moral* qualities good or bad, are in general *indifferently* placed either before or after their *Substantives*.

EXAMPLES.

C' est une femme *charmante*, ou C' est une *charmante* femme.	She is a *charming* woman.
Vous trouverez en lui un ami *fidèle*, ou un *fidèle* ami.	You will find in him a *faithful* friend.
Elle lui a fait de *sévères* réprimandes, ou des reprimandes *sévères*.	She reprimanded him *severely*.
Ce jeune homme a des maximes *détestables*, ou de *détestables* maximes.	This young man has *detestable* maxims.

Notwithstanding the *above* rules, harmony, taste, and poetical language countenance a *deviation* from them. Therefore, an attentive reading of good authors, or practice in the conversation of the well-informed of the French nation, will be the best guides for *English* or *American* pupils.

RULE II.

In English *two* Adjectives may qualify a *Noun*, without being united by a *conjunction ;* but the conjunction is absolutely *indispensable* in French.

EXAMPLES.

C' est une femme *bonne* & *vertueuse*.	She is a *good*, *virtuous* woman.
C'est un homme *sobre* & *charitable*.	He is a *sober*, *charitable* man.

I will observe, that, though the English learner might sometimes place *both* Adjectives thus united by the *Conjunction before* the Noun, yet, to prevent mistakes, I advise him to place the two Adjectives always *after* the Noun.

Remark, that if *three* or *more* Adjectives should qualify *one* Noun, the *Conjunction* is then placed *between* the two *last*, and the Adjectives must always be put after the Noun.

EXAMPLES.

Ce sont des leçons *longues*, *ennuyeuses* & *embarrassantes*.	These are *long*, *tedious* and *perplexing* lessons.
Un ami *constant*, *sincère* & *désintéressé* est rare.	A *constant*, *sincere* and *disinterested* friend is rare.

Observe, that custom will sometimes allow *one* of the Adjectives to *precede* the Noun, while the *other*, or others, should *follow*.

EXAMPLES.

C' est une *grande* femme *blonde*.	She is a *tall*, *fair* woman.
C' est un *petit* homme, *sec* & *robuste*.	He is a *small*, *raw-boned*, *robust* man.

RULE III.

The Preposition *by*, when used, in English, before a word or words expressing *proportion*, by which one subject exceeds another, is always rendered, in French, by the Preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Je suis plus grand que vous *de* toute la tête.	I am taller than you *by* the whole head.
Il est plus âgé que moi *de* six ans.	He is older than I *by* six years.
Cette allée est plus étroite que l' autre *de* deux pieds & demi.	This alley is narrower than the other *by* two feet and a half.
C' était trop cher *de* moitié.	It was too dear *by* half.

Observe, that when, in English, *than* precedes *numbers*, it is also rendered, in French, by *de*.

EXAMPLES.

J' ai perdu au jeu plus *de* cent guinées.	I lost, in playing, more *than* one hundred guineas.
Elle n' a pas plus *de* dix-sept ans.	She is not more *than* seventeen.
Je l' ai vu plus *d'* une fois.	I saw him more *than* once.

RULE IV.

When *than*, in a *comparative* sense, precedes a *Verb*, it is rendered, in French, by *que ne*.

EXAMPLES.

Il est plus sage *que* vous *ne* pensez.	He is wiser *than* you think.
Je suis plus fort *que* je *n'* étais l' année passée.	I am stronger *than* I was last year.
Vous écrivez mieux *que* vous *ne* fesiez.	You write better *than* you did.

EXCEPTION I.

If the *Verb* following *than* be in the *Infinitive* mood, *que* is followed by *de* instead of *ne*.

EXAMPLES.

Il est plus noble de pardonner *que de* se venger.	It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge one's self.
Il est plus aisé d' obéir *que de* commander.	It is easier to obey *than* to command.

But, when the French *comparative* Adjective requires the Preposition *à* before the *first* Infinitive, *than* is then expressed by *qu' à*.

EXAMPLES.

Il est plus disposé à vous nuire *qu' à* vous obliger.	He is more inclined to hurt *than* to oblige you.
Il est plus sujet à médire *qu' à* bien faire.	He is more addicted to slander *than* to do well.

EXCEPTION II.

The word *than* is rendered by *que* only when a *Conjunction*, or *connective* word, is placed between *than* and the *Verb*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous vous rétablirez plutôt *que si* vous étiez à la ville.	You will recover sooner *than if* you were in the country.
Elle est plus belle *que quand* je la vis.	She is handsomer *than when* I saw her.

RULE V.

When the *Superlative* does not imply any comparison (although it relate to a Noun *feminine* singular or plural) *le*, instead of *la* or *les*, must invariably precede *plus*.

EXAMPLES.

La lune ne nous éclaire pas autant que le soleil, lors même qu' elle est *le* plus brillante.	The moon does not enlighten us as much as the sun, even when she shines *the* brightest.
La lune n' est pas, à beaucoup près, aussi éloignée de la terre que les autres astres, lors même qu' elle en est *le* plus éloignée.	The moon is not by much as distant from the earth as the other celestial bodies even when she is *the* most distant from it.
Nous ne pleurons pas toujours quand nous sommes *le* plus affligés.	We do not always shed tears, when we are *the* most afflicted.

It is very easy to see in the above phrases, that no objects are designed to be *contrasted* or *compared* together.

RULE VI.

The Preposition *in* which sometimes follows a *Superlative*, in English, is always rendered by *de*, *du*, or *de l'*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

C' est la plus grande coquette *de* Philadelphie.	She is the greatest coquette *in* Philadelphia.
C' est le meilleur homme *du* monde.	He is the best man *in* the world.
La France est le pays le plus peuplé *de l'* Europe.	France is the most populous country *in* Europe.

RULE VII.

When a *Superlative* is connected with a *Verb* by means of the words *qui*, *que*, *où*, it requires that Verb to be in the *Subjunctive*.

EXAMPLES.

C' est la plus belle fille *qui ait* jamais existé.	She is the handsomest girl *that* ever existed.
C' est l' homme le plus fort *que* j' *aie* vu.	He is the strongest man I ever saw.
C' est une des affaires les plus désagréables *où* jamais un honnête homme se *soit* trouvé engagé.	It is one of the most disagreeable affairs *in which* an honest man was ever engaged.

MASTER.

I have acquainted you, in the Conversation on the *Adjective*, of what was meant by the *regimen* or *complement* thereof. My object, now, is to acquaint you what kind of Adjectives require the Preposition *de* before their *complementary* word, and what others require the Preposition *à*.

RULE VIII.

French Adjectives expressing *plenty*, *satisfaction*, *desire*, *knowledge*, &c. as well as Adjectives having a *contrary* signification; and, in general, those followed, in English, by the Prepositions *of*, *from*, *after*, *with*, *by*, &c. require the Preposition *de* after them.

EXAMPLES.

Il a été comblé *de* politesses.	He was loaded *with* kindnesses.
Je suis privé *de* tout.	I am deprived *of* every thing.
Il est très-avide *de* richesses.	He is very greedy *after* wealth.
Il est chargé *de* dettes.	He is deeply *in* debt.
Vous n' êtes pas capable *d'* expliquer cet auteur.	You are not able *to* construe this author.
Elle est incapable *de* mensonge.	She is incapable *of* a lie.
Je suis content *de* votre réponse.	I am satisfied *with* your answer.
Il est mécontent *de* sa femme.	He is discontented *with* his wife.
Je suis ravi *de* son rétablissment.	I am overjoyed *at* his recovery.
Je suis exempt *de* crainte & *de* danger.	I am free *from* fear and danger.

RULE IX.

Adjectives which denote *aptness*, *fitness*, *inclination*, *conformity*, *habit*, *disposition*, &c. require the Preposition *à* after them.

EXAMPLES.

Il est propre *à* tout.	He is fit *for* any thing.
Elle n' est propre *à* rien.	She is unfit *for* any thing.
Cela est nuisible *à* la santé.	That is hurtful *to* health.
Cela est aisé *à* dire & mal-aisé *à* faire.	This is easy *to* say and difficult *to* do.

Il est adonné *à* l' ivrognerie.	He is addicted *to* drunkenness.
Cela est-il conforme *à* la vérité ?	Is that conformable *to* truth ?
Le vôtre est semblable *au* mien.	Yours is like mine.
Je suis sensible *à* vos bontés.	I am sensible *of* your kindnesses.
Il est insensible *à* toutes les remontrances de ses amis.	He is insensible *to* all the remonstrances of his friends.
Ce négociant est très-exact *à* ses engagemens.	This merchant is very punctual *in* his engagements.
Il est habile *à* tout faire.	He is skilful *in* doing every thing.
Il est zèlé *à* remplir ses devoirs.	He is zealous *in* discharging his duty.

Observe, that a *few* Adjectives are often followed, in French, by the Preposition *envers*, which is then rendered, in English, by *to*.

EXAMPLES.

Il faut être poli *envers* tout le monde.	One must be polite *to* every body.
Ce maître est très-bon *envers* ses esclaves.	This master is very good *to* his slaves.
Ce capitaine de corsaire est très-cruel *envers* ses prisonniers.	This captain of a privateer is very cruel *to* his prisoners.

RULE X.

When *numbers* are followed by a *Noun* and a *past Participle*, in English, the Preposition *de* must be put, in French, *between* the *Noun* and *Participle*, which agrees with the *former* in *gender* and *number*.

EXAMPLES.

Dans le dernier incendie, il y eut vingt-sept maisons *de* brûlées, plus de cinquante personnes *d'* étouffées par les flammes, & un grand nombre *d'* ensevelies sous les ruines.	In the last fire, there were *twenty-seven houses* burnt ; more than *fifty people* smothered by the flames, and a *great many* buried under the rubbish.
Cette frégate a eu, dans le combat, soixante hommes *de* tués & quatre-vingt *de* blessés.	This frigate had, in the engagement, *sixty men* killed and *eighty* wounded.

Scholar.

Are there not some difficulties concerning the Adjectives *feu*, *nu*, and *grand?*

Master.

Yes: 1st, The Adjective *feu* preceded by the Article *la* is *feminine*, but when it precedes that Article it is *masculine*.

EXAMPLES.

Feu la reine, ou la *feue* reine, était une femme accomplie.	The *late* queen was an accomplished woman.

Observe, that this Adjective has no *plural.*

2d, The Adjective *nu*, when it precedes a *Noun*, is invariable, but when it follows agrees with it in *gender* and *number*.

EXAMPLES.

Il lui parla *nu*-tête, ou la tête *nue*.	He spoke to him or her, *bare*-headed.
Il va *nu*-pieds, *nu*-jambes, ou il va les pieds *nus*, les jambes *nues*.	He goes *bare*-footed, *bare*-legged.

3d, *Grande*, feminine, sometimes loses its *e* in pronunciation and in writing, before a few Nouns beginning with a *consonant*, which is signified by an *Apostrophe* being put over the place where the *e* should be.

EXAMPLES.

Il est entré dans la *grand*' salle du palais.	He entered the *large* hall of the court.
Ce n' est pas *grand*' chose.	'Tis no *great* matter.
Cette nouvelle lui fera *grand*' peine.	This piece of news will grieve him or her *very much.*
Il eut *grand*' peur & moi aussi.	He was *very much* afraid and I also.
J' avais *grand*' faim & lui aussi.	I was *very* hungry and he too.
Avez-vous fait *grand*' chère ?	Had you a *plentiful* entertainment ?
Il hérite de sa *grand*' mère & de sa *grand*' tante.	He inherits from his *grand* mother and aunt.
La *grand*' messe dura plus de quatre heures.	*High* mass lasted above four hours.

I conclude the Syntax of the Adjectives by informing you, that *Adjectives* used in the place of *Adverbs*, never vary.

EXAMPLES.

Cet orateur demeura *court* contre son usage.	This orator stopped *short* contrary to his custom.
L' aînée de ces demoiselles chante *juste*, la cadette chante *faux*.	The eldest of these young ladies sings *true*, and the youngest sings *false*.
Vous parlez trop *vîte* & trop *bas* pour moi.	You speak too *fast* and too *low* for me.

RULE XI.

In speaking of *Sovereigns* and *Princes*, the *cardinal* numbers are used, in French, instead of the *ordinal*, as in English, except in alluding to the two *first* of the *Dynasty*, when the *ordinal* number must be used.

EXAMPLES.

Louis *premier*, fils de Charlemagne, fut surnommé le débonnaire.	Lewis *the first*, son of Charlemagne, was surnamed the meek.
Jacques *second* mourut en France, le quatorze Septembre, mil sept cent un.	James *the second* died in France on* the 14th of September, 1701.
George *trois* fut couronné, le vingt-deux Septembre, mil sept cent soixante & un.	George *the third* was crowned on* the 22d of September 1761.
Henri *quatre*, roi de France mourut assassiné.	Henry *the fourth*, king of France, was murdered.
Charles *cinq*, roi de France, fut surnommé le sage.	Charles *the fifth*, king of France, was surnamed the wise.

Observe, that, when speaking of Charles the fifth, *Emperor of Germany*, and *Pope* Sextus the fifth, we say, Charles-*quint* & Sixte-*quint*, instead of Charles *cinq* and Sixte *cinq*.

---

* *On* is never expressed in French.

We also make use of the *cardinal* number instead of the *ordinal*, in speaking of *all* the *days* of the month, the *first* excepted.

EXAMPLE.

La Société s' assembléra le *premier*, le deux, le dix-sept & le vingt-un de juin.	The Society will meet on the *first*, the second, the seventeenth and the twenty-first of June.

I have now to make but a few remarks concerning the *numbers*.

1st. *Unième*, first, is used only after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, *quatre-vingt*, *cent* & *mille*, as is exemplified in the following example:

C' est la vingt-*unième* fois que je lui écris.	It is the twenty-*first* time I write to him.

2d. We may say either *vingt-un* or *vingt & un ; trente-un* or *trente & un*, and so on to *quatre-vingt ;* but it is customary now to suppress the Conjunction for the following numbers, and say, for instance, *vingt-deux*, &c. *trente-deux*, &c.

3d. They said formerly *septante* for *soixante-dix ; huitante* for *quatre-vingt*, and *nonante* for *quatre-vingt-dix*. Those expressions have been very improperly banished from the language, as they keep up *analogy* in the formation of numbers and thereby facilitate the exercise of the memory in numbering them. The first of these is now used only when speaking of the translation of the *Bible*, by *seventy* great Interpreters ; which we call *la version des Septante*. The last is in use in *Geometry* only.

4th. *Cent* in the plural is invariable when followed by another *number*.

EXAMPLE.

Ils étaient trois *cent* vingt.	They were three *hundred* and twenty.

But when it is *preceded* by a number, without being followed by another, it then takes an *s*, the mark of the *plural*.

EXAMPLE.

Il y en eut trois cent*s* de tués.	There were three hundred of them of killed.

Vingt, in *quatre-vingt*, is invariable, when followed by another number.

EXAMPLE.

Cette montre me coûte *quatre-vingt*-six guinées.	This watch cost me *eighty*-six guineas.

But should it be followed by a *Noun* then it also takes an *s*.

EXAMPLE.

La mienne ne me coûte que *quatre-vingts* guinées.	Mine cost me only *eighty* guineas.

Mille never takes the mark of the *plural.*

EXAMPLE.

Dix *mille* hommes d' infanterie & quatre *mille* de cavalerie.	Ten *thousand* infantry and four *thousand* cavalry.

In the marking of dates we only write *mil.*

EXAMPLE.

L' an *mil* huit cent trois sera à jamais célèbre dans les Etats-Unis d' Amérique, par l' acquisition de la Louisiane.	The year *one thousand* eight hundred and three will be forever celebrated in the United States, for the acquisition of Louisiana.

The *ordinal* and *collective* numbers will take the mark of the *plural.*

EXAMPLE.

Les quatre *premières douzaines* d' œufs ne valent rien; mais les vingt *dernières* sont excellentes.	The four *first dozen* of eggs are good for nothing; but the twenty *last* are excellent.

5th, *Onze* does not require the *elision* of vowels before it, nor to be connected with the final consonant of the preceding word, as it is gently aspirated.

EXAMPLES.

De *onze* enfans qu' ils étaient, il en est mort quatre.	Out of *eleven* children, as they were, four of them are dead.
De vingt il n' en reste plus que *onze*.	Out of twenty, *eleven* only remain.

Le *onze*, du *onze*, au *onze* de Septembre.

Ils étaient *onze*—J' irai le voir sur les *onze* heures.	They were *eleven*—I shall go and see him about *eleven* o'clock.

Une, in that mode of expression, sur les *une* heure, about *one* o'clock, is likewise aspirated like *onze*.

I here conclude the Syntax of the Numbers. Our next care will be to acquaint you with the use of some of the remaining Articles.

SCHOLAR.

I find that in the course of this Instruction you have said nothing about the word *demi*.

MASTER.

I had forgot it probably, because it is a fractional number, but this does not excuse me, as nothing useful should be omitted; *demi* is *masculine*, when it *precedes* a Noun *feminine*; but it takes the *feminine*, when it comes *after* a Noun of *that* gender: so they say, *une demi*-heure, *half* an hour; une heure & *demie*, an hour and a *half*.

INSTRUCTION THE FIFTH.

ON THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLES.

MASTER.

The French language and the English exhibit perhaps no greater opposition or difference in any part of their *Syntax*, than in that of the *Possessive Articles*, on which, in French, there are some very difficult and intricate rules, totally foreign to the idiom of the English language. It will be, therefore, expedient to make these rules the object of your most attentive study.

RULE I.

Possessive Articles must, like all other Articles, be *repeated* before *each* Substantive, according to the *gender* and *number* thereof.

EXAMPLES.

Mon père, *ma* mère, *mes* frères & *mes* sœurs sont à la campagne.	*My* father, mother, brothers and sisters, are in the country.
J' ai parlé à *son* maître, à *sa* maîtresse & à *ses* camarades d' école.	I spoke to *his* master, mistress and schoolmates.
Ne sortez pas sans *votre* parasol, *vos* gants & *votre* tabatière.	Dont go out without *your* umbrella, gloves and snuff box.

Observe, that though a Noun be *feminine*, the possessive Article *masculine* singular, *mon*, *ton*, *son* must be respectively used before it, instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, should it begin with a *vowel* or *h* mute (see examples thereof page 50).

RULE II.

Possessive Articles which agree, in English, with the *possessor*, must, on the contrary, agree, in French, with the gender of the *thing possessed*.

EXAMPLES.

Ramassez *son* mouchoir.	Take up *his* handkerchief.
Ramassez *son* mouchoir.	Take up *her* handkerchief.
Connaissez-vous *son* mari ?	Do you know *her* husband ?
J' ai dansé avec *sa* fille.	I danced with *his* daughter.

RULE III.

In French, the *possessive* Article must be used, when we speak or answer to *relations*, *friends*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Mon cousin, apportez-moi ce que vous m' avez promis.	*Cousin*, bring me what you promised me.
Ma tante, irez-vous ce soir à la comédie ?	*Aunt*, will you go to the play this evening ?
Non, *mon neveu*, car j' ai promis d' aller à un bal.	No, *nephew*, for I promised to go to a ball.
Mon frère, prêtez-moi votre plume.	*Brother*, lend me your pen.

Je ne puis, *ma sœur*, car j' écris mon thême.	I cannot, *sister*, for I am writing my exercise.
Mon ami, approchez-vous de moi.	*Friend*, come near me.
Mon capitaine, je suis prêt à vous obéir.	*Captain*, I am ready to obey you.
Mon camarade, étiez-vous à ce combat sanglant ?	*Comrade*, were you at that bloody engagement?

RULE IV.

When, in English, the *possessive* Articles *its*, *their*, relating to *inanimate* objects, can be rendered by *of it*, *of them*, or *thereof*, they are always expressed in French, by the Adverb *en ;* otherwise they are expressed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leurs* respectively, as will appear in the following

EXAMPLES.

La Delaware est une belle rivière ; le lit *en* est assez profond pour admettre de gros vaisseaux.	The Delaware is a fine river ; *its* channel is deep enough to admit of large vessels.
Comment trouvez-vous sa maison de campagne? La situation n' *en* est-elle pas charmante ?	How do you like his country seat? Is not the situation *thereof* pleasing ?
Cette affaire est délicate ; le succès *en* est douteux.	This business is delicate ; *its* success is doubtful.
Cette simple est fort commune ; cependant je n' *en* connais pas les vertus.	This plant is very common ; yet I do not know *its* properties.
Avez-vous lu mon livre? Le caractère n' *en* est-il pas bien beau ?	Have you read my book? Is not the type *thereof* very beautiful ?
Il y a un très-grand verger derrière sa maison ; les arbres *en* sont très-bien plantés; les fruits *en* sont excellens.	There is a very large orchard behind his house ; the trees *of it* are very well planted ; the fruits *thereof* excellent.
La Tamise est sortie de *son* lit.	The Thames went out *of its* channel.
C' est une petite maison qui a *ses* commodités.	It is a small house which has *its* conveniencies.

Philadelphie a *ses* beautés ; J' admire la régularité & la propreté de *ses* rues.	Philadelphia has *its* beauties ; I admire the regularity and cleanliness of *its* streets.
Voilà des arbres qui étendent *leurs* branches bien loin.	Those trees spread *their* branches very far.

Observe, that in matters of *science*, custom authorises the use of the *possessive* Article, though it might be rendered, in English, by *of it* ; and so, in speaking of a *triangle*, we may say ; *ses* angles valent cent quatre-vingt dégrés, *its* angles are equal to one hundred and eighty degrees. In speaking of *a grammar*, we may say ; *ses* règles sont trop compliquées, *its* rules are too complicated, &c.

RULE V.

The English *possessive* Articles *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, &c. are rendered, in French, by the *passive personal Pronoun*, and the Articles Indicative *le*, *la*, *les*, when the Verb, which precedes them, denotes an *action* over any part of the *body*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous *lui* avez rompu *le* bras.	You broke *her* arm.
Vous *m'* avez marché sur *le* pied.	You trod on *my* foot.
Il faudra *lui* couper *la* jambe.	*His* leg must be cut off.
Vous *me* blessez *la* main.	You hurt *my* hand.
Il ne peut sortir ; la goute *lui* a enflé *les* jambes.	He cannot go out ; the gout has swelled *his* legs.
Je *me* suis fait couper *les* cheveux.	I had *my* hair cut.

RULE VI.

When, from the *Indicative* Article being inadequate to the removal of *equivocality* of expression, the *passive* Pronouns cannot be used, the English Articles *possessive* are rendered, in French, by their *correspondents*.

EXAMPLES.

Je vois que *mon* bras enfle.	I see that *my* arm is swelling.
Pensez-vous que *sa* blessure se guérisse jamais ?	Do you believe *his* wound will ever be cured ?

Elle lui donna *sa* main à baiser.	She gave him *her* hand to kiss.
Elle donna hardiment *son* bras au chirurgien qui devait la saigner.	She boldly gave *her* arm to the surgeon that was to bleed her.

But observe, that, as soon as the *Article*, owing to the perspicuity of the sentence, may be used without apprehension of *equivocation*, the Article *au*, *à la*, &c. is substituted to the Article *possessive*.

EXAMPLES.

J' ai mal *à l'* oreille & *aux* yeux.	*My* ears and eyes ache, *or* are sore.
J' ai grand mal *à la* gorge.	I have a violent sore throat.
N' avez-vous jamais eu mal *aux* dents ?	Have you never had the toothach ?
Non ; mais j' ai fort souvent mal *à l'* estomac.	No ; but I have often a pain in *my* stomach.
J' ai eu mal *au* cœur à l' église.	*My* heart was faint at church.
J' ai mal *à la* tête, *au* côté & *aux* reins.	I feel a pain in *my* head, side and loins.

RULE VII.

The elliptical term *mine*, le mien, &c. in French, must agree, both in *gender* and *number*, with the *Noun* to which they relate.

EXAMPLES.

Quand vous m' aurez dit votre sentiment, je vous dirai *le mien*.	When you have told me your opinion, I will tell you *mine*.
Songez-y de votre côté ; J' y songerai ausi *du mien*.	Think about it, on your part ; I will on *mine*.
Sa voiture & *la mienne* sont arrivées.	His carriage and *mine* are come.
Ses amis & *les miens* s' en sont mêlés.	His friends and *mine* have meddled with it.
J' ai perdu mon canif, prêtez-moi *le vôtre*.	I have lost my pen-knife, lend me *yours*.
Leur maison est presque vis-à-vis de *la nôtre*.	Their house is almost opposite to *ours*.
Le Roi était dans son carrosse, & la Reine dans *le sien*.	The King was in his coach and the Queen in *hers*.

RULE VIII.

When, in English, *mine*, &c. are preceded by *of*, then they are rendered by the Article possessive *mon*, &c. in such occasions as the following

EXAMPLES.

Un *de mes* parens vient d' arriver des Indes.	A relation *of mine* is just arrived from the Indies.
C' est une *de mes* connaissances.	He is an acquaintance *of mine*.
Deux *de ses* domestiques l' ont volé.	Two servants *of his* robbed him.
Un *de leurs* chevaux boite.	A horse *of theirs* is lame.

RULE IX.

Should any of the Possessive Articles be *preceded* by the Verb to be, having for its subject a *Noun* or the Pronouns it, they, &c. they are expressed, in French, by *à moi*, *à toi*, *à soi*, *à lui*, *à elle*, *à eux*, *à elles*.

EXAMPLES.

Ce livre est-il *à vous ?* Non, il est *à lui*, ou *à elle*.	Is this book *yours ?* No, it is *his*, or *hers*.
Cette prairie est *à nous* & ce bois est *à eux*.	This meadow is *ours*, and this wood is *theirs*.
La terre était *à moi*, à présent elle est *à toi*.	The land was *mine*, now it is *thine*.
On m' a dit que c' était *à lui ;* s' il était *à moi*, je m' en déferais le plus promptement possible.	I have been told that it was *his*; if it were *mine*, I would get rid of it as quick as possible.
S' ils étaient *à moi*, je les garderais.	If they were *mine*, I would keep them.

INSTRUCTION THE SIXTH.

ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLE, &c.

MASTER.

It is useless to repeat what has already been said, concerning the *gender* and *number* of this *Article*, in the *first* part of this work, to which you may have recourse: I will merely observe that, like all others, it must be *repeated* before every *Substantive* with *appropriate* gender and number, as is exemplified in the following beautiful passage from RACINE's *Bérénice.*

> " De *cette* nuit, Phénice, as-tu vu la splendeur?
> Tes yeux ne sont-ils pas tout pleins de sa grandeur?
> *Ces* flambeaux, *ce* bûcher, *cette* nuit enflammée,
> *Ces* aigles, *ces* faisceaux; *ce* peuple, *cette* armée,
> *Cette* foule de Rois, *ces* Consuls, *ce* Sénat,
> Qui tous de mon amant empruntaient leur éclat;
> *Cette* pompe, *cet* or que rehaussait sa gloire,
> Et *ces* lauriers encore, témoins de sa victoire."

In order to render the above words more fully determinative of the object spoken of, we often, in familiar language, add the small words *ci* and *là.*

EXAMPLES.

Cet homme-*ci* est honnête; mais *cet* homme-*là* est un coquin.	*This* man is honest; but *that* man is a rogue.
Cette amée-*ci* ne nous a pas été favorable.	*This* year has not been favorable to us.
Ces plumes-*ci* sont meilleures que *celles-là.*	*These* pens are better than *those.*
Cette maison-*ci* est à vendre & *celle-là* est à louer.	*This* house is to be sold, and *that* is to be let.

RULE I.

The words *this* and *that*, when used to *point* at some object, without *naming* it, are rendered, in French, by *ceci*, *cela*.

EXAMPLES.

Ceci est bon, *cela* est mauvais.	*This* is good, *that* is bad.
Donnez-moi *ceci* & envoyez-lui *cela*.	Give me *this*, and send him *that*.
Ceci est plus surprenant que *cela*.	*This* is more surprising than *that*.
Ceci fut approuvé de quelques-uns ; mais *cela* déplut à toute la compagnie.	*This* was approved by a few ; but *that* displeased the whole company.

RULE II.

That which is rendered, in French, by *ce qui*, *ce que*, and *what* by *ce qui* only: *ce qui* is used as *subject*, and *ce que* as *object* in a sentence.

EXAMPLES.

Ce qui le fâche, c' est de n' avoir pas réussi.	*That which* grieves him, is to have not succeeded.
Ce qui me réjouit, c' est de vous avoir vu & toute votre famille en bonne santé.	*That which* rejoices me, is to have seen you and all your family in good health.
Ce qui me plaît, vous déplaît.	*That which* pleases me, displeases you.
Ce qui lui est arrivé, est bien triste.	*That which* happened him, is very melancholy.
Ce qui est agréable au goût, est souvent contraire à la santé.	*That which* is agreeable to the taste, is often prejudicial to health.
Ce que je vous dis, est vrai.	*That which* I tell you, is true.
Je sais *ce que* vous pensez de cela.	I know *what* you think of it.
Avouez franchement *ce que* vous avez fait.	Own candidly *what* you have done.

RULE III.

Whenever *ce qui*, *ce que*, or *ce dont* (de quoi) & *ce à quoi* begin a sentence composed of *two* members, *ce* must be *repeated*, in French, before the Verb *être*, which begins the *second* member, provided it be *followed* by another *Verb*, a *Noun* plural, or a *Pronoun*.

EXAMPLES.

Ce qui m' amuse, *c'* est d' apprendre ma leçon.	*That which* diverts me, is to learn my lesson.
Ce qui me chagrine, *c'* est de n' avoir point d' occupation.	*That which* vexes me, is to be without employment.
Ce que je crains le plus, *ce* sont les trahisons.	*That which* I fear most is treason.
Ce que je déteste le plus, *ce* sont les injustices.	*That which* I hate most is injustice.
Ce que j' aime le mieux, *c'* est d' être seul.	*That which* I like best, is to be alone.
Ce dont je me plains, *c'* est qu' il soit sorti sans permission.	*That of which* I complain, is that he is gone out without leave.
Ce à quoi l' avare pense le moins, *c'* est de jouir de ses richesses.	*That of which* a miser thinks the least, is to enjoy his riches.
Ce qui m' attache à la vie, *c'* est vous.	*That which* keeps me attached to life, is you.

But, should the Verb *être* be followed by a *Noun*, singular, instead of a *Verb*, then *ce* may, or may not, be *repeated*, according to the choice or taste of the writer, which circumstances ought to regulate.

EXAMPLES.

Ce qui m' indigne est, *ou c'* est l' injustice.	*That which* provokes me is injustice.
Ce que je dis est, *ou c'* est la vérité.	*That which* I say is the truth.
Ce que je hais dans un jeune homme, est, *ou c'* est la paresse.	*That which* I hate in a young man, is laziness.

Ce should be omitted before *être*, if it be followed by an *Adjective* or a *past* Participle.

EXAMPLES.

Ce qu' il dit, *est* fait pour vous effrayer.	*That which* he says, is calculated to frighten you.

Ce que vous venez de m' apprendre, *est* bien fâcheux.	*That* of *which* you have just been informing me, is very unfortunate.
Ce dont j' avais peur est arrivé.	*That* of *which* I was afraid has happened.
Ce que j' ai mangé était délicieux.	*That which* I ate was delicious.

SCHOLAR.

I have observed that many Americans make blunders in the use of *ce qui*, *ce que*, in French, by erroneously substituting one for the other; which mistake appears so much the more natural, as the two expressions *above* are rendered, in English, by the same words *that which*. Could not you give me such rules, as to effectually prevent these mistakes?

MASTER.

I assigned the real difference between *ce qui* and *ce que*, when I first mentioned these *idiomatical* terms: I will now speak a language more mechanical.—When *that which* is, in English, placed immediately before a Verb, it is rendered, in French, by *ce qui*.

EXAMPLE.

Ce qui coûte peu est trop cher, dès qu' il n' est pas nécessaire.	*That which* costs cheap is too dear, when it is not necessary.

Should a *Pronoun* intervene between *that which* and the *Verb*, *that which* is always rendered by *ce que*.

EXAMPLES.

Nous ne devrions jamais parler de *ce que* nous ne savons pas.	We ought never to speak of *that which* we don't know.
Ce que vous proposez là pour le guérir, n' est que de l' onguent miton-mitaine.	*That which* you propose to cure him is mere powder of post.

RULE IV.

This, *that*, *these*, *those*, when used in order to avoid the repetition of the *Noun* they relate to, are rendered, in French, by *celui*, S. M. *celle*, S. F. *ceux*, PL. M. *celles*, PL. F.

EXAMPLES.

Il dépense tout son bien & *celui* de sa femme.	He is spending all his estate and *that* of his wife.

Cette maison est plus petite que *celle* de votre frère.	This house is smaller than *that* of your brother.
Ses chevaux sont plus beaux que *ceux* du Roi.	His horses are finer than *those* of the King.
Mes vaches donnent plus de lait que *celles* de mon voisin.	My cows give more milk than *those* of my neighbour.

Observe, that *ci* and *là* are annexed to the above words, in pointing or alluding to the *contrast* or *comparison* of objects.

EXAMPLES.

Voilà plusieurs draps ; choisissez *celui-ci*, ou *celui-là*.	There are several cloths ; chuse *this* or *that*.
Je ne veux ni de *celui-ci* ni de *celui-là*.	I will have neither *this* one nor *that*.
La vertu & le vice produissent des effets différens ; *celui-ci* cause le malheur de l' homme, *celle-là* le rend heureux.	Virtue and vice produce different effects ; *this* causes the misery of man, *that* makes him happy.
Voilà des poires & des abricots; *ceux-ci* sont mûrs, celles-*là* ne le sont pas encore.	Here are pears and apricots ; *these* are ripe, but *those* are not yet so.
Le corps périt, l' ame est immortelle ; cependant nous négligeons *celle-ci* & nous sacrifions tout pour *celui-là*.	The body perishes, the soul is immortal ; nevertheless, we neglect *this* and sacrifice every thing for *that*.

RULE V.

Such expressions as *he who*, *she who*, *they who*, *that who*, *that which*, *those who*, *such as*, &c. are expressed, in French, by *celui qui*, S. M. *celle qui*, S. F. *ceux qui*, PL. M. *celles qui*, PL. F.—*he whom*, *&c. that which* (being objects) are rendered by *celui que*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Celui qui ne sait pas garder un secret, est indigne de confiance.	*He who* does not know how to keep a secret, is unworthy of confidence.
Celle qui vient de passer, est mariée.	*She who* just went by, is married.
Ceux qui sont paresseux, ne connaissent pas le prix du tems.	*Such as* are idle, know not the value of time.

Ceux qui sont contens de leur sort, sont heureux.	*Those who* are contented with their condition, are happy.
Celles qui ont le mieux dansé, ont été récompensées.	*Those who* have danced the best, have been rewarded.
On doit encourager les efforts de *ceux qui* s' appliquent aux arts & aux sciences.	We ought to encourage the efforts of *those who* apply themselves to the arts and sciences.
Celui que vous voyez a manqué d' être pendu.	*He whom* you see, had like to be hanged.
Ceux que vous protégez, vous trahissent.	*They whom* you protect, betray you.

Observe, 1st. That *qui* may be separated from *celui*; in that case *là* is joined to *it*; so instead of saying,

Celui qui médit de son prochain est un méchant homme,	*He who* slanders his neighbours is a wicked man,

We may say,

Celui-là est un méchant homme *qui* médit de son prochain.	*He* is a wicked man, *who* slanders his neighbours.

And instead of

Ceux qui négligent de payer leurs dettes, se préparent bien des chagrins,	*These who* neglect to pay their debts, provide for themselves much care,

We may say,

Ceux-là se préparent bien des chagrins, *qui* négligent de payer leurs dettes.	*They* provide for themselves much care, *who* neglect to pay their debts.

2d. If a question be asked by the English relative *which*, it is, in French, rendered, in the answer, by *celui qui*, *celle qui*, &c. in such occasions as the following

EXAMPLE.

Laquelle de ces deux oranges voulez-vous ? *Celle qui* vous plaira.	*Which* of these two oranges will you have ? *Which* you please.

RULE VI.

Ce joined to the Verb *être* requires it should *accord* with the *Substantive* that follows.

EXAMPLES.

C' est votre tems, *ce sont* vos soins, vos affections, *c' est* vous-même qu' il faut donner à votre ami.	*It is* your time, *it is* your cares and affections, *it is* yourself you must bestow on your friend.
Si *ce* n' *est* pas la religion, *ce sont* les coutumes qu' on y révère au lieu de lois.	If *it be* not religion, *it is* custom that is venerated there instead of the law.
Sont-ce là vos gens ?	*Are these* your people ?
Ce furent ces associations qui firent fleurir si long-tems la Grèce.	*It was* those associations that made Greece flourish so long.
Ce furent les Français qui prirent la place d' assaut.	*It was* the French who took the place by storm.

The *poets* and some *prose-writers* often, with elegance, deviate from the above rule.

Observe, that if *étre* be followed by several Nouns, in the *singular*, it remains in the *singular*, though those Nouns united be equivalent to a *plural*.

EXAMPLES.

C' *est* votre frère & votre ami, qui vous demandent.	*It is* your brother and your friend who ask for you.
Ce qui fait le triomphe d' une femme, c' *est* la vertu & l' esprit.	That which makes the triumph of a woman *is* virtue and understanding.

RULE VII.

Should the Verb *être* be followed by a *plural* Pronoun, it remains notwithstanding in the *singular*, except that Pronoun be of the *third* person *plural*; and then it assumes the number *corresponding* thereto.

EXAMPLES.

C' *est nous* qui avons enlevé le drapeau.	It *is we* who have carried the colors off.

Est-ce *nous* qui l' avons oublié ?	*Is* it *we* who have forgot it?
Ce *fut nous* qu' on choisit pour cette expédition.	It *was we* that were chosen for that expedition.
C' *est vous*, Messieurs, qui en êtes cause.	It *is you*, Gentlemen, who are the cause of it.
Est-ce *vous*, Mesdames, qui avez dansé les premières ?	*Is* it *you*, Ladies, who danced the first ?
Ce *sont eux* qui lui apprendront la vraie manière de se bien conduire dans le monde.	It *is they* who will teach him the true manner of behaving in the world.
Est-ce *eux* qui s' y opposent ? *.	*Is* it *they* who are against it ?
C' *étaient elles* qui fesaient les honneurs de la maison.	It *was they* who did the honors of the house.

RULE VIII.

When a question is asked, in French, by *est-ce là ; sont-ce là*, &c. if it relate to a *thing*, the answer, in the affirmative is, *oui, ce l' est ;* if to several ; *oui ce les sont ;* but if to *persons*, the *proper* Pronouns are used and placed *after* the Verb *étre*.

EXAMPLES.

Est-ce là la maison de votre père ? *Oui, ce l' est.*	*Is this* your father's house ? *Yes, it is.*
Est-ce là votre mouchoir ? *Oui, ce l' est—Non, ce ne l' est pas.*	*Is that* your handkerchief ? *Yes, it is—No, it is not.*
Sont-ce là vos gants ? *Oui, ce les sont—Non ce ne les sont pas.*	*Are these* your gloves ? *Yes, they are—No, they are not.*
Sont-ce là ses amusemens ? *Oui, ce les sont.*	*Are these* his amusements ? *Yes, they are.*
Est-ce là leur maître de Français ? *Oui, c' est lui.*	*Is that* their French master ? *Yes, it is he.*
Etait-ce là sa sœur ? *Oui, c' était elle.*	*Was that* his, *or* her sister ? *Yes, she was.*
Sont-ce là vos amis ? *Oui, ce sont eux.*	*Are these* your friends ? *Yes, they are.*
Sont-ce là vos parentes ? *Oui, ce sont elles.*	*Are these* your kinswomen ? *Yes they are.*

---

* In an interrogation *sont-ce eux ?* would be too grating to the ear, the singular *est-ce eux ?* though it militates against the above rule, is preferred.

Observe, 1st, When such an indeterminate question as, *sont-ce des hommes que je vois?* are those I see men? is asked: the answer is, *c' en est*, yes, they are: one cannot answer *c' en sont*, which would be quite as harsh as *sont-ce eux?*

2d, The answer to such a question as *est-ce là nos gens?* are these our people? (which can be resolved, in French, by *cela est-il* nos gens? is that our people?) is, *oui*, *c' est eux;* that is to say, *cela est eux*—But, if the question was expressed thus, which is the most correct, *sont-ce là* nos gens? the answer would be, *ce sont* eux.

INSTRUCTION THE SEVENTH.

ON THE CONJUNCTIVE ELLIPTICAL WORDS QUI, QUE, &c.

RULE I.

Who, *that* and *which*, not acted upon by a *Preposition*, are expressed, in French, by *qui*, which, when these words are placed before a *Verb*, in English, if some one of the active Pronouns *I*, *thou*, &c. be not interposed *between* either of them and the Verb, is appropriate to *any* object to be determined.

EXAMPLES.

L' homme *qui* parle, est un de mes amis.	The man *who* speaks, is a friend of mine.
La demoiselle *qui* me parle, a été dangereusement malade.	The young lady *who* speaks to me, has been dangerously ill.
La femme *qui* prend soin de son ménage est estimable.	The woman *who* takes care of her house is estimable.
Voyez-vous ces chevaux *qui* courent?	Do you see those horses *that* run?
Passez-moi le plat *qui* est sur la table.	Hand me the dish *which* is on the table.

RULE II.

When *whom*, *that*, or *which* are placed before a *Verb* attended by *either* of the *active* Pronouns *I*, *thou*, &c. they are translated, in French, by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

La dame *que* vous avez vue, doit se marier la semaine prochaine.	The lady *whom* you have seen, is to be married next week.
Est-ce là le chapeau neuf *que* vous avez acheté ?	Is that the new hat *which* you bought ?
La leçon *que* j' ai apprise, est longue & difficile.	The lesson *which* I learnt, is long and difficult.

EXCEPTION.

Who or *whom*, though placed before an *active* Pronoun, when it is meant to express *what person*, must be translated by *qui*.

EXAMPLES.

Je sais *qui* vous voulez dire.	I know *whom* you mean.
Devinez *qui* j' aime.	Guess *whom* I love.
Je ne saurais deviner *qui* vous aimez.	I cannot guess *whom* you love.
Eh bien ! vous ne saurez jamais *qui* c' est.	Well ! you will never know *who* it is.

RULE III.

Of whom, *of which*, or *whose* are generally expressed by *dont*, for all sorts of objects (singular or plural, masculine or feminine) when the Noun they relate to, is the subject or object of a sentence. *Of whom*, or *whose*, relating to *persons* only, may also be rendered by *de qui*.

EXAMPLES.

Dieu *de qui* ou *dont* nous admirons les œuvres.	God *whose* works we admire.
C' est l' homme *de qui* ou *dont*, je vous ai parlé.	It is the man *of whom* I spoke to you.
Les héros *de qui* ou *dont* il tire son origine.	The heroes *of whom* he draws his origin.

Est-ce là le cheval *dont* vous venez de faire l' acquisition?	Is that the horse *of which* you have just now made a purchase?
Le moyen *dont* il s' est servi, n' est pas honnête.	The means *of which* he made use, is not honest.
C' est une maladie *dont* on ne connaît point la cause.	It is an illness the cause *of which* is unknown.
C' est un événement *dont* il n' est point fait mention dans l' histoire.	It is an event *of which* no account is given in history.

Observe, that, *from whom* is always rendered by *de qui* and never by *dont*.

EXAMPLES.

Le jeune homme *de qui* j' ai reçu une lettre, il y a quelque tems, est mort.	The young man *from whom I* received a letter, some time ago, is dead.
Le négociant *de qui* vous réclamez cet argent, vient de faire banqueroute.	The merchant *from whom* you claim that money, has just been a bankrupt.
Les gens *de qui* vous attendez tant de services, vous trompent.	The people *from whom* you expect so many services, deceive you.

RULE IV.

Instead of *dont*, we use, in French, 1st, *de qui* m. & f. s. & p. or *duquel*, m. s. *de laquelle*, f. s. &c. for *persons ;* and 2dly, *duquel*, m. s. *de laquelle*, f. s. &c. (and never *de qui*) for *things*, when the sense or construction of the phrase admits of a *Noun* acted upon by a *Preposition* placed between them and the Noun it relates to.

EXAMPLES.

1st,	1st,
C' est un homme à la prudence *de qui* ou *duquel* vous pouvez vous fier.	He is a man to *whose* prudence *or* to the prudence *of whom* you may trust.
Il me faut une femme de chambre sur la conduite *de qui* ou *de laquelle* il n' y a rien à redire.	I want a chambermaid *in whose* behaviour, *or* in the behaviour *of whom*, there is nothing to censure.
Je cherche un négociant sur l' honneur & la probité *de qui* ou *duquel* il ne peut y avoir de doute.	I am looking after a merchant of the honor and probity *of whom* there is no doubt.

2d,	2d,
La Seine, dans le lit *de laquelle* viennent se jeter plusieurs rivières, arrose la Champagne, l' Isle de France &c.	The Seine, in the channel *of which* several rivers empty their waters, runs through Champaign, the Isle of France, &c.
Voilà un régiment à la valeur *duquel* l' ennemi n' a pu résister.	There is a regiment *whose* valor the enemy could not resist.
Les passions violentes sont des maladies aux progrès *desquelles* on ne saurait apporter de trop prompts remèdes.	Violent passions are ills to the progress *of which* one cannot apply too quick remedies.

RULE V.

When *whom* and *which* are governed by the Prepositions *to*, *on*, *in*, &c. the former, applying to *persons* or *personified beings* only, is translated by *qui;* and the latter, applying to *things* or *animals*, by *lequel*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

1st,	1st,
Votre père est un homme *à qui* j' ai beaucoup d' obligations, *en qui* j' ai mis ma confiance, & *sans qui* je serais mort à présent.	Your father is a man *to whom* I am much obliged, *in whom* I have put my confidence, and *without whom* I should have been now dead.
Le négociant *pour qui* je tiens les livres est très-opulent.	The merchant *for whom* I keep accounts is very wealthy.
Les amis sur qui vous comptez vous abandonneront.	The friends *on whom* you depend will forsake you.
Dieu *vers qui* vous tournez votre cœur vous aidera.	God *towards whom* you turn your heart will help you.
La Mort *à qui* tout cède n' effraye pas le sage.	Death *to whom* every thing yields does not frighten the sage.
2d,	2d,
Et cette mort *à laquelle* vous ne vous attendiez pas vous a effrayé.	And that death *which* you did not expect has frightened you.
Le cheval *auquel* vous avez donné à manger n' est pas à moi.	The horse *to which* you gave some feed is not mine.
Le plaisir *auquel* vous vous livrez est nuisible à la santé.	The pleasure *to which* you devote yourself is dangerous to health.

La chose *à laquelle* je pense est fort intéressante.	The thing *of which* I am thinking is very interesting.
L' emplacement *sur lequel* je veux bâtir est très-grand.	The lot *on which* I intend to build is very large.
Voilà les raisons *sur lesquelles* je me fonde.	These are the reasons *upon which* I rest.

Some authors of French Grammars will have it, that *quoi*, with the Prepositions *à*, *sur*, &c. may apply to *inanimate* objects; for instance; instead of saying, les raisons sur *lesquelles*, &c. they maintain that one might equally well say, les raisons sur *quoi*.

The fact is, that polite custom is against using *quoi* at all, in such cases and the like. There are circumstances in which *à quoi* and *de quoi* are used, when they allude to things: for example; *à quoi* is used when *to be* is followed by a *Verb* or *Adjective*, requiring after it the Preposition *to*, or any other rendered in French by *à*, before the words *that* which, *which* or *that*, what.

EXAMPLES.

C' est *à quoi* je m' applique.	It is *to that* I apply myself.
C' était *à quoi* je ne pensais pas.	It was *that which* I did not think *about*.
C' était *à quoi* elle l' exhortait.	It was *what* she exhorted him *to*.
Vous devriez payer vos dettes; c' est *à quoi* cependant vous ne pensez guère.	You should pay your debts; it is, however, *that which* you dont think much *of*.
Il n' y a rien *à quoi* je ne sois disposé.	There is nothing *which* I am not disposed *to*.

De quoi is used when *être*, to be, is followed by a *Verb* or *Adjective*, the correspondent of which requires *quoi* to be acted upon by *de*.

EXAMPLES.

C' est *de quoi* je m' occupe sans cesse.	It is *that* I am always occupying myself *about*.
C' est *de quoi* je vous assure.	It is *that* I assure you *of*.
C' est *de quoi* je suis très-mécontent.	It is *that* I am very dissatisfied *of*.

De quoi signifies also *something in itself that may*, &c. as in the following phrase,

Une juste louange a *de quoi* flatter un homme sensible.	A just praise has *something in itself that may* flatter a man of feeling.

De quoi signifies also, according to the sense, *sufficiency* or *abundance*.

EXAMPLES.

C' est un homme qui a *de quoi* vivre.	He is a man who has *wherewith* to live upon.
On m' a dit que cette demoiselle avait *de quoi*.	I was told that this young lady was *rich*.

But, if *rien*, nothing, be used after *être*, *dont* must be preferred to *de quoi*.

EXAMPLES.

Il n' y a rien au monde *dont* Dieu ne soit l' auteur.	There is nothing in the world *of which* God is not the author.
Il n' y a rien *dont* ce coquin ne soit capable.	There is nothing *that* this rascal is not capable *of*.
Il n' y a rien *dont* il se plaigne davantage.	There is nothing *that* he complains more *of*.

RULE VI.

Quoi may be acted upon, by other Prepositions in French when it corresponds to the English *that*, *what* or *which*, meaning, in general, *that thing*, *what thing*.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne vois pas *sur quoi* ses prétentions puissent être fondées.	I dont see *upon what* his pretensions are grounded.
Faites le ; *sans quoi* vous n' y parviendrez pas.	Do it ; *without that* you will not succeed in it.
Dites-moi *avec quoi* vous prétendez en venir à bout.	Tell me *by what means* you pretend to bring it about.
Avec la prodigalité, vous serez généreux pendant six mois ; après *quoi*, vous ne pourrez plus l' être.	With prodigality, you will be generous for six months ; after *which*, you cannot be so any longer.

RULE VII.

Should *whom*, *that*, or *which* be understood, in English, as in the following phrases and the like, they must, in French, absolutely be expressed.

EXAMPLES.

La demoiselle *que* vous avez rencontrée est Française.	The young lady you met is French.
L' arbre *que* vous voyez là-bas a été frappé de la foudre.	The tree you see yonder has been struck with lightning.
La compagnie *qu'* il fréquente n' est pas honnête.	The company he keeps is not honest.
C' est à vous *que* j' en veux.	It is against you I have a grudge.
C' est à lui *que* je parle & non pas à vous.	It is to him I am speaking and not to you.
C' est de moi *qu'* il se plaint.	It is of me he complains.
C' est contre eux *que* j' écris.	It is against them I write.
Je connais la personne avec *qui* vous causiez.	I know the person you were conversing with.
L' homme *de qui* ou *dont* vous avez reçu vos marchandises est parti pour France.	The man you received your goods from has set off for France.

MASTER.

There are some particular cases wherein, to prevent *amphibology*, *lequel*, &c. is prefered to *qui*, even in the circumstances expressed by Rule I. as in the following examples :

La fille de votre ami, *laquelle* est infiniment agréable, est venue vous demander.	The daughter of your friend, *who* is infinitely agreeable, is come to demand you.
C' est un effet de la providence, *lequel* convaincra les incrédules.	It is an effect of Providence, *which* will convince the incredulous.

Should one, in the first sentence, put *qui* instead of *laquelle*, it would not be determined, whether it be intended to signify that *the friend*, or *his daughter*, is infinitely agreeable; and, in the second, were it not for *lequel*, it could not be determined, whether it be *Providence*, or *its effect*, that will convince the incredulous.

RULE VIII.

When things are spoken of, and followed by *in which*, *in what*, *to which*, *at what*, *from which*, *through which*, &c. in the sense of *where*, *wherein*, *whereat;* these, if the Noun to which they relate, metaphorically, imply some kind of *motion*, or *rest*, may be rendered elegantly, in French, by *lequel*, M. S. *laquelle*, F. S. *lesquels*, M. PL. *lesquelles*, F. PL. *duquel*, *&c.* *par lequel*, *&c.* *vers lequel*, *&c.* instead of *où*, *d' où*, *par où*.

EXAMPLES.

Voyez le mauvais état *où* ou *dans lequel* vous l' avez laissée.	See the bad state *in which* you left her.
Le siècle *où* ou *dans lequel* nous vivons.	The age we live *in*.
Le danger *où* ou *dans lequel* il se trouve.	The danger *in which* he finds himself.
Voilà le but *où* ou *vers lequel* il tend.	That is the end he aims *at*.
Je me suis rendu à la maison *où* ou *dans laquelle* elle demeure.	I have repaired to the house *in which* she lives.
Philippe dit à son fils Alexandre, en lui donnant Aristote pour précepteur ; "apprenez, sous un si bon maître, à éviter les fautes *où* ou *dans lesquelles* je suis tombé."	Philip said to his son Alexander, in giving him Aristotle for his preceptor : "learn under so good a master to avoid the faults *into which* I have fallen."
Je connais le principe *d' où* ou *duquel* découle votre système.	I know the principles *from which* your system is derived.
Voilà les raisons d' *où* ou *desquelles* je conclus.	These are the reasons *from which* I conclude.
Henri quatre regardait la bonne éducation de la jeunesse, comme une chose d' *où* ou *de laquelle* dépend la félicité des roignaumes & des peuples.	Henry the fourth looked upon the good education of youth as a thing *upon which* the felicity of kingdoms and nations depends.
Voilà le chemin *par où* ou *par lequel* j' ai passé.	There is the road *through which* I passed.
Je sais les moyens *par où* ou *par lesquels* il parvint à ses fins.	I know the means *by which* he gained his point.

INSTRUCTION THE EIGHTH.

OF THE ELLIPTICAL TERMS, *QUI, LEQUEL,* &c. USED INTERROGATIVELY.

RULE I.

Who, is translated, in French, by *qui*, or *qui est-ce qui*, in the familiar language relating to persons only.

EXAMPLES.

Qui ou *qui est-ce qui* va là?	*Who* goes there?
Qui ou *qui est-ce qui* est venu?	*Who* is come?
Qui ou *qui est-ce qui* osera le faire?	*Who* will dare to do it?
Qui ou *qui est-ce qui* en veut?	*Who* wants some of it?

RULE II.

Whom, not being acted upon by a *Preposition*, is rendered, in French, by *qui*, or *qui est-ce que;* if by *qui*, the *Pronoun* must be placed *after* the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Qui poursuivez-*vous* si vivement?	*Whom* do you pursue so closely?
Qui découvrez-*vous* là-bas?	*Whom* do you descry yonder?
Qui aimez-*vous* le mieux?	*Whom* do you love best?

If it be rendered by *qui est-ce que*, the Pronoun must, on the contrary, *precede* the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Qui est-ce que vous poursuivez si vivement?
Qui est-ce que vous découvrez là-bas?
Qui est-ce que vous aimez le mieux?

RULE III.

When *whom* is acted upon by a *Preposition* it is rendered, in French, by *qui*, acted upon by an appropriate Preposition, and not so well by *qui est-ce que*, acted upon by the same Preposition.

EXAMPLES.

De qui vous entretenez-vous?	*Of whom* do you converse?
De qui tenez-vous cette nouvelle?	*From whom* have you this piece of news?

A qui écrivez-vous ?	*To whom* do you write ?
Avec qui demeure-t-elle ?	*With whom* does she live ?
Sur qui comptez-vous le plus ?	*Upon whom* do you rely the most ?
Pour qui travaillez-vous ?	*For whom* do you work ?

RULE IV.

Whose, interrogatively used, is rendered, in French, by *à qui*.

EXAMPLES.

A qui est cette belle maison ?	*Whose* fine house is that ?
A qui est ce ruban bleu ?	*Whose* blue ribbon is this ?
A qui est cette clé ?	*Whose* key is this ?
A qui sont ces bas de soie ?	*Whose* silk stockings are these ?
A qui sont ces boucles d' acier ?	*Whose* steel buckles are these ?
A qui sont ces jolies boucles d' oreille ?	*Whose* pretty ear-rings are these ?

RULE V.

Which, relating to *persons*, or *things*, is rendered, in French, by *lequel*, M. *laquelle*, F. &c.

EXAMPLES.

Lequel de vos frères est élève de la marine ?	*Which* of your brothers is a midshipman ?
Laquelle de ces demoiselles veut-il épouser ?	*Which* of these young ladies does he wish to marry ?
Lequel de ces tableaux me conseillez-vous d' acheter ?	*Which* of these two pictures do you advise me to buy ?
Laquelle de ces deux oranges souhaitez-vous ?	*Which* of these two oranges will you have ?
De ces éditions, à *laquelle* dois-je donner la préférence ?	Of these editions, to *which* ought I to give the preference.
Des romans que je vous ai achetés, *lesquels* trouvez-vous les plus amusans ?	Of the novels I bought for you, *which* do you think the most entertaining ?

RULE VI.

What, when applying to *persons* or *things*, used *interrogatively* and followed by a *Substantive*, is translated, in French, by *quel*, M. *quelle*, F, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Quel capitaine commandait ce jour là ?	*What* captain commanded on that day ?
A *quel* homme pensez-vous avoir affaire ?	*What* man do you think you have to deal with ?
De *quel* Monsieur parlez-vous ?	*What* Gentleman do you speak of ?
De *quels* Messieurs avez-vous reçu cet argent ?	Of *what* Gentlemen did you receive that money ?
Quel profit vous en revient-il ?	*What* profit do you receive by it ?
Quelle toile avez-vous apportée ?	*What* linen have you brought ?
Quelles chemises porte-t-il ?	*What* sort of shirts does he wear ?
En *quelle* monnaie vous a-t-il payé ?	In *what* coin has he paid you ?
A *quel* jeu jouerons-nous ?	*What* game shall we play at ?
Voici mon avis; *quel* est le vôtre ?	This is my advice; *what* is yours ?
C' était son sentiment, *quel* était le leur ?	It was his sentiment, *what* was theirs ?
Voilà mon opinion ; savez-vous *quelle* est la sienne ?	That is my opinion; do you know *what* is his ?

RULE VII.

What, signifying *what thing*, not acted upon by a *Preposition*, when it is the *object* of the Verb, is rendered, 1st, by *que*, or *qu' est-ce que ;* if *que* be used, the Pronoun active *follows* the Verb, as is generally done in interrogations. But, if, on the contrary, *qu' est-ce que* be preferred, the Pronoun active, as in affirmation, *precedes* the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Que dites-vous, *or qu' est-ce que* vous dites ?	*What* do you say ?

Que craignez-vous, ou *qu' est-ce que* vous craignez ?	*What* do you fear ?
Que cherche-t-elle, ou *qu' est-ce qu'* elle cherche ?	*What* does she look for ?

2d, By *que*, or *qui est-ce qui*, when it is the *subject* of the Verb; in using *que*, the Pronoun active will be necessary as in the foregoing examples; in using *qui est-ce qui*, no Pronoun active will be required; the Pronoun *passive*, if any be used, will, as a matter of course, *precede* the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Qu' est-il arrivé, ou *qu' est-ce qui* est arrivé ?	*What* has happened ?
Que lui est-il arrivé, ou *qu' est-ce qui lui* est arrivé ?	*What* happened to him ?

Remark, that *why*, implying *for what reason*, and attended by a *Negative*, may be translated by *que* followed by *ne*, instead of *pourquoi* and the Negative *ne pas*.

EXAMPLES.

Que ne le corrige-t-il, ou *pourquoi ne* le corrige-t-il *pas ?*	*Why* does he *not* correct him ?
Que n' attendez-vous ?	*Why dont* you wait ?
Que n' est-il venu plutôt ?	*Why* is he *not* come sooner ?
Que n' est-il plus soigneux de ses affaires ?	*Why* is he *not* more careful of his business ?
Que n' y va-t-il lui-même ?	*Why* does he *not* go thither himself ?
Que ne faites-vous ce qu' on vous dit ?	*Why dont* you do what you are told of ?

Que, in a very few phrases, may be used *without* the Negative.

EXAMPLES.

Que tardez-vous ?	*Why* do you stay ?
Que différons-nous ?	*Why* do we delay ?

Remark, that it is safer, in such cases, to use *pourquoi*, as, by this means, no room for error is left.

RULE VIII.

What, implying *what thing*, acted upon by a *Preposition* is rendered, in French, by *quoi*, with an *appropriate* Preposition before it.

EXAMPLES.

De quoi vous accuse-t-on?	*What* do they accuse you *of?*
De quoi parle-t-on?	*What* do they talk *of?*
En quoi est-elle coupable?	*In what* is she guilty?
Sur quoi en étiez-vous quand je suis entré?	*What* were you talking *about* when I came in?
A quoi attribuez-vous la faute?	*To what* do you impute the fault?

Observe, 1st, That, if *what* be *not* acted upon by a *Preposition*, its correspondent *quoi* may be *so*, in French, owing to the French Verb requiring a Preposition, while the *English* Verb does *not*.

EXAMPLES.

De quoi s' agit-il?	*What* is the matter?
A quoi peut-il s' attendre?	*What* can he expect?

2d, That *why* is sometimes rendered, in French, by *quoi*, preceded by a *Preposition*.

EXAMPLES.

De quoi vous mêlez-vous?	*Why* do you concern yourself?
A quoi bon tant de façons?	*Why* so much ado?

3d, *How*, generally rendered, in French, by *comment*, or *de quelle manière*, is sometimes translated by *quoi*, preceded by a *Preposition*.

EXAMPLES.

A quoi passez-vous votre tems, à la campagne?	*How* do you spend your time in the country?
A quoi nous amuserons-nous ce soir?	*How* shall we divert ourselves this evening?

INSTRUCTION THE NINTH.

OF THE ACTIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE I.

The Pronouns *active* of the *first* and *second* persons, if their Verbs be in *different* tenses, must be *repeated* before every *Verb* of the sentence in which they are found. Should the Verb be in the *same* tense, the Pronoun *may* or *may not* be repeated (according to fancy *or* taste), though it is most advisable to repeat them.

EXAMPLES.

Je pense & *je* penserai toujours la même chose.	*I* think and shall always think the same thing.
Vous l' avez vue & *vous* la verrez encore.	*You* have seen her and will see her again.
Nous pêchons à présent, & *nous* avons dessein d' aller à la chasse cette après midi.	*We* are fishing now, and intend to go shooting this afternoon.
Je dis & déclare, ou *je* dis & *je* déclare, que cela est ainsi.	*I* say and declare that it is so.

RULE II.

The Pronouns *active* of the *third* person are *not* to be repeated before *Verbs*, when those Verbs are in the *same* tense.

EXAMPLE.

La bonne grâce ne gâte rien ; *elle* ajoute à la beauté, relève la modestie, & y donne du lustre.	Good grace spoils nothing ; *it* adds to beauty, heightens modesty, and gives it a lustre.

Levizac, who gave in his grammar the above rule, justly remarks : "Clearness requires the repetition of the Pronoun, when the *second* Verb, besides the Conjunction *et*, is *preceded* by a *Preposition*, which, with its regimen (*complement*), forms a long incidental phrase, as,

Il fond sur son ennemi, & *après l' avoir saisi d' une main victorieuse*, *il* le renverse, comme le cruel aquilon abat les tendres moisons qui dorent la campagne.	*He* rushes on his enemy, *and after having taken hold of him with a victorious hand*, throws him down, as the ruthless north wind crushes the tender harvests that gild the field.

Should those Verbs be in a *different* tense, one may *either* repeat the Pronouns, or *not ;* yet, we advise to repeat them.

EXAMPLES.

Elle est vertueuse & *elle* le sera toujours.	*She* is virtuous and will always be so.
Il n' a jamais rien valu & ne vaudra jamais rien.	*He* never was good for any thing nor ever will be.

On must *always* be repeated.

EXAMPLES.

On parle d' une manière & *l' on* agit souvent d' une autre.	*They* speak in one way and often act in another.
On dit, *on* écrit, & *l' on* assure, que la paix sera bientôt signée.	*They* say, write, and assure, that peace will soon be signed.
On épie la fortune, *on* travaille, *on* se fatigue, *on* cherche tous les moyens de la fixer; &, après bien des soins, le tombeau s' ouvre, & *l' on* s' aperçoit trop tard que tout ici bas n' est que vanité.	*We* watch fortune, *we* labour, *we* exhaust ourselves, *we* try all means to fix her; and, after much anxiety, the grave opens, and when too late, *it is* discovered that all here below is only vanity.

RULE III.

Active Pronouns, of *whatever* persons they be, *ought* to be repeated before the *Verbs* to which they relate.

1st, When we pass from *negation* to *affirmation*, or from *affirmation* to *negation*.

2d, When the Verbs are connected by a *Conjunction.*

EXAMPLES.

Vous voulez & *vous* ne voulez pas tour à tour.	*You* will and will not by turns.
Il ne parle pas quand il le faut, & *il* parle quand il ne le faut pas.	*He* does not speak when it is necessary, and speaks when he should not.
Elle n' est pas riche, mais *elle* est jeune & belle.	*She* is not rich, but *she* is young and handsome.
Nous le recevons chez nous, cependant *nous* ne pouvons pas le souffrir.	*We* receive him in our house, yet *we* cannot bear him.

Et and *ni* (when the Verb is not used *negatively*) are an exception among the Conjunctions ; for they require the *suppression* of the *active* Pronouns before the *Verbs* which *follow.*

EXAMPLES.

Vous aimez les complimens & les entendez toujours avec plaisir.	*You* love compliments and always hear them with pleasure.
Il donne & dépense tout son argent.	*He* gives and spends all his money.
Je ne bois ni ne mange.	*I* neither drink nor eat.
Il n' invite ni ne reçoit personne chez lui.	*He* neither invites nor receives any body at his house.

RULE IV.

The *active* Pronouns occurring *without* a mark of Interrogation, are in the three following cases, placed *after* the Verb.

1st, They are placed *after* the *seven* following Verbs, when they are joined with them only by way of *parenthesis ;* viz : *dire*, *répondre*, *répliquer*, *repartir*, *continuer*, *poursuivre*, *s' écrier.*

EXAMPLES.

Vous voyez, *dit-il*, l' état affreux où je suis réduit.	You see, *said he*, the frightful condition I am reduced to.
Pourquoi, lui *répondis-je*, ne me l' avez-vous pas dit plutôt ?	Why, *answered I to* him, have you not told it me sooner ?
Je ne pouvais vous l' apprendre auparavant, lui *répliquai-je.*	I could not inform you of it before, *replied I* to him.

Cependant, lui *repartis-je* brusquement, vous m' avez vu plusieurs fois.	However, *retorted I*, you have seen me many times.
Oh ! *continua-t-il*, je n' ai jamais osé le faire.	Oh ! *continued he*, I never dared to do it.
Il fallait, *poursuivis-je*, avec chaleur, avoir plus de courage avec le meilleur de vos amis.	You should, *pursued I*, with warmth, have more courage with the best of your friends.
Ah ! *s' écria-t-il*, avec l' accent de la plus vive reconnaisance, vous m' avez rendu trop de services, pourque j' osasse vous en demander un nouveau.	Ah ! *exclaimed he*, with expressions of the liveliest gratitude, you have rendered me too many services, for me to presume to ask a new one.

2d, Principally *after* such expressions, as *dussé-je*, *dût-il*, &c. *fussé-je*, *fussiez-vous*, &c. *puisse-t-il*, *puissiez-vous*, &c. in the *Subjunctive.*

EXAMPLES.

Je l' entreprendrai, *dussé-je* échouer.	I will undertake it, *though I should* miscarry.
Il partira cette nuit, *dût-il* être assassiné.	He will set off to night, *though he should* be murdered.
Dussiez-vous m' en vouloir, je vous dirai ma façon de penser.	*Though you should* bear me a spleen, I will tell you my way of thinking.
Fussé-je le seul de cette opinion, cela ne m' empêchera pas de la manifester.	*Though I were* the only one of that opinion, it will not prevent me from manifesting it.
Fussiez-vous plus nombreux, vous éprouverez de la résistance.	*Though you were* more numerous, you will experience resistance.
Puisse-t-il se guérir de sa maladie & vivre encore longtems pour votre bonheur !	*May he be* cured of his illness and yet live long for your happiness !

Remark, that if the subject were *not* an *active* Pronoun, it should also be placed *after* the Verb, as in the two cases above.

EXAMPLES.

Rien n' est plus commun que de prendre un engouement passager pour de l' amitié. Il faut, (*dit Plutarque*) avoir mangé un minot de sel avec celui qu' on veut aimer.	Nothing is more common than to take a momentary infatuation for friendship.—We must (*says Plutarch*) have eaten three bushels of salt with him we wish to love,

Puissent *tous les vrais citoyens* se réunir contre les mal-intentionnés!	May *all true citizens* be united against evil-minded people!

3d, When the *Verb* is *preceded* by any of the following Conjunctive words *aussi*, *peut-être*, *autant*, *du moins*, *au moins*, *en vain*, *encore*, *à peine*.

EXAMPLES.

La rose est la reine des fleurs ; *aussi* est-*elle* l' emblème de la beauté.	The rose is the queen of flowers ; *therefore it* is the emblem of beauty.
Il lui a manqué essentiellement ; *aussi* est-*il* très-fâché.	He affronted him grossly ; *therefore he* is very angry.
Si vous allez chez lui à présent, *peut-être* le trouverez-*vous* occupé.	If you go to his house now, *perhaps you* will find him engaged.
Autant vaudrait-*il*, une bonne fois, lui dire ce qu' il en est.	*It* would be *as well*, once for all, to tell him how the matter stands.
On le soupçonnait d' être le chef de la conspiration, *du moins* est-*il* certain qu' il était instruit du complot.	They suspected him to be the head of the conspiracy, *at least it* is certain he was acquainted with the plot.
En cela, *au moins* ou *du moins* aviez-*vous* raison.	In that, *at least*, you were very right.
En vain lui porta-t-*il* ses plaintes ; tout cela ne lui servit à rien.	*In vain* did *he* lay his complaints before him ; all that was of no service to him.
Il a été long-tems à se faire prier, *encore* ne l' a-t-*il* accordé que de mauvaise grâce.	He has been a long time entreated, *yet he* granted it with a bad grace.
A peine César fut-*il* entré au Sénat, que les conjurés se jetèrent sur lui & le poignardèrent.	*Scarce* Cæsar had entered the Senate, when the conspirators rushed on and stabbed him.

Remark, that in some of the above examples the English construction might have been safely followed, but at much expense of the grace and energy of the sentence.

RULE V.

The *active* Pronouns which are considered useless, in English, in an *Interrogation*, in which a Noun is the *subject* of the *Verb*, must, in French, *always* be expressed.

EXAMPLES.

Votre maître est-*il* au logis?	Is your master at home?
Mes souliers sont-*ils* décrottés?	Are my shoes cleaned?
Mes bas sont-*ils* raccommodés?	Are my stockings mended?
Votre montre va-t-*elle* bien?	Does your watch go well?
Votre sœur dessine-t-*elle* bien?	Does your sister draw well?
Ces demoiselles ont-*elles* un maître de musique?	Have these young ladies a music-master?
Le tailleur a-t-*il* apporté mon habit neuf?	Has the tailor brought my new coat?
Votre marchande de modes a-t-*elle* reçu les nouvelles modes?	Has your milliner received the new fashions?
Votre frère n' est-*il* pas arrivé des Indes?	Is not your brother arrived from the Indies?

RULE VI.

If the Verb used *interrogatively* were in the *first* person, and ended in *e*, feeble, this *e* should be made *open*, by placing over it an accent *acute*, owing to the weak syllable *je* that follows it.

EXAMPLE.

Rêv*é*-je? Pens*é*-je? Duss*é*-je?	Do I dream? Do I think? Should I?

Should the Verb in the *first* person be a *monosyllable*, terminated by two *consonants*, the Pronoun *je* cannot *follow* it; thus you will avoid saying, *dois-je? mens-je? sers-je?* Instead of it, you will place, to ask the question, *est-ce que* before the Verb preceded by *je* and say:

Est-ce que je sors? *Est-ce que* je mens? *Est-ce que* je sers?	Do I sleep? Do I lie? Do I serve?

Observe, that *est-ce que*, which is a very familiar mode of expression among the French, is applicable, in the same manner, to other *persons* and *tenses* of the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Est-ce que vous écrivez ? *Est-ce que* vous n' écrivez pas ?	Do you write ? Dont you write ?
Est-ce qu' il est venu ? *Est-ce qu'* il n' est pas venu ?	Is he come ? Is he not come ?
Est-ce que votre frère obtiendra permission ?	Will your brother obtain leave ?

INSTRUCTION THE TENTH.

OF THE PASSIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE I.

Passive Pronouns, in French, 1st, immediately *precede* the Verb. 2d, They must be *repeated* before *every* Verb, in the sentence to which they belong.

EXAMPLES.

1st,	1st,
Il *m'* a dit cela—Je ne *vous* ai jamais dit cela.	He told *me* that—I never told *you* that.
Je *vous* apporte des fruits mûrs—Il *nous* ennuie beaucoup—Je *lui* parlerai en particulier—Je *leur* ferai entendre raison.	I bring *you* ripe fruits—He tires *us* much—I will speak to *him* in private—I shall make *them* listen to reason.
2d,	2d,
Je *vous* aime & *vous* estime—L' idée de ses malheurs *le* poursuit, *le* tourmente & *l'* accable—Un fils bien élevé ne s' arme jamais contre son père ; il *l'* aime, *l'* honore, & *le* respecte—On *nous* veille & on *nous* observe.	I love and esteem *you*—The idea of his misfortunes pursues, torments, and overwhelms *him*—A son well educated never rebels against his father ; he loves, honours, and respects *him*—They watch and observe *us*.

N. B. To the above rule, Verbs in the *Imperative* afford an exception ; for which, see Rule IV.

RULE II.

If a *Verb* be attended by *two passive* Pronouns, they must both *precede* the Verb; and the one affected by the Preposition *à* (understood) corresponding to *to* expressed (*or* understood) in English, should *precede*.

EXAMPLES.

Il *me* l' a promis—Je *vous* la montrerai.—Elle *nous* les renverra—Je crois qu' elle ne *vous* les renverra pas.	He promised it *to* me—I will shew her *or* it *to* you—She will send them back *to* us—I believe she will not send them back *to* you.

RULE III.

Should the *two* Pronouns belong both to the *third* person, the *contrary* of what is required by the preceding rule, takes place; that is to say, the *Pronoun* before which the Preposition *à* is understood, should *follow* the one unattended by it.

EXAMPLES.

Nous le *lui* dirons—Vous les *leur* avez promis—Je vous assure que je ne les *leur* ai pas promis—Je la *lui* présenterai—Elle ne veut pas que vous la *lui* présentiez.	We will tell it *to him*—You have promised them *to them*—I assure you that I have not promised them *to them*—I will introduce her *to him* or *to her*—She will not have you to introduce her *to him* or *to her*.

RULE IV.

When either of the Pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, attended by the Pronouns disjunctive *moi*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, or *leur*, become the *object* of the *Imperative* unaccompanied with a *nega-*

tive, *le*, *la*, *les* should always respectively *precede* the Pronouns disjunctive and all of them be put *after* the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Donnez-*le* moi—Envoyez-*la* lui—Prêtez-*les* leur—Apportez-*les* nous—Assurez-*les* vous.	Give *him* or *it* to me—Send *her* or *it* to him *or* to her—Send *them* to them—Bring *them* to us—Make sure of *them*.

It is to be noticed, that *moi* and *toi*, become *me* and *te*, when they are linked with *en*.

EXAMPLE.

Cherchez-*m'* en—Donne-*t'* en de garde.	Hunt some for *me*—Beware *of it*.

RULE V.

When two Imperatives, *without* a negative, accompanied by Pronouns, follow one another, we place the *first* Pronoun after the *first* Verb, and the *second* Pronoun before the *second* Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Cherchez-*le* & *lui* dites que je l'attends.	Look for *him* and tell *him* I am waiting for him.
Levez-*vous* & *vous* apprêtez à sortir.	Rise and make ready to go out.
Prêtez-le *moi* ou *me* le vendez.	Lend or sell it to *me*.

RULE VI.

Should the Imperative be attended *with* a negative, the *Pronouns* then occupy their *natural* place before the Verb, in the same order as they do in the other tenses of the Verb, and *moi*, *toi*, become *me*, *te*.

EXAMPLES.

Ne *me* trompez pas—Ne *te* flatte pas ainsi.	Dont deceive *me*—Dont flatter *thyself* thus.
Ne *me le* renvoyez pas encore.	Dont send *it* back to *me* yet.

Ne *me la* refusez pas, je vous en conjure.	Dont refuse *it* to *me*, I entreat you.
Ne *nous le* dites pas—Ne *la lui* gardez pas.	Dont tell *it* to *us*—Dont keep *it* for *him* or *her*.
Ne *les leur* accordez pas.	Dont grant *them* to *them*.

RULE VII.

The elliptical terms *y* and *en* precede immediately the *Verb*.

EXAMPLES FOR *Y*.

J' *y* travaille depuis le matin jusqu' au soir—N' *y* travaillez plus—Je vous *y* mènerai, si vous voulez—Non, ne m' *y* menez pas—*Y* est-il à cette heure ?—*Y* resterez-vous long-tems ?	I work *at it* from morning till evening—Work *at it* no more—I will take you *there* if you chuse—No, dont take me *there*—Is he *there* at this time ?—Shall you stay *in it* long ?

EXAMPLES FOR *EN*.

Qu' *en* dites-vous maintenant ? Il ne s' *en* repent point—Il avait-deux fils ; il lui *en* est mort un—Combien *en* voulez-vous ?—J' *en* veux seulement trois douzaines—Ne m' *en* apportez plus—Je ne leur *en* demande pas—*En* venez-vous ?—Oui, j' *en* viens.	What do you say *to it* now ?—He does not repent *of it*—He had two sons, one *of them* died—How many do you want *of them* ?—Three dozens only—Dont bring me any more *of them*—I dont ask any *of them*—Do you come *from hence* ?—Yes I do.

Observe, that when *y* and *en* meet in the *same* phrase, the former is always put *first*.

EXAMPLES.

N' *y* en a-t-il pas suffisamment ?	Is *there* not plenty of it ?
Vous n' *y* en avez pas trop mis.	You did not put too much of it *in it*.
Y en a-t-il qui le sachent ?	Is *there* any one that knows it ?
Je vous *y* en ferai tenir.	I will forward some to you *there*.
Il vous *y* en portera davantage, si nous le souhaitons.	He will bring us some more *thither*, if we desire it.

Remark, that in the Imperative, *without* a negative, *y* or *en* follow the Verb ; and if they meet with a *Pronoun*, they are put after it.

EXAMPLES FOR Y.

Allez-*y*—Menez-nous *y*—Conduisez-les *y*—Rendez-vous *y*—Fiez-vous *y*.	Go *thither*—Take us *thither*—Conduct them *thither*—Repair *thither*—Trust *to him* or *to it*.

We dont say, however, as it would be too harsh, *menez-moi* y, *envoyez-moi* y ; but by placing *y* before, *menez*-y *moi*, *envoyez*-y *moi*.

EXAMPLES FOR *EN*.

Donnez-lui *en*—Envoyez-nous *en*—Gardez-vous *en* bien.	Give him *some*—Send us *some*—Beware *of it*.

We do not say however for the same reason as with regard to *y*, *donnez-moi* en, *envoyez-moi* en, *apportez-moi* en ; but *donnez-m'* en, *envoyez-m'* en, *apportez-m'* en, as has already been noticed.

The following *TABLE* will, I trust, be found acceptable and useful to English learners, as it will in a little time accustom their eyes and ears to the union of Pronouns and Verbs in their *affirmative*, *interrogative* or *negative* sense. You are to suppose the Pronouns in each line to be in the place of the *Asterisks;* and by reading them often in that order, it will soon be out of your power to place them wrong—thus: il *me le* donnera, he will give *it to me;* il *me l' y* enverra, he will send *it to me thither*, &c.

Me le,	me la,	me les,	m' en.	Il ** donnera.
Me l' y,	me les y,	m' y,	m' y en.	Il ** enverra.
Te le,	te la,	te les,	t' en.	** donnerai-je ?
Te l' y,	te les y,	t' y,	t' y en.	** enverrai-je ?
Nous le,	nous la,	nous les,	nous en.	Il ne ** donne pas.
Nous l' y,	nous les y,	nous y,	nous y en.	Il ne ** enverra pas.
Vous le,	vous la,	vous les,	vous en.	Ne ** donnerai-je pas ?
Vous l' y,	vous les y,	vous y,	vous y en.	Ne ** enverrai-je pas ?
Se le,	se la,	se les,	s' en.	Il ** promet; il s' en défend.
Se l' y,	se les y,	s' y,	s' y en.	Il ** procura; il s' y en détacha.
Le lui,	la lui,	les lui,	lui en.	Nous ** promettons.
Le leur,	la leur,	les leur,	leur en.	Vous ne ** donnez pas.
Le leur y,	la leur y,	les leur y,	leur y en.	** enverrai-je ?

INSTRUCTION THE ELEVENTH.

OF THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE I.

The *disjunctive* Pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, &c. are used in the following circumstances.

1st, Before the words *qui*, *que*, or *seul*.

EXAMPLES.

Moi qui vous parle, je l' ai vu.	*I who* speak to you, have seen him or it.
Lui seul était présent. Elle seule l' a fait.	*He alone* was present. She alone has done it.
Toi que j' aime & *que* je respecte.	*Thou whom* I love and respect.

2d, After *être* used *affirmatively* or *interrogatively*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous voulez absolument que ce *soit elle* ou *nous*.	You will have it absolutely that it *should be he* or *we*.
C' *est lui* qui le dit & non pas moi.	It is *he who* says so and not I.
Non ; je vous assure que *ce n' est pas lui* ; qui donc ?	No ; I assure you that *it is not he* ; who then ?
C' *est* ou *elle* ou *vous* ou *eux*.	*It is* either *she*, *you* or *they*.
Est-ce *toi* ou *moi ?* parle.	*Is* it *thou* or *I* ? speak.

3d, Before a *Noun*, or a *Verb* used in *opposition*, or *distinction* to the first, and to *enumerate* the various parts different persons had in a *transaction*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous aimez la pêche, & *moi* la chasse.	*You* love fishing, and *I* hunting.
Vous préférez l' étude, *lui* le jeu, & *elle* la danse.	*You* prefer study, *he* gaming, and *she* dancing.

Les passans & le chirurgien ont secouru le blessé ; *eux* l' ont relevé & *lui* l' a pansé.	The by-passers and the surgeon assisted the wounded man ; *they* raised him and *he* dressed him.

Observe, that before *je*, *tu*, *nous*, *vous*, *il*, &c. the corresponding Pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, &c. may be used in cases in which it is wished to give the sentence great energy and precision ; and in these, taste, circumstances, and good writers, are the best guides.

EXAMPLES.

Nous avons l' un & l' autre des motifs puissans de l' obliger ; *moi*, *je* lui dois de la reconnaissance pour des bienfaits reçus, & *vous*, *vous* espérez en recevoir.	We have both powerful motives to oblige him ; *I* owe him gratitude for benefits received, and *you* hope to receive some from him.
Toi, *tu* oserais le faire ! Je n' en crois rien.	*Thou* wouldst dare to do it ! I believe nothing of it.
Nous, *nous* pensons ainsi ; mais *lui*, *il* pense tout autrement.	*We* think so, but *he* thinks quite differently.

4th, When they are united to *Nouns* or *Pronouns* by a *Conjunction*.

EXAMPLES.

Mon domestique & *moi*, nous nous y rendrons sur le champ.	My domestic and *I* shall repair thither immediately.
Ma sœur & *moi*, nous y étions.	My sister and *I* were there.

5th, After a *Preposition*, as has already been noticed in the first part of this volume, see page 59.

RULE II.

When a *Verb* relates to subjects of *different* persons, the Pronouns *subject* are *disjunctive*, and the Verb agrees with the *first* person in preference to the *second* ; and with the *second*, in preference to the *third*. The *active* Pronouns must attend the *Verb*, though they be omitted in English, and we, through politeness, first name the person *to* or *of whom* we are speaking, while we always name ourselves last.

EXAMPLES.

Vous & moi *nous* sommes bons amis.	You and I are good friends.
Lui, votre frère, & moi, *nous* lisions ensemble la nouvelle brochure.	He, your brother, and I were reading together the new pamphlet.
Elle & moi, *nous* sortîmes pour aller nous promener.	She and I went out to take a walk.
Vous, votre ami, & son cousin, *vous* viendrez me trouver.	You, your friend, and his cousin will call upon me.

It is natural to suppose that when superiors, such as a father or a master, mention what they have done in conjunction with a child or a servant, the Pronoun of the first person is mentioned *first*, which forms an exception to the above rule; so we may say:

Moi & mon fils.	*I* and my son.
Moi & mon domestique.	*I* and my servant.

It is essential to observe, that, if the *subjects* relating to the *Verb*, are all of the *third* person, the *Verb*, then, is *not*, as in the above cases, preceded by a Pronoun *active*.

EXAMPLES.

Lui & *eux* ne partiront point, j' en suis sûr.	*He* and *they* will not set off, I am sure.
Lui & *ce monsieur* que vous voyez là-bas sont associés.	*He* and *that gentleman* you see yonder are partners.
Lui & *son frère* apprennent le Français, l' Allemand, la danse, l' escrime, le dessin, la tenue des livres, & les mathématiques.	*He* and *his brother* are learning French, German, dancing, fencing, drawing, book-keeping, and mathematics.

INSTRUCTION THE TWELFTH.

OF THE USE OF THE PRONOUNS *LUI*, *EUX*, *ELLE*, *ELLES*, *SE*, *LUI-MEME*, *SOI*.

RULE I.

The personal Pronouns *leur* and *lui*, *eux*, *elle*, *elles*, acted upon by a *Preposition*, can*not*, in general, be used for *animals* or *things*, but, when *both* the Pronoun and Preposition, cannot be rendered by any of the Adverbs and Prepositions *en*, *y*, *dessus*, *dedans*, *auprès*.

EXAMPLES.

La fortune de son frère va bientôt augmenter la sienne ; il ne devait pas *y* compter sitôt, (and not) Il ne devait pas compter sitôt sur *elle*.	The fortune of his brother will directly increase his own; he should not have counted on *it* so soon.
En traversant le désert, j' *en* avais grand' peur, (and not) j' avais grand' peur d' *eux*.	In crossing the desert, I was very much afraid of *them*—(tygers).
J' *en* ai été content, (and not) j' ai été content de *lui*.	I have been pleased *with it*—(a poem).
Je m' *en* approchai, (and not) je m' approchai d' *elle*.	I came near *it*,—(a table).
Je m' *y* suis assis *ou* je me suis assis *dessus*, (and not) je me suis assis sur *elle*.	I sat *upon it*—(a chair).
J' *y* ai compté *ou* j' ai compté *dessus*, (and not) j' ai compté sur *lui*.	I relied *upon it*—(fair weather).
Il faut *y* opposer de la résistance, (and not) il faut *leur* opposer, &c.	We must oppose resistance to *them*—(beasts).
J' *y* donne mon consentement, (and not) je *lui* donne, &c.	I give my consent *to it*—(a proposition).
Mon bonheur *en* dépend, (and not) dépend de *lui*.	My happiness depends *upon it* —(a law suit).

Ne vous *y* fiez pas, (and not) ne vous fiez pas à *lui*.	Dont trust *to it*—(a bad bridge).
Servez-vous *en*, (and not) servez-vous de *lui*.	Make use *of it*—(a stick).
Ne crachez pas *dessus*, (and not) ne crachez pas sur *lui*.	Dont spit *upon it*—(a carpet).
Ne montez pas *dessus*, (and not) ne montez pas sur *lui*.	Dont get *on him*—(a horse).
Je ne m' *en* suis pas encore servi (and not) je ne me suis pas encore servi de *lui*.	I have not yet made use *of him*—(a horse).
Nous allâmes camper *auprès*, (and not) près d' *elle*.	We went to encamp *near them*—(the army).
Vous pouvez être sûr que l' oiseau n' y est plus *ou* n' est plus *dedans*, (and not) dans *elle*.	You may be sure that the bird is no longer *in it*—(the cage).
Voyez-vous cette maison ? Il demeure *vis-à-vis*, (and not) vis-à-vis d' *elle*.	Do you see that house ? He lives *over against it*.

After the Prepositions *sans*, *avec* or *après*, the above *Pronouns* acted upon by them, *may* be always properly used for *animals* or *things*.

EXAMPLES.

Elle en raffole, elle ne saurait faire un pas sans *lui*.	She dotes upon him, she cannot go a single step without *him*—(a lap dog).
On m' a dit qu' il ne sortait jamais sans ses pistolets ; cela est vrai, il ne sort jamais sans *eux*.	I have been told that he never went out without his pistols ; it is true, he never goes out without *them*.
Ce torrent est si rapide qu' il entraîne avec *lui* tout ce qu' il rencontre ; il ne laisse après *lui* que du sable & des cailloux.	This torrent is so rapid, that it carries with *it* every thing it meets with ; it leaves nothing behind *it* but sand and pebbles.
Les plaisirs ne laissent souvent après *eux* que des regrets.	Pleasures often leave nothing after *them* but regret.

In many other cases which custom alone can point out, the *above* Pronouns may be used for *things* with other Prepositions.

1st, With the Preposition *à*, in speaking of an enemy's army, we say ; nous marchâmes *à elle*, we marched up *to it:* this is even the most proper way of expressing that idea, in French.

2d, With *de;* as, ces choses sont bonnes *d' elles mêmes*, these things are good *in themselves.*

3d, With *pour;* as, J' aime la vérité au point que je sacrifierais tout *pour elle*, I love truth to that degree that I would sacrifice every thing *for it.*

4th, With *en;* as, ces raisons sont solides *en elles mêmes*, these reasons are solid *in themselves.*

Lui and *leur*, without a Preposition, may apply to *animals* or *things*, as in the following phrases, and the like.

EXAMPLES.

Ce cheval a faim, donnez-*lui* à manger.	This horse is hungry, give *him* something to eat.
Cette plante & ces orangers ont besoin d' eau; il faut *leur* en donner.	That plant and these orange-trees want water; it ought to be given *to them.*

A man very fond of a *house* which he has embellished, may say,

J' y ai fait de grandes dépenses; mais elle m' en dédommage bien; car je *lui* dois toute ma santé & mon bien-être; Je ne vivrais pas sans *elle.*	I have there been at much expense; but it has well indemnified me for it; for *to it* I owe my health and my comfort; I could not live without *it.*

One may also say with great propriety,

Ce chien & ces oiseaux font tout mon plaisir; Je n' aime qu' *eux;* eux seuls font tout mon amusement; Je ne songe qu' à *eux.*	This dog and these birds are all my pleasure; I love nothing but *them*; they alone are my diversion; I think of nothing else but *them.*

The English compound Pronouns, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, are rendered, in French, when they serve to make a verb *reflected*, by *se*, as it has been evidenced in the conjugation of *s'* habiller, to dress *one's self.*—But, when they do *not* render the Verb *reflected*, they are expressed by *lui* or *lui-même; elle* or *elle-même; eux* or *eux-mêmes; elles* or *elles-mêmes*, according to *gender* and *number*.

EXAMPLES.

Il parle toujours de *lui ou* de *lui méme* & jamais des autres.	He always speaks of *himself* and never of others.
Il m' a dit qu' il avait parlé à *elle même*, à *eux-mêmes*, à *elles mêmes*.	He told me he had spoken to *herself*, to *themselves*.

One's self, *himself*, and *herself*, in the singular, used in a vague and indeterminate sense, or after the indeterminate words, *one*, *people*, *every body*, *no body*, *whoever*, &c. and *itself*, applying to *things* determinate or indeterminate, are rendered, in French, by *soi*.

EXAMPLES.

On doit travailler non seulement pour *soi*, mais aussi pour la société.	One should not only work for *one's self*, but also for society.
Chacun pour *soi*, dit l' égoiste.	Every one for *one's self*, says the man who cares for nobody but himself.
Personne n' est sûr de *soi*.	Nobody can answer for *himself*.
L' homme qui n' aime que *soi*, ne se fait point d' amis.	The man who loves nobody but *himself*, does not make friends.
Quiconque ne pense qu' à *soi*, est indigne de vivre.	Whoever thinks only of *him*self, is unworthy of living.
La vertu est aimable de *soi*.	Virtue is amiable of *itself*.
L' aimant attire le fer à *soi*.	The loadstone attracts iron to *itself*.
Cela est bon en *soi*.	That is good in *itself*.

Observe, that in speaking of *persons*, *même* is very commonly, and sometimes indispensably *added* to *soi*, as in the following examples:

Il ne faut pas se louer *soi-même*.	One must not praise *one's self*.
Il faut se rendre compte à *soi-même*.	One should count with *one's self*.
Avoir un ami c' est avoir un autre *soi-même*.	To have a friend is to have another *self*.

INSTRUCTION THE THIRTEENTH.

OF SOME DIFFICULTIES IN THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

FIRST DIFFICULTY.

The word *le* is used, in French, to represent—1st, A part of a phrase or even a whole one—2d, An Adjective or Substantive taken *Adjectively*—3d, A Substantive or Adjective masculine taken *Substantively*.

In the *two first* instances *le* is an *Adverb*, and of course can suffer *no* alteration. In the *third*, as it represents a *Substantive* or a *Noun*, it is subject to the laws of concordance, which require it should *assume* the *gender* and number thereof.

1st, *Le* representing *part* of a phrase, or a *whole* Proposition.

EXAMPLES.

Pouvez-vous aller à la Nouvelle Orléans ? Oui, je *le* puis.—(*Le* is used instead of *y aller*, which is understood).	Can you go to New Orleans? Yes, I can.
Si le public a eu quelque indulgence pour moi, je *le* dois à votre protection.—(Je *le* dois *is clearly equivalent* to, je dois que le public ait eu quelque indulgence pour moi).	If the public has had some indulgence for me, I owe *it* to your protection.

> « Si Rome a souvent même estimé mes efforts,
> « C' est à vous, ombre illustre, à vous que je *le* dois.»

2d, *Le* representing an *Adjective*, or a Substantive taken *Adjectively*.

EXAMPLES.

Madame, êtes-vous malade ? Oui, je *le* suis.	Madam, are you sick ? Yes, I am *(so)*.

Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous musiciennes? Oui, nous *le* sommes.	Young Ladies, are you musicians? Yes, we are. *(so)*.
Messieurs, êtes-vous héritiers du défunt? Oui, nous *le* sommes.	Gentlemen, are you heirs of the deceased? Yes, we are *(so)*.

Passant! c' est un enfant, ton maître.
Il *l'* est, *le* fut, ou *le* doit être,

Zaïre es-tu Chrétienne?
Oui, Seigneur, je *le* suis.

N. B. In the above phrases the Adverb *le* is the correspondent of the Adverb *so*, which is understood in English.

3d, *Le*, *la*, or *les*, representing a *Noun* or an Adjective taken *Substantively*, according to circumstances of gender and number.

EXAMPLES.

Monsieur, êtes-vous le médecin? Oui, je *le* suis.	Sir, are you the physician? Yes, I am.
Madame, êtes-vous la malade? Oui, je *la* suis.	Madam, are you the patient? Yes, I am.
Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous les musiciennes? Oui, nous *les* sommes.	Young Ladies, are you the musicians? Yes, we are.
Messieurs, êtes-vous les héritiers du défunt? Non, nous ne *les* sommes pas.	Gentlemen, are you the heirs of the deceased? No, we are not.

N. B. In the *first* example, *le*, instead of being used for an Adverb, is used to avoid the repetition of the Noun *médecin*: it is the same in the *other* examples with regard to *la* or *les*.

SECOND DIFFICULTY.

The words *chacun* and *leur* present great and numerous difficulties. But we shall not enter into a critical investigation of the opinions of different grammarians on that head; for we cannot see what advantage could be derived to the Scholar, to compensate for the *ennui* that might attend such a discussion. We shall, therefore, pass on, and only give a few phrases wherein *chacun* is put in its *proper* place, in order that they may serve as a *model* for forming others similar thereto.

EXAMPLES.

Chacune de ces charrettes a perdu son essieu.	*Each* of these carts has lost its axle-tree.
Chacune de ces femmes est très-attachée à son mari.	*Each* of these women is very much attached to her husband.
Que *chacun* de nous prenne son chapeau.	Let *each* of us take his hat.
Que *chacun* de nous s' en aille chez soi.	Let *each* of us go to his house.
Chacun s' en alla chez soi.	*Every one* went to his house.

Instead of the above phrases, the following less correct ones are frequently used in *conversation* and even in *writing*.

> "Ces deux charrettes ont perdu chacune *leur* essieu (ou *leurs* essieux).
> Ces femmes sont très-attachées chacune à *leur* mari (ou à *leurs* maris).
> Prenons, chacun *notre* chapeau (ou *nos* chapeaux).
> Allons-nous en, chacun chez nous.
> Ils s' en allèrent, chacun chez *eux*."

It must strike every one who will reflect on the above modes of expression, that *leur* or *leurs*, elliptical terms for *d' eux* or *d' elles*, relating to one of the three persons *plural*, can never be used after the distributive term *chacun*, because the latter, dividing by unities the Substantive which precedes it, will not allow the Substantive which follows, to be construed with a word that imposes upon it a relation in *appertenance* to a *plurality*, which in the hypothesis cannot exist any longer, since it has been divided by *unities* : the foregoing phrases are, therefore, contrary to sound Logic.

We will remark, with a judicious grammarian, that, though one can never use *leur*, *leurs*, after *chacun*, it does not follow one always can use *son*, *sa*, *ses*, as one can by no means, say ; " *Ils ont apporté chacun son offrande*. This is the rule—One cannot use *son*, *sa*, *ses*, whenever that which precedes *chacun*, does not offer a complete and finished sense ; whenever one cannot make out of what precedes *chacun*, a phrase from which, what follows this distributive Article be independent.—One can only use *son*, *sa*, *ses*, after *chacun*, but when the latter is the subject of the phrase in which these possessive Articles are: It is, therefore, necessary that what precedes *chacun*, be a complete phrase; because one does not begin a new phrase, till the preceding one is completed: therefore we cannot say,

Ces deux charrettes ont perdu chacune *son* essieu.
Ces femmes sont très-attachées chacune à *son* mari.
Prenons chacun *son* chapeau.

because { Ces deux charrettes ont perdu——————
Ces femmes sont très-attachées——————
Prenons——————

are not complete phrases: every Verb which terminates them is in want of a *complement*.—But on the contrary, one may say,

Ils ont tous apporté des offrandes, chacun selon *ses* moyens.	They have all brought offerings, each according to *his* means.
Ils ont tous jugé différemment, chacun selon *ses* intérêts.	They have all judged differently, each according to *his* interests.
Ils passèrent tous en revue devant l' Inspecteur, chacun à *son* tour.	They were reviewed by the Inspector, each in *its* turn.
Elles partirent pour Paris, chacune dans *sa* voiture.	They all set off for Paris, each in *her* coach.

because { Ils ont tous apporté des offrandes——————
Ils ont tous jugé différemment——————

are complete phrases: the words following *chacun* are *not* necessary to the fulness of the sense thereof: *chacun* begins a new phrase, to express a circumstance of the action which is expressed in the *first*.—This circumstance is necessary to the full expression of the thought; but it is *not* so to fix the just signification of the words which precede this *distributive* Article.

Ils ont tous apporté des offrandes au temple, *chacun selon* ses *moyens*.—That is to say,

Ils ont tous apporté des offrandes au temple, & chacun *en* a *apporté* selon ses moyens.	They have all brought offerings to the temple, and every one *has brought some* according to his means.

We might here, indeed, indulge ourselves with some criticisms on the modes of expression relative to *chacun*, used by several writers:—But, after what has already been said on this subject, it would be rather a matter of grammatical curiosity than of real utility; for the above rules, supported by practice, will solve, I believe, every difficulty concerning *chacun*.

THIRD DIFFICULTY.

Quelque, signifying *tho'*, *altho'*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *however*, or *howsoever*, in English, is an *Adverb*, when it is placed *before* an *Adjective* separated from its *Noun*, and is, therefore, invariably *quelque*:—It always requires the *Verb* in the *subjunctive preceded* by the Conjunction *que*.

EXAMPLES.

Quelque riches *qu'* ils soient, ils ont toujours peur de manquer.	*Though* they be ever so rich, they are always afraid of being in want.
Quelque bonnes *que* soient vos raisons, on ne les écoutera pas.	*Although* your reasons be ever so good, they will not be heard.
Quelque rusés *qu'* ils paraissent, ils sont quelquefois trompés.	*However* cunning they appear, they are sometimes taken in.

> " *Quelque* brillans *que* soient les dons de la fortune,
> " La vertu les efface, elle seule a du prix."

But, if *quelque*, with the same meaning as above, be placed before a *plural* Noun, either by itself or joined to an *Adjective*, it takes the mark of the *plural*, as it then becomes an *Adjective*.

EXAMPLES.

Quelques fautes *qu'* il ait commises, je lui pardonnerai.	*Whatever* faults he may have committed, I will forgive him.
Quelques heureux talens *que* vous ayez vous ne réussirez jamais sans application.	*Whatever* happy talents you may have, you will never succeed without application.

Quelque is followed by *qui* with the *subjunctive* in the following examples and the like:

Quelques avantages *qui* lui soient offerts, il ne les acceptera pas.	*Whatever* advantages may be offered to him, he will not accept of them.

"*Quelques* prix glorieux *qui* lui soient proposés;
"Quels lauriers me plairont de son sang arrosés?"

In the French language, when the Verb *être* is used, the construction of the phrase will not admit, sometimes, of a *Noun* or *Adjective* being interposed between *quelque* and the *Verb;* then *quelque* becomes *quel que* governing the *subjunctive*, and *quel* is liable to *gender* and *number.* The following examples will point to the scholar in what circumstance that mode of expression may be used.

EXAMPLES.

Il ne veut entendre parler d' aucun accommodement, *quel qu'* il puisse être.	He will not hear of any accommodation, *whatever* it may be.
Quelles que soient les nouvelles, faites m' en part.	*Whatever* the news may be, impart it to me.
Envoyez-moi ces marchandises, *quelles qu'* elles soient.	Send me those goods, *whatever* they may be.
Quels que soient vos amis, vous ne l' obtiendrez pas.	*Whoever* your friends may be, you will not obtain it.
Quelle que soit cette demoiselle, elle est bien mal-honnête.	*Whoever* this young lady be, she is very impolite.
Je ne me soucie pas de lui, *quel qu'* il soit.	I do not care for him, *whoever* he may be.

"Mais *quel que* soit l' état où ton penchant t' appelle,
"Que la probité soit ta compagne fidelle."

"*Quel que* soit l' intérêt qui fait parler la reine,
"La réponse, Seigneur! doit-elle être incertaine?"

FOURTH DIFFICULTY.

Tout, when it corresponds to the Adverbs *quite*, *entirely*, or the Conjunctions *tho'*, *altho'*, &c. is invariable; except when it *precedes* an Adjective *feminine* beginning with a *consonant*, or *h aspirated*, as custom requires, that it should then assume the inflection of the *Adjective*.

Observe, that when *tout* corresponds to the *above* conjunctions, the *Adjective* is *followed* by *que*, which governs the Verb in the *indicative*.

EXAMPLES.

Cette femme fut *toute* surprise.	This woman was *quite* surprised.
Elle a la figure *toute* hâlée.	Her face is *quite* sunburnt.
Elles furent *toutes* pénétrées de douleur.	They were *quite* overwhelmed with grief.
Elle était *toute* honteuse.	She was *quite* ashamed.
Toute charmante *qu'* elle est.	*Although* she is charming.
Toute malade *qu'* elle était, elle est parfaitement guérie.	Sick *as* she was, she is perfectly cured.
Toutes hardies *qu'* elles sont.	*Although* they are bold.
Toute femme *que* je suis.	*Although* I am a woman.
Toute votre amie *qu'* elle est.	*Although* she is your friend.

But, before a *vowel* or an *h mute*, and before an Adjective *masculine plural*, it remains invariably *tout*.

EXAMPLES.

Elle fut *tout* étonnée.	She was *quite* astonished.
Elles étaient *tout* habillées de blanc.	They were *entirely* dressed in white.
Ils étaient *tout* interdits.	They were *quite* thunder-struck.
Ils étaient *tout* mouillés.	They were *quite* wet.
Tout innocente *qu'* elle était.	*Although* she was innocent.
Tout humble *qu'* elle est.	*Although* she is humble.
Tout aimables *qu'* elles sont.	*Though* they are amiable.
Tout sages *qu'* ils sont.	*Although* they are wise.
Tout charmans *qu'* ils paraissent être.	*Although* they appear to be charming.

The Adjective *tout*, on the contrary, is always *obedient* to the laws of *concordance*.

EXAMPLES.

Elles furent *toutes* étonnées.	They were *all* astonished.
Elles étaient *toutes* habillées de blanc.	They were *all* dressed in white.
Ils étaient *tous* interdits.	They were *all* thunder-struck.
Ils furent *tous* mouillés.	They were *all* wet.

FIFTH DIFFICULTY.

Même, a *Pronoun* singular, after *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *lui*, *elle*, takes the mark of the *plural*, after *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles;* and is always joined to the above Pronouns by a *hyphen:* it is used to give more energy to the expression.

EXAMPLES.

Moi-*même*, toi-*même*, soi-*même*, lui-*même*, elle-*même*, nous-*mêmes*, vous-*mêmes*, eux-*mêmes*, elles-*mêmes*.

"Soyons vrais; de nos maux n' accusons que nous-*mêmes*."

When *même* answers to *same*, it is an *Adjective*, and, of course, is *liable* to all the *accidents* thereof.

EXAMPLES.

Le *même* homme; la *même* femme.	The *same* man; the *same* woman.
Les *mêmes* sentimens; les *mêmes* raisons.	The *same* sentiments; the *same* reasons.

Même answering to *even* is an *Adverb*, and, therefore, does *not* vary.

EXAMPLE.

"L' estime & le respect sont les justes tributs
"Qu' aux cœurs *même* ennemis arrachent les vertus."

Observe, that *même*, same, in a *comparative* sense, requires *que:* therefore, St. Evremond, in speaking of the Romans, instead of saying,

Les esclaves s' animaient du *même* esprit *de* leur maître,	The slaves were animated with the *same* spirit as their master,

Should have said,

"Les esclaves s' animaient du *même* esprit *que* leur maître."

SIXTH DIFFICULTY.

L' un l' autre, l' une l' autre; les uns les autres, &c. answering to *one another*, in English, is used whenever the Verb *reflective* becomes *reciprocal.*

EXAMPLES.

Ils s' aiment *l' un l' autre* depuis leur enfance.	They love *one another* since their youth.
Nous devons nous aider *les uns les autres.*	We should help *one another.*

" En ce monde, il se faut *l' un l' autre* secourir."

When a Preposition is to affect *one another*, l' un l' autre, it is, in English, placed before it; but, in French, it is placed between *l' un* and *l' autre.*

EXAMPLES.

Ils se sont donné le mot les uns *aux* autres.	They gave the word *to* one another.
Ils travaillèrent comme à l' envi l' un *de* l' autre.	They worked as if it were through emulation *of* one another.
Ils brûlèrent les vaisseaux les uns *des* autres.	They burnt the vessels *of* each other.

SEVENTH DIFFICULTY.

L' un & *l' autre*, both, requires the Verb which relates to it always in the *plural*, notwithstanding the authority of some Grammarians, who, countenanced by some writers and even by the French Academy, pretend that the Verb may be either *singular* or *plural*; but Logic, stronger than all grammatical authorities put together, joined to polite practice, reproves the *latter* construction, and only admits the *former* now.

EXAMPLES.

L' un & l' autre vous *ont* obligé.	Both *have* obliged you.
L' un & l' autre *sont* mauvais.	Each of them *are* bad.
L' un & l' autre *ont* été payés.	They *were* both paid.

Remark, that the Preposition, which in *l' un l' autre* can only affect *l' autre*, affects both *l' un* and *l' autre*.

EXAMPLES.

Il est ami *de* l' un & *de* l' autre.	He is a friend *to* both.
J' ai parlé *à* l' un & *à* l' autre.	I spoke *to* both.
Elle n' a voulu ni *des* uns ni *des* autres.	She would have none *of* them.

Ni l' un ni l' autre, neither, follows the same syntax with *l' un* & *l' autre*.

EXAMPLES.

Ni l' un, ni l' autre ne *viendront*.	Neither of them *will come*.
Ni l' un, ni l' autre ne vous *ont* trompé.	Neither of them *has* deceived you.
Je n' ai parlé ni *à* l' un ni *à* l' autre.	I spoke to neither *of* them.

Observe, that *l' un ou l' autre*, either, requires the Verb should be in the *singular;* and the same Preposition should be used before both *l' un* and *l' autre*.

Scholar.

To say that a woman appears to be good; which of the two following modes of expression must be used in French?

Cette femme a l' air *bon*, ou Cette femme a l' air *bonne*.	This woman has a *good-natured* countenance.

Master.

As the Verb *a* and *l' air*, though constituting a compound expression, express but the *single* idea which may be represented by the Verbs *semble*, *paraît;* and as the Adjective *bon* is not used to qualify merely the *air*, but the *woman* herself; whose *air* announces the *moral quality* which is affirmed of her: I think that a preference must be given to "Cette femme a l' air *bonne*," though almost every Grammarian be in favour of the *other* mode of expression.

If, instead of saying, "cette femme a *l'* air," you had said, "cette femme a *un* air, &c." *bon* instead of *bonne* must necessarily be used, because the *quality* is *no longer* affirmed of the *woman*, but of the *air* itself.

Observe, one should not confound "avoir l' air *mauvais*," to look ill-natured, with "avoir *mauvais* air," to have a mean appearance; as the former relates to the *moral character* of a person, and the latter to *appearance*. Also, that the former mode of expression requires before *air* the Article, which the latter does *not* admit.

EXAMPLE.

Cléon, lorsque vous nous bravez,
En démontant votre figure,
Vous n' avez pas l' air *mauvais;* je vous jure,
C' est *mauvais* air que vous avez.

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

INSTRUCTION THE FOURTEENTH.

ON THE USE OF THE TENSES AND THEIR CORRESPONDENCE WITH EACH OTHER.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

This tense is used, 1st, to denote an *actual* state, as,

Je *suis* fâché de tout ce qui vous est arrivé.	I *am* sorry for all that has happened to you.

2d, It is used in propositions of *eternal* truth, as,

Dieu seul *est* tout puissant.	God alone *is* almighty.
Les trois angles d' un triangle *valent* deux angles droits.	The three angles of a triangle *are* equal to two right angles.

3d, It is used in lieu of the *future* in the following phrase and the like.

Je *pars* demain pour la Nouvelle-York.	I *set out* to-morrow for New-York.

It is here proper to mention, that "je *pars* demain and je *partirai* demain" do not convey exactly the same idea; the *latter* meaning, that one intends or one is disposed to set off, while the *former* expresses along with it a degree of impatience that the circumstance should take place.

The same difference also exists, but rather in a more pointed manner, between the two modes of expression.

Finissez-vous bientôt? and, *Finirez*-vous bientôt?	*Do* you *finish* soon? *Will* you soon *have done?*

The *first* expresses a fit of *impatience*, while the *second* may be dictated by mere *curiosity*.

4th, It is often used in the recital of an *event* instead of the *past* tense—The *present*, by rendering the event in some degree visible, highly enhances the interest it may inspire, and makes the hearer feel, at least, a part of the sensations he would have experienced, had he been a spectator.

Here is an instance of the *present*, being used for the *past*, taken from Telemachus.—*Adoam*, after having related various circumstances attending the death of *Pygmalion*, goes on in the following manner.

Cependant tout le palais *est* plein d' un tumulte affreux; en *entend* par-tout les cris de ceux qui *disent:* le roi *est* mort. Les uns *sont* effrayés, les autres *courent* eux armes; tous *paraissent* en peine des suites, mais ravis de cette nouvelle. La renommée la *fait* voler, de bouche en bouche, dans toute la grande ville de Tyr, & il ne se *trouve* pas un seul homme qui *regrette* le roi: sa mort *est* la délivrance & la consolation de tout le peuple.	In the mean time, the palace *is* in the utmost confusion, and on all sides *are* heard the cries: the king *is* dead. Some *are* terrified; others run to arms; and all *seem* in pain for the consequences, but overjoyed at the news. Fame *carries* it from mouth to mouth, throughout all the great city of Tyre, and *there is* not a single person who *laments* the king: his death *is* the deliverance and consolation of all the people.

But, it is in Poetry, that the *present* animates with a peculiar degree of energy, and graces the recital of a translation: witness the following magic lines of the immortal Racine, wherein *Theramene* relates to *Theseus* the death of his son *Hyppolitus*.

> " Un effroyable cri, sorti du fond des flots,
> Des airs, en ce moment, a troublé le repos ;
> Et, du sein de la terre, une voix formidable
> *Répond*, en gémissant, à ce cri redoutable.
> Jusqu' au fond de nos cœurs notre sang s' est glacé.
> Des coursiers attentifs le crin s' est hérissé.
> Cependant, sur le dos de la plaine liquide,
> S' *élève* à gros bouillons une montagne humide.
> L' onde *approche*, se *brise*, & *vomit* à nos yeux,
> Parmi des flots d' écume, un monstre furieux.
> Son front large *est* armé de cornes menaçantes;
> Tout son corps *est* couvert d' écailles jaunissantes.
> Indomptable taureau, dragon impétueux,
> Sa croupe se *recourbe* en replis tortueux ;
> Ses longs mugissemens *font* trembler le rivage.
> Le ciel avec horreur *voit* ce monstre sauvage.
> La terre s' en *émeut*, l' air en *est* infecté,
> Le flot qui l' apporta *recule* épouvanté.
> Tout *fuit ;* &, sans s' armer d' un courage inutile,
> Dans le temple voisin chacun *cherche* un asile.
> Hippolyte lui seul, digne fils d' un héros,
> *Arrête* ses coursiers, *saisit* ses javelots,
> *Pousse* au monstre, &, d' un dard lancé d' une main sûre,
> Il lui *fait* dans le flanc une large blessure.
> De rage & de douleur le monstre bondissant
> *Vient* aux pieds des chevaux tomber en mugissant,
> Se *roule*, & leur *présente* une gueule enflammée,
> Qui les *couvre* de feu, de sang & de fumée.
> La frayeur les *emporte ;* &, sourds à cette fois,
> Ils ne *reconnaissent* plus ni le frein, ni la voix.
> En efforts impuissans leur maître se *consume*.
> Ils *rougissent* le mords d' une sanglante écume.
> On *dit* qu' on a vu même, en ce désordre affreux,
> Un dieu qui d' aiguillons pressait leur flanc poudreux.
> A travers les rochers la peur les *précipite*.
> L' essieu *crie* & se *rompt*. L' intrépide Hippolyte
> *Voit* voler en éclats tout son char fracassé.
> Dans les rênes lui-même il *tombe* embarrassé.
> Excusez ma douleur. Cette image cruelle
> Sera pour moi de pleurs une source éternelle.
> J' ai vu, Seigneur, j' ai vu votre malheureux fils
> Traîné par les chevaux que sa main a nourris.

Il *veut* les rappeller, & sa voix les *effraie.*
Ils *courent.* Tout son corps n' *est* bientôt qu' une plaiee.
De nos cris douloureux la plaine *retentit.*
Leur fougue impétueuse enfin se *ralentit.*
Ils *s' arrêtent*, non loin de ces tombeaux antiques,
Où des rois ses aïeux *sont* les froides reliques.
Je *cours*, en soupirant, & sa garde me *suit.*
De son généreux sang la trace nous *conduit.*
Les rochers en sont teints ; les ronces dégouttantes
Portent de ses cheveux les depouilles sanglantes.
J' *arrive*, je l' *appelle* ; & me tendant la main,
Il *ouvre* un œil mourant qu' il *referme* soudain."
Phedre, Acte V. Sc. VI.

The following tenses correspond with the Present of the Indicative.

On dit que
Vous partez, aujourd hui, pour Rome.
Vous partirez, demain,
Vous partiez, hier, quand je vous rencontrai,
Vous partîtes, hier.
Vous êtes parti, ce matin.
Vous étiez parti, hier, avant moi.
Vous fussiez parti, plutôt, si———
Vous partiriez, aujourd'hui, si———
Vous seriez parti, hier, si———

OBSERVATION.

The same correspondence takes place when the sentence is *negative*, except in the present of the *Indicative* which is supplied by the present of the *Subjunctive ;* example : On ne dit pas que vous *partez* aujourd'hui, would be a discordance in grammar ; the genius of the French language requires that we should say, On ne dit pas que vous *partiez* aujourd'hui. We shall soon treat more at length on that subject.

PRESENT ANTERIOR.

This tense, as well as the *Present anterior periodical*, has been, in treating on the Verb, so clearly characterised, with regard to the functions it performs, that I could say but little here without repeating what has already been said. We shall, therefore, only mention here the tenses which correspond with it.

They are the *Present Anterior*, the *Present Anterior Periodical*, and the *Past* of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

Je *lisais*, quand vous *entriez.*
Je *lisais* hier quand vous *entrâtes.*
Je *lisais*, il n' y a qu' un instant, quand vous *êtes entré.*

THE PAST ANTERIOR.

This tense corresponds with the *Past*, *Present Anterior Periodical*, *Past Anterior Periodical*, and *Present Anterior* of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

J' *avais lu*
quand vous *êtez entré.*
quand vous *entrâtes.*
quand vous *fûtes entré.*
quand vous *entriez.*

The *Past Anterior Periodical* corresponds with the *Present Anterior Periodical* of the same mood.

EXAMPLES.

Quand j' *eus dit* ma leçon, vous *commençâtes.*	When I *had said* my lesson, you *began.*
Après que j' *eus aimé* les jeux d' enfant, *je m' appliquai* à des choses plus importantes.	After I *had loved* children's plays, I *applied* myself to things of more importance.

THE COMPARATIVE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

Those tenses, though seldom used, are necessary, however, to express with all possible precision the moment when an action (the existence of which is yet unknown) began.

I refer you for further information on that subject to page 194.

They are exemplified as follows :

Quand
J' *ai eu*
J' *eus eu*
J' *aurai eu*
dîné,
vous *êtez entré.*
vous *entrâtes.*
vous *entrerez.*

Après que j' *ai eu fait* mon dernier voyage, je me *suis mis* à l' étude des langues vivantes, par nécessité.	After I *had performed* my first voyage, I *betook* myself to the study of the living languages, through necessity.
S' il *avait eu aimé* l' art militaire, avant de s' y engager, il *aurait fait* plus d' exploits.	*Had* he *have loved* the military art before he engaged in it, he *would have done* greater exploits.

THE CONDITIONAL.

This tense in the *Present* corresponds to the *Present Anterior* of the Indicative.

EXAMPLE.

Vous *sortiriez*, si je l' *exigeais*.	You *would go out*, *should* I require it, *or* if I *should* require it.

In the *Past*, it corresponds to the *Past Anterior* of the *Indicative*, or to the *Past Anterior* of the *Subjunctive*.

EXAMPLE.

Vous lui *auriez accordé* cette grâce, s' il l' *avait*, ou s' il l' *eût demandée*	You *would have granted* him this favor, if he *had asked* it.

In the *Past comparative*, it corresponds to the *Past anterior* of the *Indicative* or that of the *Subjunctive*.

EXAMPLE.

J' *aurais eu fini* long-tems avant vous, si je n' *avais* pas *été* interrompu, *ou* si je n' *eusse* pas *été* interrompu.	I *should have done* long before you, *had* I not *been* interrupted.

The following tenses correspond to the Conditional *Past*.

EXAMPLES.

Je croyais	que vous *seriez parti.*	I did believe	that you *would have set off*
J' ai cru		I have believed	
Je crus		I believed	
J' avais cru		I had believed	
J' aurais cru		I would have believed.	

INSTRUCTION THE FIFTEENTH.

ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

OF ADJECTIVES, NOUNS, AND VERBS, WHICH IMPOSE THE *SUBJUNCTIVE* FORM TO THE NEXT VERB.

RULE I.

Qui, *que*, *où*, serving to connect a Verb with a *superlative*, impose the *Subjunctive* form to the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

C' est le personnage *le plus* suffisant *que* j' *aie* jamais rencontré.	He is *the most* conceited man I ever *met* with.
C' est l' homme *le plus* obligeant *dont* j' *aie* jamais ouï parler.	He is *the most* obliging man I ever *heard* of.
Ce sont *les plus* belles marchandises qui *aient* été envoyées.	They are *the finest* goods that *have* been sent.
Voilà bien *le meilleur* vin que j' *aie* jamais bu.	That is, indeed, *the best* wine I ever *drank*.
C' est le combat *le plus* meurtrier où cet officier *ait commandé*.	It is *the most* bloody battle in which this officer *commanded*.

RULE II.

Qui, *que*, *où*, generally govern the *Subjunctive* after the words *seul*, *unique*, *premier*, *dernier*, *pas un*, *aucun*, *personne*, *rien*, *peu*, *qui que ce soit*,

EXAMPLES.

C' est le *seul* ami qui vous *soit* resté fidèle.	He is the *only* friend that *remained* faithful to you.
C' est le *seul*, l' *unique* souvenir qui *puisse* nous consoler.	It is the *only*, the *sole* remembrance that *can* console us.

Cet auteur est le *premier* qui en *fasse* mention.	This author is the *first* that *mentions* it.
La lettre du Dr. Priestely à Jacques Logan, Sénateur des Etats-Unis, est une des *dernières* que ce grand homme *ait* écrites.	The letter of Dr. Priestley to James Logan, a Senator of the United States, is one of the *last* this great man *wrote.*
Il n' a trouvé *pas un*, ou *aucun* domestique qui *veuille* le servir.	He could not find *any* servant that *would* wait upon him.
Je ne connais *personne* qui vous *soit* plus sincèrement attaché.	I do not know of *any body*, who *is* more sincerely attached to you.
Y a-t-il *rien* qui *soit* plus indécent que l' habillement des femmes d' aujourd' hui.	Is there *any thing* more indecent than the dress of the women now-a-days.
Il est *peu* de plaisirs qui ne *soient* suivis de quelques remords.	There are *few* pleasures that *are* not followed by some remorse.
A *qui que ce soit* que vous vous *adressiez*, parlez hardiment.	*Whomsoever* you *address* yourself to, speak boldly.

RULE III.

When after *si*, *que* is used, instead of repeating *si*, it then imposes the *Subjunctive* form on the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

S' il arrive en Angleterre, & *qu'* il *veuille* y faire quelque séjour, il faudra qu' il obtienne l' agrément du Gouvernement.	*If* he arrive in England and *wish* to sojourn there some time, he must obtain the consent of Government.
Si vous venez dans notre pays & *que* vous y *demeuriez* quelque tems, j' espère que nous aurons souvent le plaisir de vous voir.	*If* you come in our country and *live* there some time, I hope that we shall often have the pleasure of seeing you.

RULE IV.

After all Verbs, which express *doubt*, *fear*, *desire*, *uncertainty*, the action of *commanding*, *supposing;* some *passion*, *affection;* or, in a more general terms, that belong to the dominion of the *heart* or the *will;* QUE, imposes the *subjunctive* form on the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Je *veux* qu' il s' y *rende* sur le champ.	I *will* have him to *repair* there immediately.
Je *doute* qu' il y *aille.*	I *doubt* that he *will go* there.
Supposons que la flotte *soit* battue, que deviendront les envahisseurs ?	*Let us suppose* that the fleet *be* beaten, what will become of the invaders ?
Je *prétends* qu' ils s' y *soumettent* sans hésitation.	I *pretend* that they *should submit* to it without hesitation.
Il ne *permet* pas que je m' en *serve.*	He does not *permit* I *should make* use of it.
Et vous *souffrez* qu' il vous *écrive !*	And you *do suffer* him to *write* to you !
J' *exige* qu' il vous *obéisse* comme à moi.	I *require* that he *should obey* you as well as me.
J' *approuve* qu' il le lui *défende.*	I *approve* he *should forbid* it to him.
Je suis *fâché* & *surpris* qu' il *soit* venu.	I am *sorry* & *surprised* that he *is* come.
J' *ignore* qu' il *ait* reçu votre lettre.	I *do not know* that he *has* received your letter.

Observe, that some of the Verbs called *Impersonals*, govern also the *Subjunctive* mood.

EXAMPLES.

Il *faut* qu' elle le *sache* un jour ou l' autre.	She *must know* it one day or other.
Faut-il que je *sorte* sur le champ?	*Must* I *go out* immediately?
Il *faudra* bien que vous en *passiez* par là.	It *will be necessary* for you to *abide* by it or to submit to it.
Il *vaut mieux* que vous vous y *trouviez.*	It *is better* you *should be* there.
Il *vaudra mieux* que vous y *consentiez.*	It *will be better* you *should consent* to it.
Il *convient* que vous lui *disiez* votre façon de penser.	It *becomes* you to *tell* him your mind.
Il *importe* fort que vous l' en *préveniez.*	It *is* of the utmost *consequence* you *should inform* him of it.
Il *est nécessaire* qu' il *fasse semblant* de l' ignorer.	It *is necessary* that he *should pretend* to be ignorant of it.

Il *est surprenant* qu' elle se *soit* mariée.	It *is surprising* that she *should* have got married.
Il *est douteux* qu' il en *vienne* à bout.	It *is doubtful* whether he *will bring* it about.
Il *est possible* que vous l' *obteniez*.	It *is possible* that you *may obtain* it.
Il *est impossible* qu' on le *paye*.	It *is impossible* he *should be paid*.
Il *est à propos* que vous l' *avertissiez*.	It *is fit* that you *give* him *warning*.
Il *semble* (without a complement) que vous n' *ayez* jamais rien vu.	It *seems* that you *have* never seen any thing.
Il *est juste* qu' il *soit* remboursé de toutes ses dépenses.	It *is just* that he *should be* reimbursed for all his expenses.

N. B. Take notice, that after Verbs which express neither *doubt* nor *fear*, but which, on the contrary, announce *certitude*, *persuasion*, &c. in a word, after all Verbs which rather belong to the judgment, understanding, &c. the Conjunction *que* imposes the *Indicative* form on the Verb following.

EXAMPLES.

Je *crois* qu' il y *est*.	I *believe* he *is* there.
Je *pense* qu' il s' *est* mépris.	I *think* he *is* mistaken.
J' *apprends* que vous lui *avez* écrit.	I *learn* that you *have* written to him.
Vous *jugez* que cela lui *appartient*.	You *judge* that it *belongs* to him or her.
Il *affirmera* qu' il l' *a* vu.	He *will affirm* that he *saw* him.
Je *dis*, je *soutiens*, je *prouve* que cela *est* ainsi.	I *say*, *maintain*, *prove* it *is* so.
Il *parait* qu' il *va* se marier.	It *appears* he *is going* to be married.
Il *semble* (with a complement) à un aveugle que tout *est* ténébreux.	It *seems* to a blind man that all *is* dark.
Il me *semble* qu' il *est* malade.	It *seems* to me that he *is* sick.
Il y *a apparence* que vous le *recevrez* sous peu.	It *is likely* that you *will receive* it before long.
Il *est certain* qu' il *a* perdu le pari.	It *is certain* that he *has* lost the bet.
Il *est vrai* qu' il *a* tenu ce propos.	It *is true* he *used* that expression.

RULE V.

Should any Verb whatever be used either *negatively* or *interrogatively*, *que* always imposes the *Subjunctive* form on it.

EXAMPLES.

Pensez-vous qu' il *parte* bientôt?	*Do you think* he *will* soon *set off?*
Non, je *ne crois pas* qu' il le *fasse.*	No, I *dont believe* he *will do* it.
On *ne dit pas* que cela *soit* ainsi.	They *do not say* that it *is* so.
Il *ne paraît pas* que vous le *connaissiez.*	It *dont seem* that you *know* him.
Est-il sûr qu' il *soit* exilé ?	*Is it* sure that he *is* banished ?
Il *n' est-pas* sûr qu' il *revienne* cet hiver.	It *is not* certain that he *will come back* this winter.
Y a-t-il apparence qu' elle l' *ait* jamais aimé ?	*Is it* likely she ever *loved* him?
Il *ne semble pas* qu' elle *ait* jamais voulu de lui.	It *does not seem* that she ever *would* have him.

It is worthy of observation, that *que* sometimes does not govern the *Subjunctive*, even after a Verb used *interrogatively* with a *negative*. This deviation from the above Rule, requires some explanation.

If the interrogation expresses either *doubt* or *uncertainty*, *que* imposes the *Subjunctive* on the Verb following—But, if the interrogation does *not* express it, the *Indicative* is to be used.

EXAMPLES.

Croyez-vous que Jean *est* à la campagne ?
Croyez-vous que Jean *soit* à la campagne ?
Ne croyez-vous pas que Jean *est* à la campagne ?
Ne croyez-vous pas que Jean *soit* à la campagne ?

The sense of the *first* phrase is,

Je sais que Jean est à la campagne ; ne croyez-vous pas qu' il y soit?	I know that John is in the country; dont you believe he is?

That of the *second* is,

Je ne sais si Jean est à la campagne ; pouvez-vous me l' apprendre ?	I dont know whether John be in the country ; can you inform me of it ?

That of the *third* is,

Jean est certainement à la campagne ; pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas le croire ?	John is certainly in the country ; why wont you believe it ?

That of the *fourth* is,

Je doute que Jean soit à la campagne ; qu' en pensez-vous ?	I doubt whether John be in the country ; what do you think of it ?

One may plainly see, that the construction of such phrases as those depends entirely on the *sense* which is intended by the person who speaks. If it be not possible to judge of it by the preceding discourse, one must examine whether the person who speaks, be not in *doubt*, then *que* governs the *Subjunctive:* if, on the contrary, the person *affirms*, the *Indicative* after *que* is *indispensable*.

In order to guide you in the *Subjunctive*, (a very nice and difficult point in the French language), we shall observe, that, whenever the Article conjunctive *qui* serves as a link to *two* phrases, the first of which we shall call *principal*, and the second *complementary*, because it serves to *complete* the thought began by the *first*, it is necessary to examine whether it be intended to express something *positive* or *determinate*, or, on the contrary, something *dubious* or *indeterminate*.

In the first instance, the Verb of the *complementary* phrase must be expressed in the *Indicative;* and in the second, it must be expressed in the *Subjunctive*.

The following phrases will completely establish and fix your ideas on that head.

PHRASES EXPRESSING SOMETHING *POSITIVE.*

Je lui donnerai des raisons qui *pourront* le convaincre.
Je veux épouser une femme qui me *plaît* infiniment.
J' aspire à une charge qui *est* agréable.
Montrez-moi le chemin qui *conduit* à Philadelphie.
Donnez-moi le mouchoir qui *est* blanc.
Préférez ces expressions où la naïveté *est* unie à la clarté.

PHRASES EXPRESSING SOMETHING *DOUBTFUL.*

Je lui donnerai des raisons qui *puissent* le convaincre.
Je veux épouser une femme qui me *plaise* infiniment.
J' aspire à une charge qui *soit* agréable.
Montrez-moi un chemin qui *conduise* à Piladelphie.
Donnez-moi un mouchoir qui *soit* blanc.
Préférez des expressions où la naïveté *soit* unie à la clarté.

MASTER.

As it is important you should know what tense of the Subjunctive to use, in French, in the *complementary* phrase, I desire you to fix your attention on the following rules.

RULE VI.

When the Verb of the *principal* phrase is expressed in the *present* or *future* of the *Indicative*, that of the *complementary* phrase must be in the *present* of the *Subjunctive*, if it be meant to express a *present* or a *future*.

EXAMPLES.

Je *crains* qu' elle ne *vienne*.	I *fear* lest she *should come*.
Il *faut* que vous *passiez* chez lui.	You *must call* upon him.
Il *craindra* qu' elle ne s' en *aperçoive*.	He *will fear* that she *should take notice* of it.
Il *faudra* que vous lui *parliez*.	*It will be necessary* for you to *speak* to him.

RULE VII.

Though the Verb of the principal phrase be in the *present* or *future* of the *Indicative*, yet the Verb of the *com-*

plementary phrase, if it be intended to express a *past*, must be in the Subjunctive *past*, instead of the Subjunctive *present*, as above.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne *crois* pas qu' il *ait eu* autant de succès qu' il le dit.	I dont *believe* he *has had* as much success as he says.
On ne me *persuadera* jamais qu' il *ait appris* le Français en si peu de tems.	Nobody will ever *persuade* me he *has learned* French in so short a time.

RULE VIII.

Though the first Verb of the *complementary* phrase be in the *present*, the second is put in the *Present Anterior*, or *Past Anterior* of the *Subjunctive*, when some *condition* expressed follows it.

EXAMPLES.

Croyez-vous qu' ils me *refusassent*, si je les en priais ?	*Do* you *think* they *would refuse* me, if I should beg it of them ?
Il n' *est* point d' homme qui ne *fût* très-*mortifié*, s' il savait tout ce qu' on pense de lui.	There *is* no man that *would* not *feel* very much *mortified*, were he to know all what people think of him.
Je *doute que* votre frère *eût réussi*, sans votre secours.	I *doubt whether* your brother *would have succeeded*, had it not been for your assistance.
Je *suis* persuadé qu' il ne s' en *fût* jamais *tiré*, sans l' entremise de son ami.	I *am* persuaded that he *would* never *have extricated* himself, had it not been for the interference of his friend.

RULE IX.

When the tense of the Verb of the *principal* phrase is no longer in the *present* of the Indicative, but either in the Present Anterior, the Present Anterior Periodical, or any of the two first *pasts* of that mood, or the *conditional*, then the Verb of the *complementary* phrase must be put in the *Present Anterior* of the *Subjunctive*, if it be intended to speak of *futurity*.

EXAMPLES.

Je voulais Je voulus J' ai voulu J' avais voulu Je voudrais J' eusse voulu	que vous *partissiez* avant lui.	I was willing I have been willing I had been willing I should be willing I might have been willing	that you *might set off* before him.
Je craignais J' ai craint, &c.	que vous ne *vinssiez* trop tôt.	I was afraid I have been afraid, &c.	lest you *should come* too soon.

But should we wish to express an idea of time *past*, while the Verb of the *principal* phrase remains in either of the tenses just noticed, the Verb of the *complementary* phrase must be put in the *Past Anterior* of the *Subjunctive*.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne croyais pas—Je n' ai pas cru, &c. qu' elle *eût chanté* la veille.	I did not believe—I have not believed that she *had sung* the day before.
J' avais craint qu' ils n' eussent pas voulu y consentir, avant que j' *eusse reçu* leur lettre.	I have been afraid lest they should have refused to consent to it, before I *received* their letter.

MASTER.

I have not given you a list of the *Conjunctions* that impose the *Subjunctive* form on the Verb which they precede, as it would be repeating what has been said already in the *Conversation* on the *Conjunction*, to which I refer you.

Though this instruction, on the *Subjunctive*, will appear to some very extensive, yet, I must tell you, that I am far from believing that the subject has been completely exhausted; several more exceptions might have been noticed, and perhaps new rules discovered; but, as the cases which they embrace are not common, I trust that *custom*, acquired by reading good authors, will acquaint you with those niceties, which are peculiar to the French language.

INSTRUCTION THE SIXTEENTH.

ON THE COMPLEMENT OF VERBS.

RULE I.

Active Verbs, such as *aimer*, *estimer*, &c. require the word representing the *object* to which the action is extended, (and such as we call its *complement*, as it is necessary to *complete* the sense) to be united to them without the intervention of a *Preposition*.

EXAMPLES.

J' admire le génie de Shakspear.	I admire Shakspear's genius.
Aimez-vous les légumes & les fruits?	Do you like greens and fruits?

RULE II.

When *Active* Verbs have *two* complements instead of *one*, the one which is the *object* of the action they express, may be called *direct*, and is placed immediately *before* the Verb, when it is a *Pronoun*, or immediately *after*, when it is a *Noun:* the second, which may be called *indirect*, is expressed either by a *Preposition* and its *Noun* which follows immediately the first complement of the Verb, or by a *Pronoun* (before which the Preposition *à* is understood) which precedes the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Tout le monde accuse *cette femme d' un crime.*	Every body accuses *that woman of a crime.*
Tout le monde *l'* accuse *du crime.*	Every body accuses *her of the crime.*
Le maître pardonne *la faute à l' écolier.*	The master forgives *the fault to the scholar.*
Le maître *lui* pardonne *sa faute.*	The master forgives *him his fault.*

MASTER.

You have probably already taken notice, that the complement *indirect* of some Verbs, is formed with the Preposition *de* and its *complement*, while that of others is formed with the Preposition *à* and its *complement*. In order to prevent you from falling into an error concerning the proper Preposition to be used, you will find hereto subjoined a list of the principal Verbs which require the Preposition *de* &c. after them; and of those which, on the contrary, demand the Preposition *à* &c.

You will exercise yourself on them by forming phrases of your own coining, which will insure you a facility and readiness in using the true Preposition.

A LIST OF *ACTIVE* VERBS WHICH REQUIRE *DE* BEFORE THEIR COMPLEMENT *INDIRECT.*

Absoudre,	to absolve.	*Emplir*,	to fill.
Accabler,	to overwhelm.	*Enfreindre*,	to transgress.
Accepter,	to accept.	*Exclure*,	to exclude.
Accuser,	to accuse.	*Expulser*,	to turn out.
Avertir,	to warn.	*Fléchir*,	to move.
Bannir,	to banish.	*Implorer*,	to implore.
Blâmer,	to blame.	*Informer*,	to inform.
Chasser,	to expel.	*Louer*,	to praise.
Corriger,	to correct.	*Menacer*,	to threaten.
Débusquer,	to drive out.	*Obtenir*,	to obtain.
Dégoûter,	to disgust.	*Priver*,	to deprive.
Délivrer,	to free.	*Recevoir*,	to receive.
Détourner,	to divert.	*Soupçonner*.	to suspect.
Dissuader,	to dissuade.		

A LIST OF *ACTIVE* VERBS WHICH REQUIRE *A* BEFORE THEIR COMPLEMENT *INDIRECT.*

Accorder,	to grant.	*Confier*,	to trust.
Adresser,	to direct.	*Conseiller*,	to advise.
Annoncer,	to announce.	*Déclarer*,	to declare.
Apporter,	to bring.	*Dédier*,	to dedicate.
Attribuer,	to attribute.	*Demander*,	to ask.
Avouer,	to own.	*Devoir*,	to owe.
Communiquer,	to communicate.	*Dire*,	to tell.
		Donner,	to give.
Confesser,	to confess.	*Ecrire*,	to write.

Enseigner,	to teach.	*Promettre*,	to promise.
Envoyer,	to send.	*Raconter*,	to relate.
Expliquer,	to explain.	*Rapporter*,	to bring back.
Oter,	to take away.	*Refuser*,	to refuse.
Pardonner,	to forgive.	*Rendre*,	to return.
Prédire,	to foretell.	*Renvoyer*,	to send back.
Préférer,	to prefer.	*Répéter*,	to repeat.
Présenter,	to present.	*Reprocher*,	to reproach.
Prêter,	to lend.	*Révéler*,	to reveal.
Procurer,	to procure.	*Vendre*,	to sell.

RULE III.

When the Verb *étre* is joined to the past Participle of an *active* Verb, and any *complement* follows, it is generally composed of the Preposition *de* and its complement.

EXAMPLES.

Il *est* estimé *de* tous les gens de bien.	He *is* esteemed *by* all men of probity.
Elle *est* chérie *de* tous ses parens.	She *is* beloved *by* all her relations.

Observe, that the Preposition *par* (by) is generally used in speaking of *physical* actions.

EXAMPLES.

Il a été tué *par* des voleurs de grand chemin.	He was killed *by* highwaymen.
La ville fut pillée *par* les soldats.	The city was pillaged *by* the soldiers.

However, *par*, though used after Verbs expressing *physical* actions, should be used after Verbs expressing the actions of the *mind*, when an *adverbial* phrase or an *Adverb* has been previously used.

EXAMPLE.

Je m' attends que mon ouvrage sur la vraie manière d' enseigner les langues, sera critiqué *avec acharnement par* les maîtres qui sont servilement attachés aux vieilles routines, qu' ils ont la bonté de regarder comme autant de methodes d' instruction.	I expect that my work on the true manner of learning the languages, will be criticised *with fury by* the masters who are servilely attached to ancient rotes, which they are good enough to consider as so many methods of instruction.

A LIST OF *STATIONARY* VERBS WHICH SHOULD BE FOLLOWED BY *A* AND ITS COMPLEMENT.

Applaudir,	to applaud.
Consentir,	to consent.
Contrevenir,	to infringe.
Contribuer,	to contribute.
Déplaire,	to displease.
Desobéir,	to disobey.
Insulter,	to insult.
Nuir,	to hurt.
Obéir,	to obey.
Obvier,	to obviate.
Pardonner,	to forgive.
Parvenir,	to attain.
Penser,	to think of.
Persuader,	to persuade.
Plaire,	to please.
Renoncer,	to renounce.
Rémédier,	to remedy.
Ressembler,	to resemble.
Résister,	to resist.
Rêver,	to dream.
Songer,	to think of.
Subvenir,	to relieve.
Succéder,	to succeed.
Survivre,	to outlive.
Travailler,	to work.

A LIST OF SUCH *REFLECTED* VERBS AS REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION *A* AND ITS COMPLEMENT.

S' abandonner,	to abandon one's self.
S' accoutumer,	to accustom one's self.
S' adonner,	to addict one's self.
S'amuser,	to amuse one's self.
S' appliquer,	to apply one's self.
S' attendre,	to hope for.
S' apprêter,	to dispose one's self.
S' arrêter,	to stop.
S' attacher,	to stick to.
S' adresser,	to apply one's self.
Se déterminer,	to resolve upon.
Se disposer,	to prepare one's self.
S' endurcir,	to inure one's self.
S' engager,	to engage.
S' exposer,	to expose one's self.
Se fier,	to trust.
S' habituer,	to accustom one's self.
S' obstiner,	to be obstinately resolved.
S' opiniâtrer,	to be obstinate.
S' occuper,	to employ one's self.
S' opposer,	to oppose one's self.

OBSERVATION.

With regard to the remainder of *reflected* Verbs (which form a more numerous class than the above) when they should have a *complement*, they require the Preposition *de* and its *complement*.

EXAMPLES.

Croyez-vous qu' il se repente *de* sa faute ?	Dou you believe that he repents *of* his fault ?
Il se prévaut *de* vos bontés.	He takes advantage *of* your kindnesses.
Il ne s' aperçoit pas *du* tour qu' on lui joue.	He does not perceive the trick which is played upon him.
Vous ressouvenez-vous *de* cette anecdote ?	Do you remember this anecdote ?

OBSERVATION.

When the Verb *jouer* is intended to signify to play on some *musical instruments*, it is necessary it should be followed by the Preposition *de;* but when it is intended to signify to play *at* some *game*, it requires the Preposition *à*.

EXAMPLES.

Ma sœur joue *de* la guitare, *de* la harpe, & *du* forté-piano ; & mon frère joue *de* la flûte, *du* violon, & *de* la clarinette.	My sister plays *on* the guitar, the harpsichord and pianoforte ; and my brother plays *on* the flute, the violin, and the clarionet.
J' aime mieux jouer *aux* cartes qu' *à* la boule, *aux* quilles, *au* palet ou *à* la paume.	I had rather play *at* cards than *at* bowls, nine-pins, quoits or *at* tenis.

INSTRUCTION THE SEVENTEENTH.

ON THE INFINITIVE.

MASTER.

French *Infinitives* may be preceded by either of the Prepositions *de*, *à*, *pour*, or *sans*, as is shown by the following rules.

RULE I.

The Preposition *de* is used before the *Infinitive* of Verbs in the following cases.

1st, When the *Infinitive* is preceded by a *Noun* that demands *de* after it.

EXAMPLES.

Croyez-vous qu' il ait eu le tems *d'* y aller ?	Do you believe he had time *to* go there ?
Il est sur le point *de* mourir.	He is on the point *of* death, *or* very near dying.
Je ne l' ai point trouvé en état *de* faire une si longue route.	I did not find him in a state *to* perform so long a journey.

2d, Before the *Infinitive* of Verbs to which are joined certain Nouns *without* an *Article*, of which a *list* of the Principal was given in treating of the *Article*.

EXAMPLES.

N' avez-vous pas envie *de* faire un petit tour de promenade ?	Have you not a mind *to* take a little walk ?
Prenez garde *de* lui déplaire.	Take care *to* displease him, *or* her.

3d, Before the *Infinitive* of a Verb preceded by the Verb *être*, to be, and the greatest number of French Adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

Qu' il est heureux de ne pas être obligé *de* travailler !	How happy he is, not to be obliged *to* work !
Il est incapable *de* faire tort à qui que ce soit.	He is incapable *of* wronging any body whatever.
Je suis las *de* vous répéter toujours la même chose.	I am tired *of* repeating always the same thing to you.

4th, Before the *Infinitive* of a Verb *following* any of the Verbs mentioned in the preceding *Instruction*, with *de*, &c. for their *complement*.

We trust that the following List of Verbs, which frequently occur and are followed by *de* before another Verb in the *Infinitive*, may be of service to you.

Accuser,	to accuse.	*Mériter*,	to deserve.
Affecter,	to affect.	*Négliger*,	to neglect.
Avertir,	to advise.	*Offrir*,	to offer.
Blâmer,	to blame.	*Omettre*,	to omit.
Cesser,	to cease.	*Ordonner*,	to order.
Commander,	to command.	*Oublier*,	to forget.
Conjurer,	to intreat.	*Parler*,	to speak.
Conseiller,	to advise.	*Permettre*,	to permit.
Craindre,	to fear.	*Persuader*,	to persuade.
Détourner,	to deter.	*Plaindre*,	to pity.
Défendre,	to forbid.	*Prescire*,	to prescribe.
Différer,	to differ.	*Presser*,	to urge.
Dire,	to tell.	*Prier*,	to pray.
Dispenser,	to excuse.	*Promettre*,	to promise.
Dissuader,	to dissuade.	*Proposer*,	to propose.
Ecrire,	to write.	*Refuser*,	to refuse.
Empêcher,	to hinder.	*Remercier*,	to thank.
Enjoindre,	to enjoin.	*Résoudre*,	to resolve.
Entreprendre,	to undertake.	*Sommer*,	to summon.
Essayer,	to try.	*Soupçonner*,	to suspect.
Feindre,	to feign.	*Supplier*,	to beg.
Finir,	to finish.	*Tâcher*,	to endeavour.
Menacer,	to threaten.		

It is proper to observe, that, in general whenever instead of the Preposition *to* with the *Infinitive*, in English, either of the Prepositions *of*, *from*, *by* or *with*, and the

Participle present are used, the French make use of *de* and the *Infinitive* of the corresponding Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Finissez *de* jouer.	Make an end *of* playing.
Il m' a empêché *de* l' acheter.	He prevented me *from* buying it.
Il est accusé *de* l' avoir assassiné.	He is charged *with* murdering him.

RULE II.

The Preposition *à* is generally put *before* an *Infinitive*. 1st, After *Adjectives* denoting *aptness*, *fitness*, *unfitness*, *inclination*, *repugnancy*, and particularly after the following.

Adroit,	dexterous in.	*Enclin*,	inclined to.
Affreux,	dreadful to.	*Exact*,	exact in.
Agréable,	agreeable to.	*Facile*,	easy to.
Aisé,	easy to.	*Habile*,	skilful in.
Ardent,	eager in.	*Lent*,	slow in.
Assidu,	assiduous in.	*Porté*,	inclined to.
Beau,	fine to.	*Le Premier*,	the first to.
Bon,	good to.	*Le Dernier*,	the last to.
Charmant,	charming to.	*Prêt*,	ready to.
Curieux,	curious to.	*Prompt*,	quick in.
Diligent,	diligent in.	*Sujet*,	liable to.
Disposé,	disposed to.	*Terrible*,	dreadful to.
Désagréable,	disagreeable to.		

2d, The following Verbs also require the *Infinitive* with *à*.

Admettre,	to admit.	*Encourager*,	to encourage.
Accoutumer,	to accustom.	*Engager*,	to engage.
Aider,	to help.	*Exhorter*,	to exhort.
Aimer,	to like.	*Inviter*,	to invite.
Autoriser,	to authorise.	*Penser*,	to think of.
Chercher,	to endeavour.	*Persister*,	to persist in.
Condamner,	to condemn.	*Porter*,	to induce to.
Consister,	to consist.	*Pousser*,	to excite to.
Disposer,	to dispose to.	*Rester*,	to stay.
Donner,	to give.	*Travailler*,	to work.
Employer,	to employ.		

RULE III.

The Verbs *commencer*, *continuer*, *discontinuer*, *contraindre*, *engager*, *s' engager*, *exhorter*, *forcer*, *s' efforcer*, *manquer*, *obliger*, *tâcher* & *tarder* require the Infinitive with *de* or *à*, as may be most agreeable to the ear or to the sense.

EXAMPLES.

A peine a-t-on *commencé à* vivre qu' il faut songer à mourir.	Scarcely has one *begun to* live than one must think of dying.
Il avait *commencé d'* écrire sa lettre quand je suis entré.	He had *begun to* write his letter when I entered.
Je ne pus l' *empêcher de* continuer *à* nous débiter ses extravagances.	I could not *prevent* him *from* continuing to utter his extravagancies to us.
Il voulut *continuer de* faire la guerre.	He would *continue to* carry on the war.

With these Verbs they use *à* especially, to avoid the repetition of *de;* and *de* is reciprocally used, to avoid the repetition of *à* or the collision of several *vowels.*—So they will say,

Il commence *à* descendre de sa chambre.	He begins *to* come down from his room.
Il commencait *à* demander de vos nouvelles.	He began *to* enquire about you.
Il avait commencé *de* changer de conduite.	He had begun *to* alter his conduct.
Il me força *d'* abandonner cette entreprise.	He forced me *to* abandon this undertaking.
Cela les obligea *de* camper à quelques lieues plus loin.	That obliged them *to* encamp a few leagues farther.

N. B. Il commence *de de*scendre—il commençait *de de*mander, de &c. would produce a very uncouth and barbarous pronunciation.

OBSERVATIONS.

1st, When *commencer* signifies *to begin by*, it is followed by *par*.

EXAMPLE.

Assez de gens se mêlent de réformer le monde; mais presque personne ne commence *par* se réformer soi-même.	People enough meddle with reforming the world; but almost nobody begins *by* reforming himself.

2d, The Verbs *engager*, *s' engager*, *exhorter*, are more often construed with *à*.

EXAMPLES.

Je l' ai engagé *à* venir nous voir.	I invited him *to* come and see us.
Il s' engage *à* descendre le premier.	He engages *to* come down first.

However, *de* may be used to avoid the repetition of *à* or the collision of several *vowels*.

3d, *S' efforcer*, when it signifies *to make use of all one's strength*, or to *strain*, requires the Preposition *à* before the next Infinitive.

EXAMPLE.

Il s' est efforcé *à* courir.	He strove *to* run.

But when it signifies to *endeavour*, to *make use of one's industry*, it requires the Preposition *de*.

EXAMPLE.

Chacun doit s' efforcer *de* croître en sagesse.	Every one ought to endeavour *to* grow in wisdom.

4th, The Verb *manquer* requires the Preposition *de* when it is used *negatively*, or when it signifies to *be near*, to *have like*.

EXAMPLES.

Les malheureux n' ont jamais manqué *de* se plaindre.	The unfortunate have never failed *to* complain.
Je manquai *de* tomber—*de* me casser le bras.	I had like *to* fall—*to* break my arm.

But *manquer* without a *negative*, is commonly construed with *à*.

EXAMPLE.

J' ai manqué *à* faire ce que je vous avais promis.	I failed doing what I had promised you.

5th, When *tâcher* signifies *to aim*, it requires the Preposition *à* before the *Infinitive*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous tâchez *à* m' embarrasser.	You aim *to* puzzle me.
Il tâche *à* me nuire.	He aims *to* hurt me.

But, when that Verb signifies to *endeavour*, to *use one's utmost endeavours*, it requires the Preposition *de*.

EXAMPLE.

Je tâcherai *de* vous faire obtenir ce que vous desirez si ardemment.	I will endeavour *to* make you obtain what you so ardently wish for.

6th, *Tarder*, when it means to *tarry*, to *delay* &c. requires *à*.

EXAMPLES.

Ne tardez pas *à* revenir.	Do not delay coming back.
Pourquoi tardez-vous *à* y aller ?	Why do you delay going thither ?
Il ne tarda guères *à* le punir.	He did not long put off his punishment.

But, if it signify to *long*, it requires *de*, and is used *impersonally* then, only in the *third* person *singular* of each tense.

EXAMPLES.

Il me tarde *de* revoir mon pays natal.	I long *to* see my native country.
Il nous tardait *d'* arriver.	We longed *to* arrive.

RULE IV.

When *to* (the sign of the Infinitive) is used to denote the *end* or *design* for which a thing is done, and in general, every time *to* can with equal propriety be rendered by *in order to*, it is translated, in French, by *pour* placed before the *Infinitive*.

EXAMPLES.

Les hommes sont nés *pour* s' entr' aimer & s' entr' aider.	Men are born *to* love and help one another.
Je suis venu *pour* vous voir.	I came *to* (or *in order to)* see you.
Je ferai tout *pour* vous obliger.	I will do every thing *to* oblige you.
Il ne l' a pas dit *pour* vous faire de la peine.	He did not say so *to* make you uneasy.
Pour être heureux, il faut être content.	*To*, (or *in order to*) be happy, one must be contented.

Observe, that after the words *assez*, *trop*, *suffire*, *suffisant*, the following Verb requires *pour* before its *Infinitive*.

EXAMPLES.

Il n' est pas *assez* sot *pour* y ajouter foi.	He is not foolish *enough to* give credit to it.
Il à *trop* d' esprit *pour* se fâcher d' une plaisanterie innocente.	He has *too much* understanding *to* get angry at an innocent joke.
Son revenu ne *suffit* pas *pour* payer ses dettes.	His income does not *suffice to* pay his debts.
Trente hommes sont *suffisans* *pour* défendre ce pont.	Thirty men are *sufficient to* defend that bridge.

In the following phrases and the like, the Preposition *de* must be used, instead of *pour*, after the above words.

EXAMPLES.

Ce sera *assez de* m' en écrire.	It will be *enough to* write to me about it.
Ce serait *trop*, en vérité, de le recevoir d' une manière si distinguée.	It would be *too much*, indeed, to receive him in so distinguished a manner.
Il *suffira de* l' en prévenir.	It *will suffice to* forewarn him, or her.

In the following phrases and the like, the Preposition is suppressed before the *Infinitive* following the words *assez* & *trop*.

EXAMPLES.

C' est *assez* danser, en vérité.	It is dancing *enough*, indeed.
C' était aussi *trop* exiger de lui.	It was though requiring *too much* of him.

RULE V.

A Verb in the *Participle present*, in English, preceded by *without*, is rendered, in French, by the *Infinitive* preceded by the Preposition *sans*.

EXAMPLES.

Il à bu tout son vin *sans y mettre* de l' eau.	He drank all his wine *without putting* water in it.
Il parle souvent *sans savoir* ce qu' il dit.	He often speaks *without knowing* what he says.

Note....That *for*, coming before a *Participle present*, in English, is translated by *pour*, with the *Infinitive present* of the Verb, if it has reference to a *present* or a *future* time; or the *Infinitive past*, if it has reference to a *past* time.

EXAMPLES.

Combien me demandez-vous *pour* me *faire* un habit?	How much do you ask *for making* me a suit of clothes?
Il fut pendu *pour avoir* volé.	He was hanged *for robbing*.

RULE VI.

These Verbs admit of no *Prepositions* after them, before the *Infinitive* of the succeeding Verbs.

Aller,	to go.	*Envoyer*,	to send.
Croire,	to believe.	*Espérer*,	to hope.
Daigner,	to deign.	*Faire*,	to do.
Déclarer,	to declare.	*Falloir*,	to be requisite.
Désirer,	to wish.	*Laisser*,	to let.
Devoir,	to owe.	*Nier*,	to deny.
Entendre,	to hear.	*Oser*,	to dare.

Paraître,	to appear.	*Souhaiter*,	to wish.
Prétendre,	to pretend.	*Soutenir*,	to maintain.
Pouvoir,	to be able.	*Venir*,	to come.
Savoir,	to know.	*Voir*,	to see.
Sembler,	to appear.	*Vouloir*,	to be willing.

I will observe here, that the *Infinitive* is also often *substantively* used, without being acted upon by a *Preposition*; as appears by the following phrases, whereon it represents a *Noun* as *subject* of the *Proposition*.

EXAMPLES.

Mentir (le mensonge) est indigne d' un galant homme.	*To lye*, or *lying* is unworthy of a gentleman.
Trop *parler* (trop de paroles) nuit souvent.	*To speak* too much is often hurtful.
Aimer (l' amour de) notre prochain est notre premier devoir.	*To love* one's neighbour is one's first duty.
Lire (la lecture) est une occupation utile.	*To read* is an useful occupation.

I conclude by observing, that the French language derives a great deal of beauty and elegance from the manner in which this tense is applied, as will be seen in the following elegant verses from *Bajazet*, one of Racine's tragedies, in which Prince *Bajazet* clears himself of *Roxana's* reproach of ingratitude.

> " Déjà plein d' un amour, dès l' enfance formé,
> A tout autre désir mon cœur était fermé ;
> Vous me vîntez *offrir*, et la vie, et l' empire ;
> Et même votre amour, si j' ose vous le *dire*,
> Consultant vos bienfaits, les crut, et, sur leur foi,
> De tous mes sentimens vous répondit pour moi.
> Je connus votre erreur ; mais que pouvais-je *faire* ?
> Je vis, en même tems, qu' elle vous était chère.
> Combien le trône tente un cœur ambitieux !
> Un si noble présent me fit *ouvrir* les yeux.
> Je chéris, j' acceptai, sans parler davantage,
> L' heureuse occasion de *sortir* d' esclavage,
> D' autant plus qu' il fallait l' *accepter* ou *périr* :
> D' autant plus que vous-même, ardente à me l' *offrir*,

Vous ne craigniez rien tant que d' être refusée ;
Que même mes refus vous auraient exposée ;
Qu' après avoir osé me *voir* & me *parler*,
Il était dangereux pour vous de *reculer*.
Cependant je n' en veux pour temoins que vos plaintes,
Ai-je pu vous *tromper* par des promesses feintes ?"

INSTRUCTION THE EIGHTEENTH.

REMARKS ON COMPLEMENTS.

FIRST.

IN order that a *complement* may be under the dependence of several words, at the same time, it is necessary that every one of the *latter* should require the same kind of *complement;* thus one may say,

Ne voyez que les personnes qui vous estiment; les autres ne vous entourent que pour *connaître* & *publier* vos défauts.

Je serai *docile* & *fidèle* à vos ordres.
Il se *plaint* & s' *ennuie* de tout.

because *connaître* and *publier* both govern in a *direct* manner ;—because *docile* and *fidèle* require equally the Preposition *à*—and *se plaindre* and *s' ennuyer* the Preposition *de*.

But one cannot say,

C' est par la vertu qu' on *chérit* & qu' on *tient* à ses devoirs sans effort.
C' est par la vertu qu' on *aime* & qu' on *se plaît* dans ses sacrifices.
Je fus très-*sensible* & très-*mécontent* de ce procédé.

because one cannot say, chérir *à* ses devoirs, as one says, tenir *à* ses devoirs—aimer *dans* ses sacrifices, as, se plaire *dans* ses sacrifices—très-sensible *de* ce procédé, as, trés-mécontent *de* ce procédé. One must, in that case, have recourse to *y* and *en* or to Pronouns and say, for instance :

C' est par la vertu qu' on *chérit* ses devoirs & qu' on *y tient* sans effort.
C' est par la vertu qu' on *se plaît* dans ses sacrifices & qu' on *les aime*.
Je fus très-*sensible à* ce procédé & j' en fus très *mécontent*.

The following phrase is incorrect.

Il *s' est* trompé lui-même & tous ceux qui l' ont cru.

It should be as follows,

Il *s' est* trompé & *a* trompé avec lui tous ceux qui l' ont cru.

because the Verb *étre* cannot replace the Verb *avoir* in that case.

The following phrase is incorrect.

Il *se* vint présenter & dire qu' il n' était point coupable.

It should be as follows,

Il vint *se* présenter & dire qu' il n' était point coupable.

because one cannot say, *il se vint* dire, as one says, *il se vint* présenter.

The following phrase is incorrect.

Il *s' est* attiré l' estime publique & rendu célèbre.

It should be as follows,

Il *s' est* attiré l' estime publique & *s' est* rendu célèbre.

because *se* meaning, in the first instance, *à soi*, and in the second, *soi*, cannot be at the same time both a *direct* and an *indirect* complement.

SECOND.

When the *same* word has *several* particular *complements* coupled together by a *Conjunction*, they should be expressed by words of the same species ; hence the following modes of construction are incorrect.

Il aime le jeu & *à danser.*
Il se plaît au spectacle & à *se promener.*
Je crois vos raisons bonnes & *que* vous le convaincrez.

They should be thus,

Il aime le jeu & *la danse.*
Il se plaît au spectacle & à *la promenade.*
Je crois *que* vos raisons *sont* bonnes & *que* vous le convaincrez.

THIRD.

When a *word* has *several* different *complements*, the *shortest* should be expressed *first ;* say,

Le tems seul assure *au génie* des hommages & des partisans.
Le roi ne confie pas *à des incrédules* le commandement de ses armées & de ses flottes.

And not,

Le tems seul assure des hommages & des partisans *au génie.*
Le roi ne confie pas le commandement de ses armées & de ses flottes *à des incredules.*

The reason of this mode of construction is, that, if the *shortest* were not placed *first*, it would be separated from the Verb by a complement expressed by *many* words, which would weaken the connection between the *Verb* and the *shortest* complement :—But, should the *complements* be of *equal* length, the *direct* complement comes *first.*

Il faut prêcher *la diligence* aux paresseux & *la modération* aux emportés.
Le roi ne confie pas *le commandement de ses armées* à des hommes qui sont sans religion.

INSTRUCTION THE NINETEENTH.

ON THE PARTICIPLE *PRESENT*.

RULE I.

THE Participle *present* is always *indeclinable*, that is to say, it ends invariably in *ant*, whether relating to a Noun of the *masculine* or *feminine* gender, or to a Noun *singular* or *plural*.

EXAMPLES.

Les hommes *alliant* le courage à la prudence sont rares—& les femmes *joignant* les grâces de leur sexe aux vertus & aux talens du nôtre sont encore plus rares.	Men *uniting* courage to prudence are rare—and women *joining* the graces of their sex to the virtues and talents of ours are still more rare.

> "Et c' est là que *fuyant* l' orgueil du diadême,
> Lasse de vains honneurs & me *cherchant* moi-même ;
> Aux pieds de l' éternel je viens m' humilier."

RULE II.

When the Participle *present* by qualifying an object completes a Verb at the same time, it is generally preceded by *en*, which answers in English to *by*, *in*, or *whilst*.—The Participle *present* is a *complement* to the Verb, whenever it expresses a *means*, *circumstance*, or the *mode* of the *action* expressed by the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Nous avons obtenu la paix *en* fesant de grands sacrifices.	We have obtained peace *by* making great sacrifices.
On acquiert plus de gloire *en* defendant qu' *en* accusant ses concitoyens.	More glory is acquired *by* defending than *by* accusing one's fellow-citizens.
Il mourut *en* dejeûnant.	He died *in* eating his breakfast.
Diogène dit, un jour, *en* dînant avec ses amis : ô mes amis ! il n' est plus d' amis.	Diogenes said, one day, *whilst* he dined with his friends : O my friends ! there is no longer any friend.

"Des trompeuses grandeurs le sage se console :
En cultivant en paix les arts, la verité,
Il ennoblit son être & sert l' humanité."

"Le peuple ailé des bois, s' essayant dans les airs,
D' un vol timide encor rase les champs déserts.
Il s' anime, il s' égaie, & d' une aile hardie
Il s' élance, *en* chantant, vers l' astre de la vie."

"Il dompte, *en* se jouant, ce taureau menaçant,
Qui résiste avec crainte & cède *en* mugissant."

"Pauvre Didon ! où t' a réduite
De tes maris le triste sort ?
L' un, *en mourant*, cause ta fuite ;
L' autre, *en fuyant*, cause ta mort."

There are many cases in which the Participle qualifying and completing all at once, is *not* preceded by the Preposition *en ;* as in the following phrase.

Comment voulez-vous que n' *étudiant* pas, on devienne savant ?	How is it possible that not *studying*, one becomes learned ?

Etudiant both qualifies and completes : it is as if there was,

Comment voulez-vous que, *lorsqu' on n' étudie pas*, on devienne savant.

Note, in general, that whenever the sense would be *equivocal* or *ambiguous* without *en*, it must be expressed.

RULE III.

When a Participle *present* is employed solely to qualify a Substantive and *not* to complete a Verb, it ought *not* to be preceded by the Preposition *en*—and it fulfils this duty, when it can be rendered by *qui*, &c. and the *Indicative* of the Verb ; which construction is generally preferable to the *Participle present*, especially if the Participle present has a reference to a *Noun* acted upon by the Preposition *à*.

EXAMPLES.

J' a vu vôtre frère *courant* ou qui courait à toutes jambes.	I saw your brother *running* with full speed.
Apercevez-vous les matelots *ramant* ou qui rament vers la côte?	Do you perceive the sailors *rowing* towards the coast?
C' est une femme *aimant* ou qui aime son mari.	She is a woman *loving* her husband.

In the first place, *courant* merely qualifies the Noun *frère*, and does *not complete*, at the same time, the Verb *J' ai vu;* because one may say, " J' ai vu votre frère *qui courait* à toutes jambes."

By placing, therefore, *en* before *courant*, the sense of the phrase would change—The Participle would qualify the Pronoun *je*, and would *complete*, at the same time, the Verb *j' ai vu*—" *J'* ai vu votre frère, *en courant* à toutes jambes," that is to say, " J' ai vu votre frère, *lorsque je courais* à toutes jambes."

As you might be apt to impose *gender* or *number* on the Participle *present*, as beginners often do, owing to many Adjectives ending in *ant*,[*] such as *charmant*, *obligeant*, *souffrant*, &c. which assume *gender* or *number*, as the Nouns to which they are subject, require it; it is necessary for me to establish the material difference which exists between the *real* Participle *present* and the Adjective in *ant*.—The former is a *Verb*, because it has either a complement or expresses a circumstance of time; and the latter has no complement, at least direct, and expresses *no* circumstance of time.

It is true, those Adjectives were formerly Participles *present* and were then liable to *gender* or *number*, as may be noticed in some law terms, such as: Les gens *tenants* notre cour; la *rendante* compte; but, as the French language has since acquired a fixed character, by which the Participle present is *invariable*, we must conform to it.—In a word, to distinguish the Participle *present* from the *Adjective*, which has the *same* termination, it suffices to know that the Verb *être* connects itself well with the *Adjective* ending in *ant*, but can*not*, by any means, with the Participle *present*.

---

[*] Of all the Participles in *ant*, only those of the *Neuter* or *Stationary* Verbs may vary—so one may say, " une humeur *répugnante* à la mienne, —une étoffe *approchante* de la vôtre."—But this rule is far from being general, as one could not say, " des filles *travaillantes* à la terre; des personnes *arrivantes* de campagne."—One might find in some of our best poets, instances of Participles present both of *Active* and *Stationary* Verbs made variable; but this licence has not been fully granted to them by *usage*.

We may say,	We cannot say,
Je suis *prévenant.*	Je suis *lisant.*
Tu es *charmant.*	Tu es *vendant.*
Il est *séduisant.*	Il est *servant.*

I will inform you, that almost every grammarian, besides the Participle *present*, admits of a *gerund*, which is nothing but the Participle *present* preceded by the Preposition *en*. This denomination appearing to us, after mature consideration, quite superfluous, we have not adopted it, and leave it, with pleasure, to the *Latin* grammarians, who wanted it. I conclude this account of the Participle *present* by observing that *ayant* and *étant* very seldom admit the Preposition *en* before them.

INSTRUCTION THE TWENTIETH.

ON THE DECLINABILITY OR INDECLINABILITY OF THE PAST *PARTICIPLE.*

MASTER.

THE question when the *past* Participle of a Verb is *declinable*, or when it is *indeclinable*, involves many difficulties; as even the first rate grammarians appear divided among themselves on some points it involves; while they have all supported their opinions by very ingenious reasons: our opinion on this subject will, I think, be found conformable to strict logic, and our principles adequate to the solution of the difficulties alluded to.—If I should not always impart my motives for adopting one opinion and rejecting another, it is merely owing to the long process of reasoning necessary to support our doctrine or refute theirs; as I could not presume to adopt an opinion different from those of *Vaugelas*, *Regnier*, *Condillac*, *Wailly*, &c. without assigning reasons at full length for it.—Besides, upon the whole, I consider, that however interesting these discussions may be to a *critic*, or a *philologist*, or a *professed grammarian*, they are by no means so to the learner, who cannot discover in them the least utility to compensate the loss of time he might have so much better employed, and the difficulty he experiences in the investigation of the subject.

To proceed with a degree of regularity and simplicity, at the same time, I will consider the *past* Participle conjugated,

1st, with *être*.
2d, with *avoir*.
3d, with the *Reflective* Verb.

1st, Of the Participle *past*, conjugated with *être*.

RULE I.

The *past* Participle conjugated with *étre*, always agrees in *gender* and *number* with the *subject* of the *Verb*.

EXAMPLES.

Le *crime* est *détesté ;* mais la *vertu* n' est pas toujours *aimée.*	*Crimes* are *detested ;* but *virtue* is not always *loved.*
Elle était, dans sa jeunesse, *douée* d' une beauté ravissante.	*She* was, in her youth, *endowed* with ravishing beauty.
Les *hommes* vertueux sont *estimés* même des méchans.	Virtuous *men* are *esteemed* even by the wicked.
Les *femmes* vertueuses sont *respectées* de tout le monde.	Virtuous *women* are *respected* by every body.

"O toi qui vois la honte où *je* suis *descendue*,
Implacable Vénus ! suis-*je* assez *confondue ?*
Tu ne saurais plus loin pousser ta cruauté,
Ton *triomphe* est *parfait*, tes traits ont tous porté."

RULE II.

When *été* joined to one of the tenses of *avoir* is followed by another *Participle*, the latter is *declinable*.

EXAMPLES.

Cette actrice a été *applaudie* du parterre & des loges.	This actress has been *applauded* by the pit and boxes.
Nous avons été *trahis* par ceux-même à qui nous avions été *recommandés*.	We have been *betrayed* even by those to whom we had been *recommended*.

MASTER.

As the *declinability* or *indeclinability* of the *past* Participle in the examples that will now follow, depends upon its being *preceded* by its direct complement, or upon its preceding its *indirect* complement; I now give you a list of the complements *direct*, and another of the complements *indirect* that always *precede* the *past* Participle.

The complements *direct* are *fifteen* in number: viz.

me.	which may be rendered by	moi.	and	*que.*
te.		toi.		*que de !*
se.		soi.		*combien de ?*
nous.		nous		*quel*, S. M.
vous.		vous		*quelle*, S. F.
le.		lui.		*quels*, PL. M.
la.		elle.		*quelles*, PL. F.
les.		eux.		

The complements *indirect* are *seven* in number: viz.

me.	they may be rendered by	à moi.
te.		à toi.
se.		à soi.
lui.		à lui, *ou* à elle.
leur.		à eux, *ou* à elles.
nous.		à nous.
vous.		à vous.

2d, Of the *past* Participle, conjugated with *avoir*.

RULE I.

The *past* Participle is *indeclinable*, when it *precedes* its *direct* complement.

EXAMPLES.

Elle a *reçu* des *nouvelles*.	She has *received* news.
Nous avons *trouvé* cette *pièce* intéressante.	We *found* this *piece* interesting.
Ces hommes ont *rendu* leurs *talens* célèbres.	These men have *rendered* their *talents* celebrious.

> " Mânes de mon amant, j' ai donc *trahi* ma *foi!*——
> " C' en est fait & Gusman règne à jamais sur moi."

RULE II.

The *past* Participle is *declinable*, when it is *preceded* by its *direct* complement, even when it is followed by an *Adjective* or another Participle *past*.

EXAMPLES.

Les *nouvelles* qu' elle a *reçues*.	The *news* which she has *received*.
La *pièce* que vous avez *trouvée* intéressante.	The *piece* which you *found* entertaining.
Les *hommes* que leurs talens ont *rendus* célèbres.	The *men* whom their talents have *rendered* celebrious.
Il n' a pas eu le tems de faire réponse aux *lettres* que vous lui avez *écrites*.	He had no time to answer the *letters* you *wrote* him.

> " Quels charmes ont pour vous des yeux infortunés
> " *Qu'* à des pleurs éternels vous avez *condamnés!*"

On m' a blâmé de *l'* en avoir *prévenue*.	I have been blamed for *informing her* of it.

> " Seigneur, vous *m'* avez *vue* attachée à vous nuire;
> " Dans le fond de mon cœur vous ne pouviez pas lire."

Le malheur *t'* a *livrée*, ô reine courageuse, dans les mains de tes bourreaux!	Misfortune has *given thee* up, O courageous queen, into the hands of thy murderers!

"Que je crains——mais, dis-moi, Bajazet *t'*a-t-il *vue*?"

Il *nous* a *reçus* avec beaucoup d' honnêteté.	He *received us* with much politeness.

"Je reconnais l' erreur qui *nous* avait *séduits*."

Je ne *vous* avais pas *aperçue*, *Madame*, lorsque vous *l'* avez *rencontrée*.	I had not *perceived you*, *Madam*, when you *met her*.

"Oui, Roxane, il est vrai que je *vous* ai *trompée*."

Y a-t-il long-tems que vous ne *les* avez *vus*?	How long is it since you *saw them*?

"De soins plus importans je *l'* ai *vue* agitée.
"Je *l'* ai *rendue* horrible à ses yeux inhumains.
"Le bruit de nos trésors *les* a tous *attirés*."

Que de peines ne me suis-je pas *données* pour vous!	*What* trouble did I not *give* myself for you!
Que de fatigues n' a-t-il pas *soutenues*!	*What* hardships did he not *bear*!
Que de folies n' a-t-il pas *faites!*	*What* pranks did he not *play*!
Combien d' arpens de terre avez-vous *achetés*?	*How many* acres of land have you *bought*?

"Pendant ces derniers tems, *combien* en a-t-on *vus*,
"Qui, du soir au matin, sont pauvres devenus?
"Pour vouloir trop tôt être riches."

Quelle maison avez-vous *bâtie*?	*What* house have you *built*?
Quelles dames avez-vous *connues*?	*What* ladies did you *know*?

"*Quels* assauts, *quels* combats j' ai tantôt *soutenus*."

RULE III.

The Participle *past* is *indeclinable*, when preceded by its complement *direct*, and followed by an *Infinitive* implying *action* on individuals mentioned in the phrase.

EXAMPLES.

Les soldats que j' ai *vu* désarmer.	*The* soldiers I *saw* disarmed.
Les vertus que j' ai *entendu* louer.	*The* virtues I *heard* praised.

Les jeunes gens que j' ai *voulu* instruire, ne m' ont pas écouté.	*The* young men I *wished* to instruct, paid no attention to me.
Je *l'* ai *vu* peindre.	I *saw her* picture drawn.
Je *l'* ai *entendu* chanter.	I *heard it* sung, (a song).
Je *l'* ai *vu* bâtir.	I *saw it* built, (a house).
Je *les* ai *entendu* réciter.	I *heard them* recited, (lines).
Je *les* ai *vu* porter.	I *saw them* carried, (goods).

RULE IV.

The Participle past is *declinable*, when preceded by its complement *direct*, and followed by an *Infinitive* expressing an action done by the *person* or *thing* spoken of.

EXAMPLES.

Je *l'* ai *vue* tomber.	I *saw it* fall, (a house).
Je *l'* ai *entendue* chanter.	I *heard her* sing.
Je *les* ai *entendus* réciter.	I *heard them* recite.
Je *les* ai *vues* danser.	I *saw them* dance.
Je *les* ai *vus* jouer.	I *saw them* play.
Les soldats que j' ai *vus* désarmer.	*The* soldiers I *saw* disarming.
Les courtisans que j' ai *entendus* louer.	*The* courtiers which I *heard* praising.

RULE V.

The *past* Participle is *indeclinable*, when preceded by its complement *direct*, and immediately followed by the Preposition *à* or *de* before an *Infinitive*, we *cannot*, by suppressing the complement *direct*, place the subject of the proposition *after* the Participle.

EXAMPLE.

L' histoire que j' ai *commencé à* lire est très-amusante.	The history which I *began to* read is very entertaining.
La femme qu' il a *cherché à* séduire lui a résisté.	The woman he *sought to* seduce has resisted him.
Les hommes que nous avons *craint d'* aborder, étaient des voleurs.	The men whom we *feared to* come up with, were thieves.
La demoiselle que vous avez *cessé de* voir, est fort spirituelle.	The young lady whom you *declined* seeing, is very witty.

It is contrary to the genius of the French language to say,

J' ai commencé *l' histoire* à lire.
Il a cherché *la femme* à séduire.
Nous avons craint *les hommes* d' aborder.
Vous avez cessé *la demoiselle* de voir.

RULE VI.

The *past* Participle is *declinable*, when preceded by its complement *direct*, and immediately followed by the Preposition *à* or *de* before an *Infinitive*, we *can*, by suppressing the complement *direct*, place the name of the object spoken of *after* the Participle.

EXAMPLES.

Les ouvriers *qu'* il a *obligés* à travailler, ne sont pas contens de lui.	The workmen *whom* he *obliged* to work, are not pleased with him.
Les femmes *que* nous avons *instruites* à feindre, nous ont surpassés.	The women *whom* we have *instructed* to dissemble, have surpassed us.
Les hommes *que* nous avons *convaincus* d' avoir volé, sont en prison.	The men *whom* we have *convicted* of robbery, are in goal.
La simplicité *que* j' ai eue de les croire, est la cause de tout mon malheur.	The simplicity *that* I *had* to believe them, is the cause of all my misfortunes.

" Vous me donnez des noms qui doivent me surprendre,
" Madame ; on ne *m'* a point *instruite* à les entendre."

One can say, agreeably to the genius of the French language,

Il a obligé *les ouvriers* à travailler.
Nous avons instruit *les femmes* à feindre.
Nous avons convaincu *les hommes* d' avoir volé.
J' ai eu *la simplicité* de les croire.

RULE VII.

The Participle *past*, preceded by the relative Adverb *en*, without being first preceded by the complement *direct*, is *indeclinable*.

EXAMPLES.

Il a fait lui seul plus d' exploits que les autres n' *en* ont *lu*.	He has perfomed alone more exploits than the others have *read*.
J' ai maintenant plus de santé que je n' *en* ai jamais *eu*.	I have at this time more health than I ever *had*.
J' ai dessiné plus de paysages que vous n' *en* avez *vu*.	I have designed more landscapes than you have *seen*.
De deux filles, la mère *en* avait *fait* une Religieuse.	Of two daughters, the mother had *made* one a Nun.

It is evident that *que*, in the sentences above, is not the complement *direct* of the Participle *past;* it is nothing but a *Conjunction*, taken in an *adverbial* sense, which does not, of course, receive the *influence* of the Participle, so as to become its complement *direct*.

RULE VIII.

The *past* Participle is *declinable*, when preceded by *en* and its complement *direct*.

EXAMPLES.

Les en avez-vous *prévenus?*	Have you *informed them of it.*
Les femmes *que* j' *en* ai *convaincues*.	The woman *which* I have *convinced of it*.
Vous parlez de ses fautes; *combien* n' *en* a-t-il pas *commises!*	You speak of his faults; *how many* has he not *committed!*

"————————Déjà la renommée
" Par d' étonnans récits *m'* en avait *informée*."

RULE IX.

When the *past* Participle is followed by *que*, it is always *indeclinable*.

EXAMPLES.

Terminez les affaires que vous avez *prévu que* vous auriez.	Put an end to the business which you *foresaw* you should have.

Les bijous que j' ai *ordonné qu'* on m' envoyât.	The jewels that I *ordered* to be sent to me.
Les dépenses qu' ils ont *cru que* je ferais.	The expenses which they *thought* I would incur.
Les terres qu' il aurait *désiré que* j' eusse achetées.	The lands he would have *desired* I should have bought.

3d, Of the *past* Participle of Reflective Verbs.

RULE I.

The *past* Participle of *Reflective* Verbs is always *declinable*, when attended by its complement *direct*.

EXAMPLES.

Les Amazones *se* sont *couvertes* de glorie.	The Amazons *covered themselves* with glory.
Ils *se* sont *décidés* à lui faire un procès.	They have *determined* to sue him.
Elle *s'* est *avisée* de me donner un soufflet.	She *took it into her head* to give me a box on the ear.
Elle *s'* est *assise* auprès de moi.	She *sat* by me.
Ils *se* sont *rendus* formidables.	They have *rendered themselves* formidable.
Elle *s'* était *flattée* de réussir.	She *flattered herself* she would succeed.

RULE II.

The *past* Participle of *Reflective* Verbs, when attended by a complement *indirect*, is *indeclinable*.

EXAMPLES.

Lucrèce *s'* est *donné la mort*.	Lucretia *killed* herself.
Elle *s'* est *mis des chimères* dans l' esprit.	She has *stored chimeras* in her head.
Les Amazones *se* sont *acquis de la gloire*.	The Amazons have *acquired* glory *to themselves*.
Vous *vous* êtes *dit des honnêtetés*,	You *spoke* to one another *civilly*.

Ils se sont *préparé* bien *des peines.*	They have *prepared for* themselves much *trouble.*

« Deux fois nos tristes yeux se sont *vu retracer*,
« Ce même enfant toujours tout prêt à me percer."

RULE III.

The *past* Participle of *Reflective* Verbs, when attended, at the same time, by *two* complements, one *direct*, and the other *indirect*, is *declinable.*

EXAMPLES.

La mort *que* Lucrèce *s'* est *donnée.*	The death *that* Lucretia *gave* herself.
Les chimères *qu'* elle *s'* est *mises* dans l' esprit.	The chimeras *that* she *put* into her brains.
La gloire *que se* sont *acquise* les Amazones.	The glory *which* the Amazons *acquired.*
Les honnêtetés *que* vous *vous* êtes *dites.*	The civil speeches you *made* one to another.
Les peines *qu'* ils *se* sont *préparées.*	The trouble they *prepared for* themselves.

SCHOLAR.

You have said nothing concerning the *declinability* of the *past* Participle of *Stationary* Verbs, construed with *Avoir.*

MASTER.

For a good reason: you have seen in all the above examples concerning the *past* Participle, that, to be *declinable*, it must be preceded by a complement *direct;* and, as the *Stationary* Verbs have none, their *past* Participle must necessarily be *indeclinable*, when construed with *Avoir.*

EXAMPLES.

On pourrait compter par les bienfaits de cet homme rare les jours qu' il a *vécu.*	We may estimate the good deeds of that rare man by the days he has *lived.*
Il faut retrancher de la vie les heures qu' on a *dormi.*	We should deduct from life the hours we *slept.*

In the two above examples *que* is not a *complement;* it is used in the first instead of *pendant lesquels;* and in the second instead of *pendant lesquelles.*

The *past* Participle of *Stationary* Verbs, is, on the contrary, always *declinable*, when construed with *être.*

EXAMPLES.

Elle est *venue* me parler.	She *came* and spoke to me.
Elle s' est *allée* baigner.	She *went* to bathe herself.
Les navires sont *allés* se briser à la côte.	The vessels *went* and bilged on the coast.
Cette femme est *arrivée* à cinq heures & est *repartie* à sept.	This woman *arrived* at five o' clock and *set off again* at seven.

I conclude this account of the *declinability* of the *past* Participle by observing,

1st, That *fait* is *indeclinable*, as well as some other *past* Participles, when used in an *abstract* sense.

EXAMPLES.

Le pluie qu' il a *fait* m' a empêché de sortir.	The rain which has *fallen* prevented me from going out.
Les troupes qu' il a *fallu* leur envoyer ont affaibli l' armée.	The troops, which it has been *necessary* to send them, have enfeebled the army.
La dépense qu' il y a *eu* dans cette maison est effroyable.	The expense, that there has *been* in that house, is horrible.

2d, That *fait* of all the *past* Participles, which may be united to the Infinitive of *Active*, or *Stationary* Verbs, is the *only* one that always remains *indeclinable.*

EXAMPLES.

Les chemises que j' ai *fait* faire.	The shirts that I *caused* to be made.
Voilà les livres que j' ai *fait* venir de France.	There are the books I *ordered* from France.
Je l' ai *fait* entrer avec beaucoup de difficulté.	I *made* her come in with a great deal of difficulty.

But if *fait* has the sense of *fabriquer*, *créer*, *former*, *produire*, &c. it is *declinable*.

EXAMPLES.

Les bottes qu' il m' a *faites* sont trop étroites.	The boots he *made* for me are too tight.

3d, That when the *past* Participle has after it an *Infinitive* understood, it is then *indeclinable*.

EXAMPLES.

J' ai cité les plus beaux traits que j' ai *pu*.	I have quoted the noblest traits I *could*.
Elle a dit toutes les plaisanteries qu' elle a *voulu*.	She said all the pleasantries she *would*.
J' ai fait toutes les démarches que j' ai *dû*.	I took all the steps I *should*, or *ought*.

The Infinitives *citer*, *dire*, & *faire* are understood in the above phrases.

INSTRUCTION THE TWENTY-FIRST.

ON THE PROPER CHOICE OF THE *AUXILIARY*.

MASTER.

YOU have undoubtedly observed in the course of this work, that the Participles *past* of *active* Verbs having a *direct* complement, are combined with the auxiliary *étre*, in order to give a *passive* sense to the phrase, as in the following line;

> " Tout mortel *est chargé* de sa propre douleur."

est chargé, is used in a *passive* sense, because one may say, *charger quelqu' un*, Also, that all our *Reflective* Verbs, contrary to the genius of the English, are conjugated with *être* in their *past* tenses; as,

> " Je suis père, & ce cœur qu' un tel arrêt déchire,
> " S' en *est dit* cent fois plus que tu ne peux m' en dire."

There are some Verbs, which, without being used *passively* or *reflectively*, take the auxiliary *être;* as,

Aller, *arriver*, *décéder*, *déchoir*, *entrer*, *mourir*, *naître*, *partir*, *rester*, *sortir*, *tomber*, *venir* and its compounds, *devenir*, *intervenir*, *parvenir*, *revenir*, and *survenir*.

REMARK ON *ALLER*, *SORTIR*, AND *TOMBER*.

ALLER.

We always make use of *être*, when *aller* is conjugated with its *own* Participle: so they say, " il *est allé*, il *était allé;*" but should the word *été* be substituted for the word *allé*, then the auxiliary *avoir* must be substituted for the auxiliary *être:* so they must say, in the sense of *aller*, " il *a été*," instead of " il *est été*," which is a barbarism in French.—There is a very nice distinction between " il *est allé*," and " il *a été*," for they are by no means synonymous: the *former* meaning that the person is gone and is *not* yet returned; while the *latter* means that he is returned from the place where he had been, or where he had lived.—From this remark it is evident that *aller*, conjugated with the Verb *être*, cannot be used for the *first* nor the second person, but only for the *third*.

SORTIR.

This Verb first takes the auxiliary *avoir*, to express that somebody who was *out* returned: so we say of somebody that has returned, " il *a* sorti;" but should he *not* be returned yet, we would say, " il *est* sorti."

Sortir is also conjugated with *avoir*, when it is followed by a *complement*.

EXAMPLES.

Le palefrenier *a*-t-il sorti mes chevaux de l' écurie?	*Has* the ostler taken my horses out of the stable?
Remerciez-le de vous *avoir* sorti d' une affaire si fâcheuse.	Thank him for *having* extricated you from so unpleasant an affair.

TOMBER.

This Verb never admits for the conjugation of its *past* tenses, of any other auxiliary than *être:* so we must say, "Je *suis* tombé,—J' *étais* tombé;" but never "J' *ai* tombé,—J' *avais* tombé," which is a mistake into which a great many French are liable to fall; even *Voltaire*, the most correct, perhaps, of our writers, has committed it in the following lines.

"Ou serais-je, Grand Dieu! si ma crédulité
"*Eût* tombé dans le piège à mes pas présenté."

☞ *Fût* should have been used instead of *eût.*

The Verbs *Subvenir*, *Apparaître*, *Comparaître*, *Approcher*, are always conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir.*

EXAMPLES.

On *a* subvenu à tous les besoins les plus urgens.	The most urgent wants *have* been all relieved.
Il croit que l' ombre de sa maîtresse lui *a* apparu en songe.	He believes that the ghost of his mistress *has* appeared to him in a dream.
J' étais sûr qu' il n' *eût* point comparu devant les Juges.	I was sure that he would not *have* made his appearance before the Judges.

"Vieillards, femmes, enfans, troupeau faible & timide
"Dont n' *a* point approché cette guerre homicide."

The Verbs *Accourir*, *Disparaître*, *Croître*, *Décroître*, *Contrevenir*, are conjugated with *either* of these auxiliary Verbs.

EXAMPLES.

J' *ai* accouru *ou* Je *suis* accouru au bruit.	I *ran* to the noise.
La riviere *a* cru *ou est* crue.	The river *has* increased.
Les aux *ont* bien décru *ou sont* bien décrues.	The waters *have* much decreased.
Il prétendait n' *avoir* point contrevenu *ou* n' *être* point contrevenu à la loi.	He pretended not to *have* contravened the law.
Je n' ai fait que tourner la tête, elle *a* disparu *ou* elle *est* disparue.	I did but turn my head, and she disappeared.

Périr is generally ranked by all grammarians (*Restaut* excepted) among the Verbs which admit equally well of *either* auxiliaries. The distinction which the latter makes, having appeared as delicate as it is judicious, I shall insert his remark on the use of this Verb.

" It is probable that the auxiliary *Avoir* suits better, when the Verb has a general and indeterminate sense; as when we say, Les enfans du Grand Prètre (High Priest) *ont* péri misérablement.—And that the auxiliary *être* is preferable, when the Verb is attended by *particular* circumstances, as in the following phrases:

Les habitans de Jérusalem *sont* péris *par le fer* & *par le feu.*
L' armée de Pharaon *est* périe *dans les eaux de la mer rouge.*"

The Verbs following change their meaning by a change of auxiliary—viz.

Accoucher, when conjugated with *avoir*, means to *deliver*.

EXAMPLES.

Cette sage-femme *a accouché* Madame une telle.	This midwife *has delivered* Mrs. such-a-one.
Quel est le chirurgien qui vous *a accouché ?*	Who is the surgeon who *delivered* you ?

When conjugated with *être*, it means to *bring forth*, to *be delivered.*

EXAMPLES.

Cette femme *est accouchée* hier de deux jumeaux.	This lady *brought forth* yesterday two twins.
Elle *était accouchée* d' un enfant mâle.	She *was delivered* of a male child.
Vous ne la verrez pas qu' elle ne *soit accouchée.*	You shall not see her, till she has *brought forth.*

Cesser is always conjugated with *avoir*, when it has a *complement;* it then means to *leave off*, to *cease.*

EXAMPLES.

Il *a* cessé *ses plaintes.*	He *has* ceased *his complaints.*
Il *a* cessé *de pleurer.*	He *has* left off *weeping.*

The same Verb is conjugated with *either* of the auxiliaries, when it has *no* complement; it means to *be over*, to *have ceased.*

EXAMPLE.

Sa fièvre *a* cessé *ou est* cessée.	His fever *is* over.

Convenir when it is conjugated with *avoir*, means *être convenable*, to suit; and when it is conjugated with *être*, it means *demeurer d' accord*, to agree.

EXAMPLE.

Cette maison m' *a convenu* & je *suis convenu* du prix.	This house *suited* me and I *agreed* for the price.

Demeurer when it is conjugated with *avoir*, means to *reside* or to *tarry*, to *stay a long while.*

EXAMPLES.

J' *ai demeuré* près de onze ans à Philadelphie.	I *have resided* near eleven years in Philadelphia.
Sa plaie *a demeuré* long-tems à se fermer.	It *was* a long time before his wound was healed.

But, when this Verb means to *remain*, it requires *être.*

EXAMPLE.

Il *est demeuré* deux mille hommes dans la place.	Two thousand men *remained* in the place.

Racine has therefore committed a fault, when he said

——— Ma langue embarrassée
Dans ma bouche vingt fois *a* demeurée glacée.

Est should have been used instead of *a.*

Monter and *Descendre* admit of *either* auxiliary ; though *être* should be preferred.

EXAMPLES.

Notre Seigneur *est monté* au ciel.	Our Lord *ascended* to heaven.
Il *a ou* il *est monté* à cheval.	He *went on* horseback.
Il était Enseigne; il *a monté* à la Lieutenance.	He was an Ensign; he *has been promoted* to a Lieutenancy.
Le blé *a* ou *est monté* jusqu' à vingt francs le septier.	Corn *has risen* to twenty francs the twelve bushels.
Il *est descendu* de sa chambre.	He *came down* from his room.
La Justice *a descendu* dans ce lieu.	The Officers of Justice *went in* that place.

But, should those Verbs have a *direct* complement, the auxiliary *avoir* only should be used.

EXAMPLES.

Il *a* monté *un superbe cheval.*	He *mounted* a superb horse.
Il *a* descendu *les dégrés avec précipitation.*	He *came down* stairs with precipitation.

Passer, when followed by *any complement*, is conjugated with *avoir*.

EXAMPLES.

Il *a* passé *le long de la Délaware.*	He *has* passed *along the Delaware.*
Il *a* passe *par tous les grades.*	He *has* passed *through all the degrees.*
Elle *a* passé *comme une chandelle qui s' éteint.*	She *went off* just like a candle that's burnt out.

On these lines of *Boileau*,

> "——Si leur sang tout pur, ainsi que leur noblesse,
> *Est passé* jusqu' à vous de Lucrèce en Lucrèce."

D'Olivet observes that, "*a passé*" would be better ; but should that Verb *close* the phrase, the auxiliary *être* should be used.

EXAMPLES.

L' année *est passée.*	The year *is elapsed.*
Mes beaux jours *sont passés.*	My happy days *are past.*

We say, however, "ce mot *a* passé" to intimate that it has been *admitted*—and "ce mot *est* passé," to assert that it is *no longer in use*.

Echapper is conjugated with *avoir*, when it is attended by a *direct* complement.

EXAMPLES.

Il *a* échappé *la côte*, *le danger*, *la potence*.	He *escaped* the coast, the danger, the gallows.
Vous pouvez vous vanter que vous l' *avez* échappé *belle*.	You may boast that you *had a narrow escape*.

Except in the above cases, it takes *either* of the auxiliaries.

EXAMPLES.

Il *a* échappé des mains du guet.	He *escaped* from the hands of the watch.
Il *est* échappé du feu, des galères.	He *escaped* from fire, from the gallies.
Le cerf *a* ou *est* échappé aux chiens.	The stag *has* escaped from the dogs.

Courir, signifying to *run*, admits of the auxiliary *avoir* only.

EXAMPLE.

J' y *ai* couru aussitôt avec empressement.	I *ran* there immediately with eagerness.

Racine, has, therefore, committed an error in the following line :

> "Il en était sorti lorsque j' y *suis* couru."

I believe the above list comprises all the Verbs of which custom has justified the conjugation occasionally, either with one or *both* of the auxiliaries.—Should any Verb have escaped our inquiries we must refer you to the reading of good authors, which cannot fail to establish the habit of applying the proper *auxiliary* to the *Stationary* Verbs. But I will here give you a rule discovered by *Restaut*, which, I think, is pretty accurate in general.

"All neuter Verbs (*stationary*), whose past Participle is *declinable*, are conjugated with the Verb *être;* the neuter Verbs, whose past Participle is *indeclinable*, ought to be conjugated with *avoir*. Thus, since we may say, "un homme *tombé;* une femme *arrivée*," we ought to conjugate *tomber* and *arriver*, with the Verb *être;* but, as we cannot say, "un homme *dormi;* une femme *régnée*," one cannot conjugate *dormir* and *régner*, with the Verb *être;* they must be conjugated with *avoir*."

INSTRUCTION THE TWENTY-SECOND.

ON THE PREPOSITION.

RULE I.

The Preposition *à*, *de*, or *en*, must be *repeated* in a sentence, *before* each *complement* of theirs.

EXAMPLES FOR *A*.

Le jargon supplée *à* l' esprit, *à* la raison, *à* la science dans les personnes qui ont un grand usage du monde.	Jargon supplies the place *of* wit, reason, and science, in people who have a great intercourse with the world.

"Je l' apporte en naissant, elle est écrite en moi,
Cette loi qui m' instruit de tout ce que je doi
A mon père, *à* mon fils, *à* ma femme, *à* moi-même."

EXAMPLES FOR *DE.*

Sa gaité est un peu bruyante, il est vrai ; mais il a tant *de* franchise, *de* naturel & *de* bonhomie qu' il est impossible de le trouver importun.	His gaiety is rather boisterous, it is true ; but he has so much openness, ingenuousness, & good nature, that it is impossible to find him importunate.

"Eh ! Que vois-je par tout ! La terre n' est couverte
Que *de* palais détruits, *de* trônes renversés,
Que *de* lauriers flétris, que *de* sceptres brisés."

EXAMPLES FOR *EN.*

La conversation d' aujourd'hui est toute *en* saillies—*en* menus propos—*en* équivoques—*en* calembours—*en* jolis riens.	The conversation of now-a-days is all *in* sallies—*in* trifling talk—*in* equivocals—*in* puns—*in* pretty trifles or nonsense.

"*En* Asie, *en* Afrique, *en* Europe & par-tout
La vertu ne peut rien ; & c' est l' or qui peut tout."

OBSERVATIONS.

FIRST.

Other *monosyllabic* Prepositions must, in general, be also *repeated* before each *complement* of theirs.

EXAMPLES.

Le jargon, ce ramage de société, consiste *dans* des tours de phrases particuliers ; *dans* un usage bizarre des mots ; *dans* l' art de relever de petites idées par des expressions recherchées : on peut le pardonner aux femmes, mais il est indigne d' un homme.	Jargon, this warbling of society, consists *in* particular turns of phrases ; *in* a whimsical usage of words ; *in* the art of setting off trifling ideas by means of affected expressions : it may be forgiven to women, but it is unworthy of men.
Les Ministres de la Religion se regardent comme les docteurs, les pères & les médecins des ames, *pour* les instruire de la pure doctrine du salut ; *pour* pourvoir à tous leurs besoins ; *pour* guérir leurs maux, *ou pour* les prévenir.	The Ministers of Religion look upon themselves as doctors, fathers, and physicians of souls, *to* instruct them in the pure doctrine of salvation ; *to* provide for all their wants ; *to* cure their sores, *or to* prevent them.

L' homme poli est patient, indulgent, généreux *sans* ivresse d' amour-propre ; *sans* écarts ridicules de vanité; *sans* humeur.	A polite man is patient, indulgent, generous *without* the intoxication of self-love ; *without* ridiculous flights of vanity ; *without* ill humour.

> " Comment opposerais-je au reste des humains
> Un stupide sauvage errant, à l' aventure ;
> A peine de nos traits conservant la figure ;
> Un misérable peuple, égaré dans les bois,
> *Sans* maître, *sans* états, *sans* villes & *sans* lois."

Prepositions of more than *one* syllable are *seldom* repeated, if the Nouns complementary, or the ideas they express, be ever so little *synonymous* or *congenial*.

EXAMPLE.

Aujourd' hui, pourvu qu' on entre dans un cercle *avec* un air d' importance & un habit de goût, on est sûr d' être bien accueilli.	Now-a-days, provided one enters a circle *with* an important air and a fashionable coat, he is sure of being well received.

But, should the complementary words have meanings totally *different*, the Preposition must commonly be *repeated*.

EXAMPLE.

Rien n' est moins *selon* Dieu & *selon* le monde.	Nothing is less *according to* God and *according to* the world.

I conclude by observing, that *custom* alone will acquaint you with every circumstance in which the *Prepositions* must be *repeated*, and when it is required that they should be expressed *only* before the *first* complement, as they are all, except *à*, *de* & *en*, liable to variations, which cannot be embraced by any rule.

SECOND.

En differs from *dans*, in this respect, that the *first* is always used in an *indefinite* sense, while the *second* is used in a *definitive* sense.

EXAMPLES FOR *EN*.

Il loge *en* chambre garnie.	He lodges *in* a furnished room.
Elle est *en* pension chez Madame A——	She is *at* board with Mrs. A——
Il est *en* chemin.	He is *a* coming.
Elle est *en* ville.	She is abroad.
Il vit *en* liberté.	He lives *at* ease.
Il entra *en* fureur.	He got *into* a fury.

EXAMPLES FOR *DANS*.

Vous le trouverez *dans* sa chambre.	You will find him *in* his room.
Elle est *dans* une pension.	She is *in* a boarding-house.
Il est *dans* le chemin.	He is *on* the road.
Elle est *dans* la ville.	She is *in* the city.
Il vit *dans* une grande liberté.	He lives *in* great liberty.
Il entra *dans* une fureur extrême.	He got *into* an extreme passion.

From the *indeterminate* meaning of *en* you would naturally infer that it ought not to be followed by the *Article;* but *exceptions* have crept into a few familiar modes of expressions such as the following:

Vous vous en allez à vue d' œil *en l'* autre monde.	You are visibly dying.
On l' a bien reçu *en l'* honneur de vous.	He has been well received *in* honour of you.
En l' honneur de quel saint vous voit-on à cette heure ?	Upon what account do we see you at this time?
Je n' ai voulu lui parler qu' *en la* présence de ses parens.	I wanted to speak to him, but in the presence of his relations.
Je n' ai pas voulu la voir *en l'* absence de son mari.	I would not see, *or* visit, her in the absence of her husband.

By attending to the following observations and remarks, you will become sensible of the *difference* in the use of *en*, *dans*, and *à*.

First,
Il arrivera *en* trois jours.
Il arrivera *dans* trois jours.

The *first* means that he will be three days coming.

The *second* means that three days will elapse before his coming.

Second,
Il est *à* la prison.
Il est *en* prison.
Il est *dans* la prison.

The *first* of the above cases, is construed to signify he is *voluntarily* gone to the prison.

The *second*, that he has been put there, *without any regard to his will.*

The *third* is doubtful or equivocal.

Third,
Les officiers sont *en* campagne.
Les officiers sont *à* la campagne.

The *first*, means that the officers are *on* the *field.*

The *second*, that they are *in* the *country*.

THIRD.

The Prepositions *dessus* and *dessous*, *dedans*, and *dehors*, cannot be used by themselves, they must be construed together and have the *same* complement.

EXAMPLES.

J' ai cherché *dessus* & *dessous* la table.	I look *upon* and *under* the table.
La fièvre jaune est *dedans* & *dehors* la ville.	The yellow fever is *within* and *without* the city.

These Prepositions are in the following phrases, of course, misapplied.

J' ai cherché *dessus* la table.
J' ai cherché *dessous* la table.
La fièvre jaune est *dedans* la ville.
La fièvre jaune est *dehors* la ville.

To render those phrases correct, the Prepositions *sur*, *sous*, *dans*, *hors de*, must be substituted for those used.

The above abuse has even crept into the poetry of *Racine* and *Desbarreaux*, as in these lines,

> " ——————————Ses sacrilèges mains
> " *Dessous* le même joug rangent tous les humains."
>
> " Mais *dessus* quel endroit tombera ton tonnerre
> " Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jésus Christ."

In order that *dessus*, *dessous*, *dedans*, *dehors*, may be used correctly by themselves, they must be *respectively* acted upon by *another* Preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Il a passé *par dedans*, ou *par dehors* la ville.	He has passed *within*, or *without* the town.
Il avait de l' eau *par dessus* la tête.	He had water *over* his head.
On l' a tiré *de dessus* les épines —*de dessous* les mines.	He was taken off *of* the thorns —from *under* the mines.
On l' a enlevé *par dessous* les bras.	They raised him by taking him *under* the arms.

In the conversation on the *Preposition*, I have shown you in what circumstance *dessus*, *dessous*, *dedans*, *dehors*, might be used *singly* and without any *complement;* to which, in order to avoid repetition, I now refer you.

FOURTH.

Durant & *pendant*, denote a duration of time, with this difference, that *durant*, is applied to what lasts any *illimited* time—and *pendant*, generally, to what lasts but a *short* time.

EXAMPLES.

Nos ennemis ont resté en quartiers d' hiver *durant* la campagne.	Our enemies have remained in winter quarters *during* the campaign.
Il est dangereux de sortir de chez soi *pendant* les grandes chaleurs.	It is dangerous to go out of one's house *during* the dog-days.

> “ Le régal fut fort honnête ;
> Rien ne manquait au festin ;
> Mais quelqu’ un troubla la fête,
> *Pendant* qu’ *ils* étaient en train. ”

Durant is the only Preposition that can be placed *after* its *complement*, as in the following phrases.

On lui fait une rente sa vie *durant.*	They pay him an annuity *during* his life.
Il a été absent six ans *durant.*	He has been absent *for* six years.

FIFTH.

The words *proche*, *près*, *hors*, require the Preposition *de* after them.—The only cases when it may be suppressed, are, in *directions* to *places* or in *conversation.*

EXAMPLES.

Il loge *proche* le Palais.	He lodges *near* the Court-house.
A Monsieur un tel *près* le cimetière des Innocens, à Paris.	To Mr. such-a-one, *near* the cemetery of the Innocents, at Paris.
Cette maison est située *hors* la ville.	This house is situated *out* of the city.

SIXTH.

Never make use of *vis-à-vis* in the sense of *envers*, *à l’ égard* &c. as a great many French people do : and instead of saying, “ les torts que j’ ai *vis-à-vis* de vous :” say,

Les torts que j’ ai *envers* vous, ou *à* votre *égard.*	The wrongs I have *towards* you, *or with regard* to you.

Keep *vis-à-vis* to express *physical* relations only ; as,

Il demeure *vis-à-vis* de mes fenêtres.	He lives *opposite* to my windows.

SEVENTH.

In prose prefer *avant de* to *avant que de;* but in verse the measure will fix the choice.

> " Ciel, ouvre-moi la tombe *avant de* m' avilir;
> De cent coups de poignard que l' infidelle meure:
> Mais, *avant de* frapper—ah! cher ami, demeure."
>
> " Vous êtes citoyenne *avant que* d' être mère."

EIGHTH.

Many people mistake the Preposition *près* for the Adjective *prêt*, s. m. *prête*, s. f. hence a gross counter-sense results; as when they say, " il était *prêt à* tomber," for " il était *près de* tomber;" since *prêt à*, signifies *disposé à*, ready to; and *près de*, signifies, sur le point de, upon the point of, near.

INSTRUCTION THE TWENTY-THIRD.

ON THE ADVERB.

RULE I.

The Adverb must be, in general, placed in a sentence *before* the *Adjective* or *Participle* which it modifies.

EXAMPLES.

On est *aisément* intéressé par des aspects divers, lors qu' on entre dans la carrière de la fortune: mais lorsqu' on est arrivé aux *plus* hautes places, les plaisirs de l' imagination finissent avec elles.	We are *easily* taken up with various prospects, when we enter into the career of fortune: but when we have reached the highest preferments, the pleasures of imagination end there.
—Tels on croit voir ces navigateurs qui après avoir *vainement* essayé de s' ouvrir un passage aux extrémités du monde, retournent tristement sur leurs pas, & considérant d' un œil morne & languissant les divers spectacles de la nature dont ils avaient été si *vivement* frappés; lorsque naguère ils traversaient les mers, l' esprit *vivement* ému par la curiosité & par l' espérance.	—Such we may represent those navigators, who, after having *vainly* tried to open to themselves a passage to the extremities of the world, sadly return back, and considering, with a sullen and languid look, the various sights of nature by which they had been so *lively* struck, when not long before they crossed the seas with a mind governed by curiosity and hope.

OBSERVATION.

There are circumstances in which *taste* alone can direct the proper use of the Adverbs of *quantity*, which may be placed either *before* or *after* the *Adjective*.—Thus, one may say with equal propriety,

Bonaparte est *ouvertement* ambitieux, *ou* ambitieux *ouvertement.*	Bonaparte is openly ambitious.

RULE II.

The *Adverb* is, in general, placed immediately *after* the *Verb*, in its *radical* tenses ; or *between* the *past* Participle and the *Auxiliary*, in its *compound* tenses.

EXAMPLES.

C'est le destin des choses humaines de n' avoir qu' une durée courte & rapide, & de tomber *aussitôt* dans l' éternel oubli d' où elles étaient sorties.—Mais, votre Eglise, Grand Dieu ! mais, le chef-d' œuvre admirable de votre sagesse & de votre miséricorde envers les hommes ; mais, votre empire, Maître Souverain des cœurs ! n' aura point d' autres bornes que celles de l' éternité.—Tout nous échappe, tout disparaît *sans cesse* autour de nous ; c' est une scène sur laquelle, à chaque instant, paraissent de nouveaux personnages qui ce remplacent ; & de tous ces rôles pompeux qu' ils ont joués, pendant le moment qu' on les a vus sur leur théâtre, il ne leur reste *à la fin* que le regret de voir finir la représentation & de ne se trouver *réellement* que ce qu' ils sont devant vous.	It is the fate of human things to have but a short lived and rapid duration, and to fall *instantly* into that eternal oblivion from which they had come.—But, your Church, Great God! but, the admirable master-piece of your wisdom and mercy towards man ; but, your empire Sovereign Master of hearts! will have no other limits but those of eternity.—Every thing flies from us ; all vanishes *incessantly* around us ; it is a scene on which every instant new performers appear to succeed one another ; and out of all those pompous parts they have played during the short period they were seen on their theatre, nothing remains to them, *in the end*, but the regret to see the end of the representation, and to find themselves before you, but what they *really* are.

"Il (Dieu) précède les tems; qui dira sa naissance?
Par lui l' homme, le ciel, la terre, tout commence,
Et lui seul infini, n' a *jamais* commencé."

EXCEPTION.

In the *compound* tenses of Verbs, one may, however, sometimes, place the *Adverb*, either *before* or *after* the *past* Participle.—Custom alone will direct you in that respect; thus, one may say equally well,

Les femmes l' ont *prodigieusement* gâté, *ou* l' ont gâté *prodigieusement*.	Women have *prodigiously* spoiled him.

Remark, that we place either *before* or *after* the Verb the Adverbs of *order* and *rank*, and those which denote *time* in a *determinate* manner; thus we may say,

Nous devons faire, *premièrement*, notre devoir; *secondement*, chercher les plaisirs permis.	We ought, *first*, to do our duty; *secondly*, love lawful pleasures.
Aujourd'hui il fait beau; il pleuvra, peut-être, *demain*.	*To-day* it is fine weather; it will rain, perhaps, *to-morrow*.
On servit *d' abord* la soupe & le bouilli, *ou d' abord* on servit la soupe & le bouilli.	The soup and bouilli were served up *first*.

OBSERVATIONS.

FIRST.

Davantage, which many people are apt to confound with *plus* and use for it, is, by no means, a *synonymous* expression with *plus*; the following distinguishes it particularly from that expression.

1st, It will admit neither the Preposition *de* nor the Conjunction *que* after it; do not say therefore,

"Si je reste ici j' aurai *davantage de* plaisir.
Il est aimé *davantage que* vous."

Instead of it in the above, use *plus ;* thus,

Si je reste ici, j' aurai *plus de* plaisir.	If I stay here I shall have *more* pleasure.
Il est *plus* aimé *que* vous.	He is *more* beloved *than* you.

2d, It is always placed *after* the word which it modifies and answers, in English, to *the more* when *the more* is not to be *repeated ;* say therefore,

Il en sera aimé *davantage*—(and not) Il en sera *davantage* aimé.	He will be *the more* loved for it.

3d, It is *never* construed with an *Adjective ;* therefore do not say,

Il est *davantage* prudent ou prudent *davantage.*	He is *more* wise.

4th, It can *never* be used in the sense of *le plus*, (the most) as many French do ; therefore do not say,

De toutes les fleurs d' un parterre, la rose est celle qui me plaît *davantage ;* (but) De toutes les fleurs d' un parterre, la rose est celle qui me plaît *le plus.*	Of all the flowers of a parterre the rose pleases me *most.*

SECOND.

Autant and *aussi* are often confounded in familiar discourse, as *synonymous* expressions, which is an error, as they are not so. Some French people say for instance,

> " Pierre est *autant* riche *que* Jacques ; ou,
> Pierre est riche *autant que* Jacques."

While they should say,

Pierre est *aussi* riche *que* Jacques.	Peter is *as* rich *as* James.

Should it be required to establish a *comparison* between two *qualities*, we should also make use of *aussi* ; as,

Il est *aussi* avare *que* soupçonneux.	He is *as* avaricious *as* suspicious.

In order that *autant* may be substituted for *aussi* in the above phrase, it must be placed between the *two* Adjectives and followed by *que;* as,

Il est avare *autant que* soupçonneux.	He is *as* avaricious *as* suspicious.

"L' Anglais, indépendant & libre *autant que* brave,
Des caprices de cour ne fut jamais esclave."

"Mais, Hélenus, sensible *autant que* généreux,
N' a jamais su, Seigneur, braver un malheureux."

Autant que may also serve as a *connection* between two phrases, as,

Je l' estime *autant que* je l' aime.	I esteem him *as much as* I love him.

When *autant* serves to compare the merit of *two* actions expressed by the *Infinitive* of two Verbs, one must not fail of joining the Preposition *de* to the *que* which precedes the *second* action—Hence, the following phrases, where this Preposition is *omitted*, are incorrect.

Il vaut *autant* écrire *que* parler,
J' aime *autant* le faire tout à l' heure *que* différer.

One must say,

Il vaut *autant* écrire que *de* parler.	It is *as well* to write *as* to speak.
J' aime *autant* le faire tout à l' heure que *de* différer.	I like *as well* to do it immediately *as* to procrastinate.

Autant does not modify an *Adverb*—Therefore the following sentence is incorrect.

Ils les régalèrent *autant bien que* pouvait le permettre la pauvreté de leur pays.	They treated them *as well as* the poverty of their country would allow.

From what precedes we shall establish as a principle the difference between *aussi* and *autant* to be as follows;

Aussi is the proper modificative of an *Adverb*, and never of the *quality* expressed in the *Verb*. *Autant never* modifies the Adverb, and *seldom* the quality; and when it does, it must be followed by *que* and placed between the two *Adjectives* it modifies. *Autant* modifying the quality expressed in the Verb, must be followed then by *que de* or simply *que*, according as the Verb is or is not in the Infinitive mood.—When *autant* is used to express a *comparison*, the *que*, which, in the above cases, is inseparable from *autant*, is supplied by *de*, and is placed *between* the two objects compared, or relating to each other.

EXAMPLES.

Il a *autant de* vertu *que de* talens.	He has *as much* virtue *as* talents.
Cette pièce de vers offre *autant de* beautés *qu'* aucune pièce quelconque de Voltaire.	This piece of poetry offers *as many* beauties *as* any piece of Voltaire.
L' armée de Léonidas, composée de trois cents hommes, avait *autant de* héros *que de* soldats.	The army of Leonidas, composed of three hundred men, had *as many* heroes *as* soldiers.

There are several authors that have made use of *autant comme*, instead of *autant que*.

EXAMPLES.

Ils étaient courageux *autant comme* les meilleurs soldats de l' Empire.	They were *as* courageous *as* the best soldiers of the Empire.
Le vrai brave conserve son jugment au milieu du péril avec *autant de* présence d' esprit *comme* s' il n' y était pas.	The truly brave keeps up his judgment amidst danger, with *as much* presence of mind *as* if he were not in it.

It is a mistake, and to rectify it, *que* must be substituted for *comme*. It is also a mistake to use *comme* after *aussi*, as in the following sentence.

> " Tant qu' a duré la guerre on m' a vu constamment
> *Aussi* bon citoyen *comme* fidèle amant."

Que should have been used instead of *comme*, but the line would be deficient in *one* syllable.

Instead of *autant* we make use of *tant*, when there is *no comparison*, as,

Il a *tant* de richesses qu' on ne saurait les compter.	He has *so mnch* wealth that it cannot be reckoned.
Cette pièce de vers offre *tant* de beautés que je l' aurais crue de Voltaire.	This piece of poetry presents *so many* beauties, that I would have thought it was Voltaire's.

THIRD.

Si (so) is used to give some *extension* to a qualification and not, in general, to express a *comparison*.

EXAMPLES.

Il est *si* bon qu' il n'a pas son pareil.	He is *so* good that nobody is like him.
Un corps *si* faible ne saurait résister à la fatigue.	*So* weakly a body cannot withstand fatigue.
Elle vous aime *si* tendrement que vous ne pouvez vous défendre du retour.	She loves you *so* tenderly that you cannot help loving her in return.
Il n' est pas *si* fin qu' on ne puisse bien le jouer.	He is not *so* cunning but some tricks may be played upon him.

In the above phrases it would be an egregious blunder to use *aussi* instead of *si*—*Aussi* should be used only when a *comparison* is made, and there is *none* in the above examples.

Some authors, and the French Academy, are of opinion, that *si* may be used as an Adverb of *comparison*, when attended with a *negative* : so that one may say with equal propriety,

Il *n'* est pas *si* ou *aussi* avancé qu' il le paraît.	He is *not so* forward as he appears to be.
Il *n'* est pas *si* ou *aussi* estimé que lui.	He is *not as* much esteemed as he.

For my part, from attentive reading of the most polished writers, I have observed that many would prefer *aussi* in the above examples. Several excellent grammatical authorities are also for giving a decided preferrence to *aussi*, in the case of a *comparison;* and for not using *si*, when a comparison is expressed, which establishes a striking *difference* between *aussi* and *si:* the *former* being an Adverb of *comparison;* the *latter* an Adverb used only when it is necessary to extend a *qualification.*

FOURTH.

When we wish to raise a *qualification* by a *comparison*, sometimes we are at a loss whether to make use of *plus* or *mieux* before it. In this case, the attention ought to be directed to the *qualification.* If it be susceptible of extention, *plus* must be used. If it be susceptible of improvement, *mieux* must be used. Thus, *plus* is used in the following phrases, because the quality is *extended.*

Guillaume est *plus* leger à la course qu' Etienne.	William is *more* nimble in the race than Stephen.
Marie est *plus* laborieuse que Sylvie.	Maria is *more* industrious than Sylvia.

And *mieux*, in the following phrases, because the quality is susceptible of *perfection.*

Julie est *mieux* faite que Jeanne.	Julia is *better* made than Joan.
Palmyre est *mieux* mise qu' Elizabeth.	Palmyra is *better* dressed than Elizabeth.

In the following sentence *plus* and *mieux* are both used in their *natural* acceptation.

L' Abbé Prévôt a *plus* écrit que Fénélon; mais Fénélon a *mieux* écrit que l' Abbé Prévôt.	The Abbe Prevot has written *more* than Fenelon; but Fenelon has written *better* than the Abbe Prevot.

In the *first* member *plus* relates to the *number* of volumes; and *mieux*, in the *second*, relates to the *perfection* of style.

The following is to acquaint you with a *mistake* but too common in French, against which you should take care to guard.

J' ai gagné *mieux* de cent fiches au jeu.	I have won *more* than one hundred fishes at play.
C' est une terre qui vaut *mieux* de cent mille livres de rente.	It is an estate which is worth *more* than one hundred thousand livres a year.

Plus must be substituted for *mieux*, to render the above phrases correct.

I will conclude by observing that when *better*, in English, is followed by *two* Infinitives, the Verb corresponding to the second must be preceded, in French, by the Preposition *de*.

La maxime des paresseux est celle des habitans de l' Indostan ; qu' il vaut *mieux* s' assoir que *de* marcher ; se coucher que *de* s' assoir ; dormir que *de* veiller ; & mourir que *de* vivre.	The maxim of the lazy, is that of the inhabitants of Indostan ; that it is *better* to sit down than *to* walk ; to lie down than *to* sit ; to sleep than *to* watch ; and to die than *to* live.

FIFTH.

If *que* follows the Adverbs *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *pis*, *autrement ;* the Adjectives *meilleur*, *moindre*, *pire*, *autre* ; the Verbs *empêcher*, *craindre*, *avoir-peur*, *appréhender*, *prendre garde ;* and the conjunctions *de crainte que*, *de peur que ; ne* should always be placed between *it* and the *succeeding* Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Les louanges sont *plus* utiles qu' on *ne* se l' imagine : comme le vin elles fortifient quand elles n' enivrent pas.	Praises are *more* useful than one thinks : like wine, they are strengthening when they do not intoxicate.

Voltaire has therefore committed a *mistake*, when, in *Orestes* he makes *Electra* say to the *Furies ;*

> " Accourez de l' enfer en ces horribles lieux,
> En ces lieux *plus* cruels & *plus* remplis de crimes
> Que vos gouffres profonds (*) régorgent de victimes."

* *Ne* should have been used here before *regorgent ;* but the line would have been *deficient* in its measure.

Les gens qui s' expriment avec le plus de facilité, sont quelquefois souvent beaucoup *moins* instruits qu' on *ne* pense	People who express themselves with most ease, are sometimes much *less* enlightened than we think.
Il se porte beaucoup *mieux* qu' il *ne* fesait.	He is much *better* than he was.
C' est bien *pis* qu' on *ne* l' a dit, ma foi !	It is much *worse* than it has been said, faith !
La chose est tout *autrement* que vous *ne* le croyez.	The thing is quite *otherwise* than what you believe.
Il n' est pas *meilleur* écolier qu' il *n'* était.	He is not a *better* scholar than he was.
Cette somme n' est pas *moindre* qu' elle *n'* était.	This sum is not *less* than it was.
Les passions nous font voir souvent les objets tout *autres* qu' ils *ne* sont.	Passions often make us see objects quite *different* from what they are.
Lorsqu' on vous flatte, *appréhendez* qu' on *ne* vous trompe.	When you are flattered, *fear* lest you should be deceived.
Lors même que vous louez un homme vain, il est à *craindre* qu' il *ne* soit très-mécontent de vous ; car si vous restez en deçà de l' opinion qu' il a de lui-même, il oubliera ce que vous lui avez dit, pour ne penser qu' à ce que vous auriez dû lui dire.	Even when you praise a vain man, it is to be *feared* that he will be very much displeased at you ; for, if you fall short of the good opinion he has conceived of himself, he will forget what you have told him, to think only of what you should have told him.
Un homme d' esprit conseillait à son ami de ne se faire jamais attendre, *de peur que*, ou *de crainte que*, celui qui l' attendrait *n'* eût le tems de faire l' énumération de ses défauts.	A man of understanding advised one of his friends never to cause himself to be waited for, *for fear*, or *lest*, he who would wait for him should have time to make an enumeration of all his defects.

It is essential to remark, that, if the above Verbs *empêcher*, &c. intervene between the negatives *ne* & *pas*, or *ne* & *point*, the negative *ne* can no longer be used after the *que*.—Hence Racine committed an *error*, when he said,

> " Vous souffrez qu' il vous parle & vous ne *craignez* pas,
> Que du fond de l' abyme entr' ouvert sous vos pas,
> Il *ne* sorte à l' instant des feux qui vous embrasent,
> Ou qu' en tombant sur lui, ces murs *ne* vous écrasent."

SIXTH.

Pas & *point* are suppressed—1st, before *jamais*, *guère*, & *plus*, when they are intended to express *time;* before *nul*, *aucun*, *rien*, *personne*, *nullement*, and *que*, in the expression *ne que*, meaning *seulement*.

EXAMPLES.

Un lâche peut combattre ; un lâche peut même vaincre ; mais un lâche *ne* peut *jamais* pardonner, dit Addison.	A coward may fight; a coward may even conquer; but a coward can *never* forgive, says Addison.

J' en suis assez punie—Il est donc des forfaits
Que le courroux des Dieux *ne* pardonne *jamais*.

Il *n'* a *guère* d' argent à dépenser.	He has *but little* money to spend.
Il *n'* a *guère* resté auprès de vous.	He did *not* stay *long* with you.
Il *n'* est *plus* en ville, j' en suis sûr.	He is *no longer* in town, I am sure.

" C' en est fait, mes amis, il *n'* est *plus* de patrie,
Plus de honneur, plus de lois, Rome est anéantie."

Ce *n'* est l' opinion de *nul* d' entr' eux.	It is the opinion of *none* of them.
Je *ne* l' ai communiqué à *nul* de ceux qui pouvaient en abuser.	I have communicated it to *none* of those who might have made a bad use of it.
Je *ne* connais *aucun* de ces Messieurs.	I know *none* of those Gentlemen.
Qui n' a besoin de rien *n'* est *jamais* pauvre.	He who wants nothing is *never* poor.

There is an example of *rien*, attended by its *negative* in the following epitaph of *La Fontaine*, written by himself.

" Jean s' en alla comme il était venu,
Mangeant son fonds après son revenu,
Et crut les biens chose peu nécessaire.
Quant à son tems, bien sut le dispenser,
Deux parts en fit, dont il voulait passer,
L' une à dormir, & l' autre à *ne rien* faire."

J' avoue que je *ne* m' attendais *nullement* à cette bonne aubaine.	I confess that I did *not* expect that good luck *in the least*.
Je *ne* vis *personne* qui pût en venir à bout.	I saw *nobody* that could bring it about.
Il faut, disait Chilon, oublier le bien qu' on fait aux autres & *ne* se ressouvenir *que* de celui qu' on reçoit.	We ought, said Chilon, to forget the good we do to others, and remember *only* that which we receive.

2d, After the Verbs *oser*, *cesser*, *pouvoir* and *savoir* followed by *si*.

EXAMPLES.

Vos Saints, Grand Dieu ! ont paru intrépides devant les tyrans ; ils vous ont confessé au milieu des roues & des feux ; & je *n' oserais* vous rendre gloire, au milieu de votre peuple, par la crainte de quelques censures ! Je *ne cesserai* de vous bénir publiquement, puisque vous *ne cessez* vous-même de me combler de vos saintes bénédictions. C' est vous promettre un culte aussi durable que votre éternelle providence. Je *ne puis* rappeler, Grand Dieu ! l' excès de vos miséricordes, sans rappeler, en même tems, l' excès honteux de mes désordres.	Your Saints, Great God ! have shown intrepidity before tyrants ; they have avowed you in the midst of fires and tortures on the wheels ; and I would not *dare* to glorify you, in the midst of your people, through the fear of a few censures ! I will not *cease* to bless you publickly, since you do not *cease* to load me with your holy blessings. It is promising you a worship as lasting as your eternal providence. I *cannot*, Great God ! recall the excess of your mercies, without recalling, at the same time, the shameful excess of my disorderly life.
Je *ne sais* s' il ira vous voir.	I do not *know* whether he will go to see you.

I will conclude this account of the *Adverb* by observing that the negatives *pas* & *point* are not entirely synonymous, and by establishing, with Girard, their true *difference*.

Pas expresses simply the negation.

Point expresses it in a strong and undeniable manner.

The *former* often denies the thing but *partly*, or with *modification*. The *second* denies it *always* in an *absolute* manner, *totally*, and without reserve.—This is the reason why the one is very well placed before modifications, while the other would appear there with a very bad grace.

Thus we can say with *pas*,

Il *n'* a *pas* même le nécessaire.	He has *not* even a competency.

But if you would make use of *point*, the *modification* should be *suppressed*, and you should say,

Il *n'* a *point* le nécessaire.

This is also the reason that *pas* is always used with words which serve to express the *degree* of *quality* or *quantity;* such as *beaucoup*, *fort*, *très*, *bien*, *un* and the like.—That *point* suits better at the *end* of a sentence, before the Preposition *de*, with *du tout*, which, instead of *limiting* the negative, *confirms* the totality thereof.

EXAMPLES FOR *PAS.*

Pour l' ordinaire, il *n'* y a *pas* beaucoup d' argent chez les gens de lettres.	Commonly, men of letters have *not* much money.
La plupart des philosophes *ne* sont *pas* fort raisonnables.	The greatest part of philosophers are *not* very reasonable.
Qui *n'* a *pas* un sou à dépenser, *n'* a *pas* un grain de mérite à faire paraître.	He has *not* a grain of sense to show, who has *not* a penny to spend.

EXAMPLES FOR *POINT.*

Si pour avoir du bien, il en coûte à la probité, je *n'* en veux *point.*	If to obtain property, probity must be sacrificed, I do *not* want any.
Il *n'* y a *point* de ressource dans une personne qui n' a *point* d' esprit.	There is *no* resource in an individual deficient in understanding.
Rien *n'* est sûr avec les capricieux : vous croyez être bien ; *point du tout ;* l' instant de la plus belle humeur est suivie de la plus fâcheuse.	Nothing is sure with capricious people : you think you are on good terms ; *by no means :* the moment when they are in the best humour is followed by the worst.

THE END.

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

THOMAS JEFFERSON,

President of the United States of America.—6 copies.

The liberal Editors of News-Papers, whose zeal for the progress of useful science in our country, has induced them to publish, free of expense, the Proposals for this work, are, not only considered by the Author as entitled to a copy each, but their names, as the expression of his gratitude, set down as subscribers, viz.

Bronson & Chauncey, Gazette U. S. Philadelphia.
Black, William, Editor of the Federal Ark, Wilmington.
Dobbins, Thomas, Telegraph, Baltimore.
Lyon & Morse, Georgia Republican, Savannah.
Marschalk, Andrew, Missisippi Herald, Natchez.
Puglia, James, Phœnix of Harrisburgh.
Pennington, —— Sentinel of Freedom, Newark.
Rind, Wm. A. Washington Federalist, Washington.
Smith, Sam. Harrison, National Intelligencer, do.
Wilson James, Mirror of the Times, Wilmington.

A.

Arden, Miss Louisa A.	New York,	N. Y.
Arden, Thos. L. 12 copies,	do.	do.
Arcambal, L.	do.	do.
Agnel, P. C.	do.	do.
Aird, John,	do.	do.
Akin, John,	Poughkeepsie co.	do.
Annin, Joseph,	Cayuga Bridge,	do.
Anderson, Hon. Joseph,		T.
Anderson, Leroy, P. M.	Williamsburgh,	Va.
Anderson, Robert,	do.	do.
Anderson, John B.	do.	do.
Alexander, Isaac,	Charlotte,	N. C.
Allison, William,	do.	do.
Appling, William,	Columbia co.	Ga.
Appling, John,	do.	do.
Arnold, Joseph,	Savannah,	do.

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

Ancelin, Mr.	Princeton,	N. J.
Allinson, David, 6 copies,	Burlington,	do.
Archer, B. Harris, M. D.	Baltimore,	Md.
Allinder, Jos. M. D.	do.	do.
Aiken, Geo.	do.	do.
Anderson, J. I.	Washington City,	C. T.
Amory, N.	New Orleans,	La.
Abercrombie, Rev. Jas. A. M.	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Auriol, Augustus,	do.	do.
Andrews, Robert,	do.	do.
Alberti, Georges F. M. D.	do.	do.
Atkinson, Mathew,	Northumberland,	do.
Albrecht, F. M. D.	Harrisburgh,	do.

B.

Bordley, Miss Eliza,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Beck, Mrs.	do.	do.
Bradford, Samuel, 15 copies,	do.	do.
Brognard, John S. 2 do.	do.	do.
Binghurst, John G.	do.	do.
Bazeley, Wm. E.	do.	do.
Bleight, Samuel, M. D.	do.	do.
Bache, Richard,	do.	do.
Brugière, Charles,	do.	do.
Badaraque, Theodore,	do.	do.
Barton, B. M. D.	do.	do.
Bousquet, Augustine,	do.	do.
Barkley, E. M. D.	do.	do.
Butler, John,	do.	do.
Banks, Henry, 2 copies,	Richmond,	Va.
Banks, Gerard, 2 do.	Louisa co.	do.
Brockenbrough, W.	Richmond,	do.
Brook, Francis,	Fredericksburgh,	do.
Bartee, Wm.	New-Bridge,	do.
Bright, Solomon, P. M.	do.	do.
Bright, James,	Princess Ann,	do.
Bright, Wm.	do.	do.
Bright, John,	do.	do.
Bright, Henry,	do.	do.
Bataile, L.	Bowling-Green,	do.
Broaddus, Christopher G.	do.	do.
Bankhead, John, M. D.	Port Royal,	do.
Bernard, Wm. 2 copies,	do.	do.
Brown, John,	Staunton,	do.
Blow, Geo.	Norfolk,	do.
Baker, Jerman,	Cumberland,	do.
Brown, Samuel,	Baltimore,	Md.

Blaud, Theodorick,	do.	do.
Borland, Thomas,	do.	do.
Belton, William,	do.	do.
Buckanan, J. A.	do.	do.
Bond, Thomas E.	do.	do.
Blair, James,	do.	do.
Barry, Garrett,	do.	do.
Burk, James,	do.	do.
Boland, Alexander, M. D.	do.	do.
Buchanan, Robert,	do.	do.
Boure, Washington,	Georgetown,	do.
Black, Thomas W. M. D.	Charlestown,	do.
Brye, J. Robert,	Annapolis,	do.
Buchanan, Thomas,	do.	do.
Boyle, E. M.	Washington City,	C. T.
Blodget, Samuel,	Washington,	do.
Bush, David,	Wilmington,	D.
Bolitho, Benjamin,	New-Castle,	do.
Barratt, John,	Princeton,	N. J.
Boudinot, Tobias,	Burlington,	do.
Bloomfield, Jos.	Trenton,	do.
Baldwin, David C.	Newark,	do.
Blair, Hugh,	Columbia co.	Ga.
Baldwin, A.	Augusta,	do.
Bolton, Curtis,	Savannah,	do.
Berrien, I. Macpherson,	do.	do.
Bogardus, William W.	Poughkeepsie,	N. Y.
Brush, John,	do.	do.
Bockel, Abraham,	do.	do.
Birdsall, Lewis,	Cayuga-Bridge,	do.
Buckley, Hugh,	do.	do.
Bowden, John, D. D. 2 copies,	New-York,	do.
Blancard, Samuel,	do.	do.
Bockman, J. K.	do.	do.
Bosse, J. L. jun.	Newport,	R. I.
Beck, J. E.	Fayetteville,	N. C.
Blount, Thomas H.	Washington,	do.
Bowman, Samuel,	Charlotte,	do.
Beaty, William,	do.	do.
Brown, James Noice,	do.	do.
Butler, Hon. William,	Edgefield,	S. C.
Bangs, Edward,	Worcester,	Ms.
Benade, Andrew, 3 copies,	Bethlehem,	Pa.
Brown, Hon. Robert,	do.	do.
Boggs, William,	Pittsburgh,	do.
Brendle, William,	Harrisburgh,	do.
Bates, Tarleton,	Pittsburgh,	do.
Brown, Samuel,	Lexington,	Ky.

Buntin, Robert,	Vincennes,	N. T.
Beckez, Benjamin,	do.	do.
Bullitt, William, jun.	do.	do.

C.

Caroll, J. R. C. Bishop,	Baltimore,	Md.
Clandinen, Adam, M. D.	do.	do.
Coates, Samuel, M. D.	do.	do.
Chatard, —— M. D.	do.	do.
Combs, Samuel,	do.	do.
Cochran, William C. & co.	do.	do.
Caldwell, John,	do.	do.
Claude, Abraham,	Annapolis,	do.
Chase, Richard M.	do	do.
Cist, Jacob,	Washington City,	C. T.
Coningham, Cornelius,	do.	do.
Cliosophic Society,	Princeton,	N. J.
Colston, Edward,	do.	do.
Chrystie, John,	do.	do.
Carter, Sandon,	do.	do.
Cadwallader, Lambert,	Trenton,	do.
Cumming, John N.	Newark,	do.
Crawford Nathan,	Columbia co.	Ga.
Crawford, Joel,	Augusta,	do.
Catonnet, P.	Savannah,	do.
Cowling, John G.	do.	do.
Cropsey, Jasper,	New York,	N. Y.
Crolius, Clarkson,	do.	do.
Campbell, William,	do.	do.
Campan, I. F.	do.	do.
Crommeline, James,	do.	do.
Cochran, Robert,	Fayetteville,	N. C.
Campbell, Green H.	do.	do.
Carrington, Charles,	Washington,	do.
Cowan, David,	Charlotte,	do.
Clark, Jones,	do.	do.
Creyon. John William,	Columbia,	S. C.
Casey, Hon. Levy,	Newbury,	do.
Cox, N.	Lexington,	Ky.
Clay, Porter,	do.	do.
Collins, Rev. Nicholas, R. S. C.	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Carey, Mathew, 16 copies,	do.	do.
Conrad & co. 15 do.	do.	do.
Collins & co. 12 do.	do.	do.
Carr, Rev. Mathew,	do.	do.
Cooper, Rev. Ezek.	do.	do.
Coxe, Tench,	do.	do.
Church, John, M. D.	do.	do.

Carpentier, L. D.	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Creyon, Thomas W. H.	do.	do.
Chaudron, J. S.	do.	do.
Caldwell, Charles, M. D.	do.	do.
Conover, Samuel F. M. D.	do.	do.
Chandler, Samuel,	Germantown,	do.
Conrad, Hon. Frederick,	Montgomery co.	do.
Culbertson, James,	Canonsburg,	do.
Cochran, Georges,	Pittsburgh,	do.
Cramer, Tadoh, 2 copies,	do.	do.
Craig, Isaac,	do.	do.
Canington, P.	Charlotte,	Va.
Coleman, Samuel,	Richmond,	do.
Currie, James,	do.	do.
Copland, Charles,	do.	do.
Carter, William,	do.	do.
Carter, Gilford,	Fredericksburgh,	do.
Coleman, Benjamin W.	Bowling-Green,	do.
Coleman, Daniel,	do.	do.

D.

Dubourg, Rev. William,	Baltimore,	Md.
Ducatel, Edme, M. D.	do.	do.
Duncan, L. M. M. D.	do.	do.
Delaporte, F.	do.	do.
Delaplaine, J.	Washington City,	C. T.
Dickinson, John, 2 copies,	Wilmington,	D.
Dodge, Rev. Daniel,	do.	do.
Darlington, William,	do.	do.
Daniel, Peter,	Princeton,	N. J.
Dick, Archibald,	do.	do.
Dusenbury, Caleb,	do.	do.
Duncan, Robert,	do.	do.
De Viar, Jos. Ignace,	Trenton,	do.
Dickerson, Aaron,	Morristown,	do.
Dornin, Bernard, 2 copies,	New-York,	N. Y.
Devilleret, Mr.	do.	do.
Dalzel, Robert,	do.	do.
Durell, Wm.	do.	do.
Duross, Mr.	do.	do.
Dobbins, Leo.	Pittsburg,	Pa.
Dunlap, Joseph,	Canonsburg,	do.
De Benneville, Daniel,		do.
Du Ponceau, Peter, S.	Philadelphia,	do.
D'Orlic, Mr.	do.	do.
Desauque, Lewis,	do.	do.
Dalligny, Mr.	do.	do.

Descuret, Lewis,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Dewees, W. P. M. D.	do.	do.
Doran, John,	do.	do.
Davis, Wm.	do.	do.
Davis, Edward,	Richmond,	Va.
Duval, Wm.	do.	do.
Henly, Barthw. D.	Williamsburg,	do.
Decker, Luke,	Vincennes,	N. T.
Dubois, Toussaint,	do.	do.
Dean, David C.	Lexington,	Ky.
Downing, Samuel,	do.	do.
Daveiss, Joseph Hamilton,	do.	do.
Dickson, Wm. P. M.	Greenville,	T.

E.

Edwards, Jon.	Baltimore,	Md.
Eddy, Thomas,	New-York,	N. Y.
Ellery, Wm.	Newport,	R. I.
Easton, Edward, Jun.	do.	do.
Early, Hon. Peter,	Augusta,	Ga.
Early, Clement, 2 copies,	do.	do.
Edwards, Wm.	Saundersville,	do.
Earle, Hon. J. B.	Pendleton district,	S. C.
Eustis Hon. William,	Boston,	Ms.
Elder, Jacob,	Harrisburg,	Pa.
Edmondson, John,	Staunton,	Va.
Edwards, Richard,	Williamsburg,	do.

F.

Fenwick, Athanas,	Leonardtown,	Md.
Finister, Alex.	Baltimore,	do.
Foard, J. Rasin,	do.	do.
Fox, Thomas,	do.	do
Field, Robert,	do.	do.
Frick, John,	do.	do.
Forbes, John, jun.	do.	do.
Fowler, Theod.	New-York,	N. Y.
Flagg, Samuel,	Worcester,	Ms.
Fraisier, Ignace, 12 copies,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Fortune, Mich.	do.	do.
Fager, John,	do.	do.
Ferguson, Robert,	do.	do.
Fox, John,	do.	do.
Fahnestock, Henry,	Harrisburg,	do.
Frazer, W. C.	New-Castle,	D.
Ferrell, Keeling,	Princeton,	N. J.

Frelinghuysen, Theod.	Princeton,	N. J.
Finley, Mich. A.	do.	do.
Farrow, John W.	do.	do.
Flinn Rev. Andrew,	Fayetteville,	N. C.
Frew, Archibald, P. M. 2 copies,	Charlotte,	do.
Flinn, Joseph,	do.	do.
Fasley, Francis,	do.	do.
Fleming, Wm.	Chesterfield,	Va.
Fitzhugh, Nichs.	Fairfax county,	do.
Fairchild, Lewis,	Savannah,	Ga.

G.

Gevaudan, Mrs. Rose,	Baltimore,	Md.
Giraud, —— M. D.	do.	do.
Gooding, John,	do.	do.
Gwynn, Wm.	do.	do.
Golden, A.	Annapolis,	do.
Gassaway, John,	do.	do.
Gassaway, Henry,	Arundel co.	do.
Gilmore, Wm.	Taneyton,	do.
Glover, Charles,	Washington city,	C. T.
Grenier, Gabriel,	New-York,	N. Y.
Gillepsie, Robert,	do.	do.
Giraud, M. A. A.	Boston,	Ms.
Gardner, Jesse B.	Saundersville,	Ga.
Grandmaison, P.	Savannah,	do.
Gibson, James,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Gerhard, Wm.	do.	do.
Gardette, James,	do.	do.
Guieu, E, and I. Bion, 2 copies,	do.	do.
Girard, Stephen,	do.	do.
Green, Rev. Ashbel, D. D.	do.	do.
Griffitts, Samuel P. M. D.	do.	do.
Gibbons, Wm. jun.	Wilmington,	D.
Gibson, Edward R.	do.	do.
Gibbes, Mrs. Ann,	Princeton,	N. J.
Grant, Ebenezer,	New-Brunswick,	do.
Grandmont, I. P. R.	Trenton,	do.
Garrett, Henry,	New-Brunswick,	do.
Guthrie, J. W.	Washington,	N. C.
Griew, Thomas,	Charlotte,	do.
Gibson, Patrick,	Richmond,	Va.
Grymes, P. jun.	do.	do.
Griffin, Hon. Thomas,	Yorktown,	do.
Gray, Hon. Edwin,	Jerusalem,	do.
Goodwin, Hon. Peterson,	Dinwiddie co.	do.
Garnett, James M.	Essex co.	do.

Garber, Mich. jun.	Staunton,	Va.
Girardin, L. H.	Williamsburgh,	do.
Grayson, Alfred Wm.	Lexington,	Ky.
Graham, Rev. ——	do.	do.
Gibson, John, sen.	Vincennes,	N. T.
Gibson, John, jun.	do.	do.

H.

Hammond, W.	Annapolis,	Md.
Holland, L.	Baltimore,	do.
Heeks, James,	do.	do.
Hanson, A. C.	do.	do.
Hayes, R.	do.	do.
Hintze, Chs.	do.	do.
Hampton, W.	Washington City,	C. T.
Hughes, Peter,	Cayuga-Bridge,	N. Y.
Hamilton, Gen'l. Alexander,	New-York,	do.
Hagardon, John,	Newport,	R. I.
Hamilton, James,	Columbia co.	Ga.
Houston, Geo. Smith, 2 copies,	Augusta,	do.
Howard, John,	Saundersville,	do.
Hastings, Hon. Seth,	Mendon,	Ms.
Harris, Robert, jun. 2 copies,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Helfenstein, Rev. Samuel,	do.	do.
Hitchcock, Daniel,	do.	do.
Hall, John,	do.	do.
Hollinback, Alexander,	do.	do.
Hembel, William,	do.	do.
Hagenau, Heinrick,	do.	do.
Hollingshead, Edmond,	do.	do.
Hovendon, R. P.	do.	do.
Huston, Mathew,	Germantown,	do.
Hanna, Hon. John A.	Pittsburg,	do.
Henderson, Angus,	Canonsburg,	do.
Hamilton, Charles,	Wilmington,	D.
Hanson, Mrs. Susanna,	do.	do.
Hukell, Levi,	do.	do.
Hiley, William,	Newark,	N. J.
Hall, Ross,	New Brunswick,	do.
Hutson, Thomas,	Princeton,	do.
Hart, N. G.	do.	do.
Hughes, Christopher,	do.	do.
Hairston, R.	do.	do.
Habersham, Richard W.	do.	do.
Howard, Jn. E.	do.	do.
Hazard, Erskein,	do.	do.
Hanraham, Walter,	Washington,	N. C.

Hanraham, W. junr.	Washington,	N. C.
Howard, J. H.	do.	do.
Hall, Thomas,	do.	do.
Hunter, Henry,	Williamston,	do.
Harris, James,	Charlotte,	do.
Harris, Jonathan,	do.	do.
Hay, John, L. L. D.	Fayetteville,	do.
Husk, John,	do.	do.
Hylton, Daniel,	Richmond,	Va.
Hags, Geo.	do.	do.
Heath, John,	do.	do.
Hord, Thomas,	Caroline co.	do.
Holslead, Richard,	New-Bridge,	do.
Harrison, Edmund,	Amelia co.	do.
Haskens, Thomas,	Prince Edward co.	do.
Harrison, William, P. M.	Genito Bridge,	do.
Hieks, Thomas,	Bowling-Green,	do.
Holt, William C.	Norfolk,	do.
Harrison, Wm. Henry, GOVN.	Vincennes,	N. T.
Hamilton, Joseph,	Jefferson co.	T.

I.

Ingersoll, Jos. Reed,	Princeton,	N. J.
Irwin, Jared,	Saundersville,	Ga.
Irwin, John,	Westmoreland co.	Pa.
Irish, Willaim B.	Pittsburgh,	do.

J.

Jones, Morris,	Tanneytown,	Md.
Johnson, Edward,	Baltimore,	do.
Johnson, Chirstopher,	do.	do.
Johnson, Samuel,	Charleston,	S. C.
Johnston, Lewis, jun.	Savannah,	Ga.
Jacobs, W. S. M. D.	Philadelphia,	Pa.
James, Thomas C. M. D.	do.	do.
John, Evangelist,	Pittsburgh,	do.
Jones, Arnold E.	Princeton,	N. J.
Johnson, Thomas P.	do.	do.
Jones, David, M. D.	New-Bridge,	Va.
Johnson, Edward,	Powhatan co.	do.
Jamison, John, jun.	Staunton,	do.
Johnston, G. Washington, P. M.	Vincennes,	N. T.
Johnson, John,	do.	do.
Jones, John Rice,	do.	do.
Jordan, Josh. P. M.	Lexington,	Ky.

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

K.

Kirk, John R.	Elkton,	Md.
Kearnes, James H.	Washington City,	C. T.
King, Kicholas,	do.	do.
Kerr, William,	Wilmington,	D.
Kirkpatrick, Jacob,	Princeton,	N. J.
Kennedy, William,	Washington,	N. C.
Keais, William,	do.	do.
Kinney, Charles,	Staunton,	Va.
Kuikendall, Jacob, M. D.	Vincennes,	N. T.

L.

Lockerman, Richard,	Annapolis,	Md.
Lloyd, Edward,	do.	do.
Leclaire, Lewis, M. D.	Baltimore,	do.
Lourcy, Robert R.	do.	do.
Lecler, Francis,	do.	do.
Lewis, William Y.	do.	do.
Lincoln, Hon. Levi, 2 copies,	Worcester,	Ms.
Lillibridge, Thomas,	Savannah,	Ga.
Lackrider, Daniel Wm. M. D.	New York,	N Y.
Linn, William,	do.	do.
Livingston, John H.	do.	do.
Lee, Richard,	do.	do.
L' Hotelier, E.	do.	do.
Livingston, John R.	do.	do.
Livingston, Brockhurst,	do.	do.
La Roche, R. Dr. M. M.	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Laval, John,	do.	do.
Le Couteulx, ——	do.	do.
Lynch, Edward,	do.	do.
Lewis, John,	do.	do.
Lilly, Robert,	do.	do.
Logan, Thomas F.	do.	do.
Lucas, Hon. John B. C.	Pittsburgh,	do.
Luther, Martin,	Harrisburg,	do.
Luff, Edward F.	Wilmington,	D.
Lewis, Thomas L.	do.	do.
Landus, Jn.	Brandywine,	do.
Lee, Paul S. H.	Princeton,	N. J.
Lemmon, G. P.	do.	do.
Leroy, L. S.	Washington,	N. C.
Lyons, Peter,	Hanover,	Va.
Lewis, Francis,	Powhatan co.	do.
Lomax, Thomas,	Port Royal,	do.
Lee, Arthur,	Norfolk,	do.
Lea, James,	Cheeks Cross Roads,	T.

M.

Merryman, Phillmond,	Baltimore,	Md.
Mann, Anthony, M. D.	do.	do.
Mattson, Caleb,	do.	do.
Manhorel, C. L.	do.	do.
Mitchell, Joseph,	do.	do.
Mitchell, Alexander,	do.	do.
M‘Cullock, Andrew,	do.	do.
Murdock, Addison,	Georgetown,	do.
M‘Laughlin, Charles,	do.	do.
Mecklin, Joseph,	Washington city,	C. T.
Merrik, Pliny,	Brookfield,	Ms.
Malbone, Rhod.	Newport,	R. I.
Moore, Hon. Thomas,	Spartanburg,	S. C.
Merriwether, Hon. D.	Augusta,	Ga.
Mar Dent, Thomas,	Augusta co.	do.
Meud, William M.	Augusta,	do.
Magnan, Claudius,	do.	do.
Minter, Morgan,	Saundersville,	do.
M‘Dougall, Robert, P. M.	do.	do.
M‘Kinde, Joseph P.	Savannah,	do.
Mackay, R.	do.	do.
Minis, R.	do.	do.
May, Ralph,	do.	do.
M‘Keen, Levi, P. M.	Poughkeepsie co.	N. Y.
Mynderse, W.	Cayuga-Bride,	do.
Marshall, Samuel,	New York,	do.
M‘Knight, John,	do.	do.
Martin, J.	do.	do.
Messchert, M. H.	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Mackenzie, William,	do.	do.
Mease, James, M. D.	do.	do.
Monges, John A, M. D.	do.	do.
M‘Call, Archibald,	do.	do.
M‘Cully, William,	do.	do.
Mallon, James,	do.	do.
M‘Ilhenney, James,	do.	do.
Maxwell, James,	do.	do.
Maxwell, H.	do.	do.
M‘Millan, William,	Canonsburgh,	do.
M‘Law, Allen,	Wilmington,	D.
M‘Laughlin, Peter,	Lewistown,	do.
M‘Callmont, James,	New-Castle,	do.
Maclean, John, M. D.	Princeton,	N. J.
Morgan, John,	do.	do.
Montgomery, Joseph,	do.	do.
Molleson, Joseph,	B. Brook,	do.

Mawhorten, Alexander, D. D.	Newark,	do.
Merceney, Wm. B.	Fayetteville,	N. C.
M'Rae, Duncan, P. M.	do.	do.
M'Ciewan, Adam,	Charlotte,	do.
Magimsney, Wm.	Washington,	do.
M'Crane, Samuel,	Richmond,	Va.
M'Rae, Alexander,	do.	do.
Murdaugh, J. W.	Williamsburgh,	do.
Murray, William,	Amelia co.	do.
Muse, James W.	do.	do.
Mosely, Wm.	Powhatan co.	do.
Mitchel, John,	Fredericksburgh,	do.
Mercer, Charles Tenton,	London co.	do.
Minor, Peter,	Louisa co.	do.
Marchall, Anthony,	Vincennes,	N. T.
M'Call, John,	do.	do.
Magruder, Allen B.	Lexington,	Ky.
Mannharoz, C. L.	Baltimore,	Md.

N.

Neale, Benedict,	Baltimore,	Md.
Norris, Nicholas,	do.	do.
Norris, William,	do.	do.
Nourse, Charles J.	Georgetown,	do.
Nazaret, —— M. D.	Savannah,	Ga.
Newell, Thomas M.	do.	do.
Nash, M.	New York,	N. Y.
Neville, Pusley,	Pittsburgh,	Pa.
Newman, Thomas,	Philadelphia,	do.
Newman, Daniel,	do.	do.
Noyan, Payen,	Wilmington,	D.
New, Joseph W.	Bowling-Green,	Va.
Nelson, Nathaniel, jun.	Williamsburgh,	do.
Nicholas, Philip Norborne,	Richmond,	do.
Nichols, William,	Newport,	R. I.

O.

O'Hara, William C.	Princeton,	N. J.
Osborne, J. 2 copies,	New York,	N. Y.
O'Rielly, Robert,	Baltimore,	Md.
Ott, John,	Georgetown,	do.
Osborne, Edwin Jay, L. L. D.	Fayetteville,	N. C.
Oldham, Edward,	Wilmington,	D.

P.

Priestley, Joseph, L.L.D.F.R.S.	Northumberland,	Pa.
Porée J. B.	Philadelphia,	do.
Pearson, Isaac L.	do.	do.
Proudfit, James, M. D.	do.	do.
Physick, Philip, M. D.	do.	do.
Pascalis, Felix, M. D.	do.	do.
Pickering, Elihu,	do.	do.
Phillips, Z.	do.	do.
Pintard, Mrs. Eliza,	New York,	N. Y.
Proal, Peter, 10 copies,	do.	do.
Paterson, M. B.	do.	do.
Parkman, R. B.	Cayuga Bridge,	do.
Prestman, William,	Baltimore,	Md.
Potter, Nathaniel, M. D.	do.	do.
Priestley, James,	do.	do.
Penniman, E. & W.	do.	do.
Purviance, James,	do.	do.
Perrigny, Geo.	do.	do.
Poole, Edward,	Annapolis,	do.
Peacock, Robert W.	Washington City,	C. T.
Paine, Hon. Nathaniel,	Brookfield,	Ms.
Paine, M. W. M. D.	do.	do.
Peace, Mrs. Rebecca,	Newport,	R. I.
Peckman, Thomas, jun.	do.	do.
Petit, de Villers,	Savannah,	Ga.
Posey, John, H.	Saundersville,	do.
Price, Rev. William,	Wilmington,	D.
Peter, James,	Georgetown,	do.
Percy, Thomas G.	Princeton,	N. J.
Paterson, William,	New-Brunswick,	do.
Peyton, John.	Gloucester House,	Va.
Price, William,	Richmond,	do.
Price, John T.	do.	do.
Page, John,	do.	do.
Pollardy, Joseph,	Fredericksburgh,	do.
Pratt John,	Camden co.	do.
Parrott, T. A. 2 copies,	Natchez,	N. T.
Postlethwait, J.	Lexington,	Ky.

Q.

Quym, John,	Annapolis,	Md.

R.

Rowland, Thomas,	Baltimore,	Md.
Ridgley, James,	do.	do.
Romain, Alexis,	do.	do.

Rutter, Thomas,	Baltimore.	Md.
Riddell, Robert,	Elkton,	do.
Robins, James B.	Snow-Hill,	do.
Rind, William,	Georgetown,	do.
Richardson, R.	Savannah,	Ga.
Roe, Alex. S.	do.	do.
Rutherford, John,	Saundersville,	do.
Rogers, William,	Newport,	R. I.
Robbins, Asher,	do.	do.
Richardson, Jacob, P. M. 2 cop.	do.	do.
Root, Hon. Erastus,	Delaware co.	N. Y.
Rudd, Hieron,	Poughkeepsie co.	do.
Remmey, John,	New York,	do.
Rutgers, Henry,	do.	do.
Rodgers, John,	do.	do.
Ronalds, John, 12 copies,	do.	do.
Rivardi, Mrs. Mary,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Rossetter, Rev. John,	do.	do.
Reynolds, James, M. D.	do.	do.
Roberts, Rev. George,	do.	do.
Roberjot, H. N.	do.	do.
Roberts, Georges,	do.	do.
Reid, Isaac,	Pittsburgh,	do.
Rodney, Hon. Cæsar A.	Wilmington,	D.
Riddle, John.	New-Castle,	do.
Read, G.	do.	do.
Read, G. jun.	do.	do.
Robinson, William H.	Princeton,	N. J.
Rhea, Jonathan,	Trenton,	do.
Rutherford, Robert W.	do.	do.
Ralph, John.	Washington City,	C. T.
Ramsay, John. W.	Charleston,	S. C.
Ridmond, James,	Washington,	N. C.
Robison, Robert,	Charlotte,	do.
Rooker, John,	do.	do.
Robinson, John H.	Staunton,	Va.
Roane, Spencer,	Hanover,	do.

S.

Smith, Rev. Samuel Stanhope, President of the College of New Jersey, 2 copies,	Princeton,	N. J.
Stockton, Edward,	do.	do.
Stryker, Christ. H.	do.	do.
Sartory, John B.	Trenton,	do.
Smith, Miles,	New Brunswick,	do.
Stevenson, —— M. D.	Baltimore,	Md.
Smith, James, M. D.	do.	do.

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

Snyder, John, M. D.	Baltimore,	Md.
Salmon, Geo.	do.	do.
Sewell, Robert,	do.	do.
Spurrier, B.	do.	do.
Stirling, William,	do.	do.
Selshew, Campbell,	do.	do.
Scott, John,	do.	do.
Smith, Hon. S.	do.	do.
Smith, John S.	do.	do.
Smith, Miss M. B.	do.	do.
Spence, James R.	Snow Hill,	do.
Spence, John S.	do.	do.
Spence, Pornell S.	do.	do.
Skinner, A.	Columbia,	do.
Smith, William,	Georgetown,	do.
Shepley, William, junr.	Annapolis,	do.
Stone, Robert C.	do.	do.
Simmons, William,	Washington City,	C. T.
Skinner, Hon. T. J.	Williamston,	Ms.
Simpkins, Rev. ——	Harwich,	do.
Shrine, Benjamin,	Saundersville,	Ga.
Smith, Israel,	Cayuga-Bridge,	N. Y.
Smith, Reuben,	do.	do.
Schieffelin, E. L.	New York,	do.
Slocomb, Geo.	do.	do.
Stevens, Edward, M. D. 2 copies	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Stuart, James, M. D.	do.	do.
Soullier, John M.	do.	do.
Simmons, James,	do.	do.
Simmons, John B.	do.	do.
Shaw, Thomas,	do.	do.
Shaw, William, M. D.	do.	do.
Shoemaker, Abraham, junr.	do.	do.
Shoemaker, Benjamin,	do.	do.
Staunton, Rev. Geo.	do.	do.
Sulger, Jacob,	do.	do.
Sicard, A.	do.	do.
Salter, Samuel,	do.	do.
Smith, Thos. Aaron,	do.	do.
Sergeant, John,	do.	do.
Scull, John,	Pittsburgh,	do.
Spear, John,	do.	do.
Sparr, Christian,	Cumberland co.	do.
Sherer, William,	New-Castle,	D.
Stanford, Hon. R.	Chapel-Hill,	N. C.
Stanby, James,	Newbern,	do.
Sims, John C.	Washington,	do.
Springs, John B.	Charlotte,	do.

Stelson, Benjamin,	Richmond,	Va.
Smith, Geo. Wm.	do.	do.
Stanard, Larken,	Fredericksburgh,	do.
Seans, Wm. G.	Bowling-Green,	do.
Samuel, Philip,	do.	do.
Stribling, Erasmus,	Staunton,	do.
Stuart, Archibald,	do.	do.
Smith, Peter,	Williamsburgh,	do.
Scott, Thomas B.	Lexington,	Ky.
Sandford, Thomas,	Cincinnati,	N. T.
Smith, Hon. John,	Ohio,	do.
Simpson, Patrick,	Vinncennes,	do.
Sevier, Valentine,	Greenville,	T.

T.

Teackle, Litt. D, P. M. 8 copies,	Princess Anne co.	Md.
Thomas, E. A, 20 copies,	Charleston,	S. C.
Todd, James E.	Columbia co.	Ga.
Tenille, Francis,	Saundersville,	do.
Trott, G. Wm.	Savannah,	do.
Talineau, F.	Coosawhatchie,	do.
Taylor, Hon. John,	Port Royal,	Va.
Taylor, Bennett,	Richmond,	do.
Toushee, Wm.	do.	do.
Tompkins, Richard,	Bowling-Green,	do.
Tompkins, Robert, P. M.	do.	do.
Tennent, John,	Fredericksburgh,	do.
Turner, Reuben,	Caroline co.	do.
Thornton, John A.	Culpeper co.	do.
Tremper, L. P. M.	Staunton,	do.
Turner, F. L.	Lexington,	Ky.
Telfair, Josiah,	Savannah,	Ga.
Tarascon, L. A.	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Thomas, Jos. M.	do.	do.
Towers, John,	do.	do.
Turpin, Pierre,	do.	do.
Toland, Henry, jun.	do.	do.
Thouron, Peter,	do.	do.
Trevor, John B.	Canonsburgh,	do.
Tinniswood, Samuel,	Philadelphia,	do.

V.

Vallon, Louis C.	Philadelphia.	Pa.
Vanuxem, James,	do.	do.
Volozan, D.	do.	do.
Vernon, Wm. H.	Newport,	R. I.
Vaughan, John, M. D.	Wilmington,	D.

Vining, Mrs. Mary,	Wilmington,	D.
Villard, A. J.	Washington city,	C. T.
Van Ness, John P.	do.	do.
Vankleeck, James L. M. D.	Poughkeepsie co.	N. Y.
Vatable, Mr.	Princeton,	N. J.
Vigo, François,	Vincennes,	N. T.
Vander Burgh, Henry,	do.	do.

W.

Woodberry, John,	Annapolis,	Md.
Wright, Robert,	Chestertown,	do.
White, Joseph,	Baltimore,	do.
Weire, Charles,	do.	do.
Wilkins, H. M. D.	do.	do.
Way, Andrew, jun.	Washington city,	C. T.
Wilson, James, P. M.	Worcester,	Ms.
White, William C.	do.	do.
Winn, Hon. Richard,	Winnsborough,	S. C.
Ware, Wm. F. P. M. 2 copies.	Columbia c. h.	Ga.
Walton, George,	Augusta,	do.
Walker, James Saunders,	do.	do.
Walker, James,	Saundersville,	do.
Williams, Thomas F.	Savannah,	do.
Williams, Richard,	do.	do.
Wilson, William,	do.	do.
Whitlock, Mrs. Eliza,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Wylie, Samuel B.	do.	do.
Wistar, C. jun. M. D.	do.	do.
Wachsmuth, John G.	do.	do.
Waughan, John,	do.	do.
Wister, Charles,	do.	do.
Wayne, C. P.	do.	do.
Watson, Thomas,	do.	do.
Woglom, John, 2 copies,	do.	do.
Walsh, Mich. B.	do.	do.
Westbay, Henry, P. M.	Canonsburgh,	do.
Wallace, John,	do.	do.
Wills, Butler,	do.	do.
Wright, David,	Harrisburgh,	do.
Wilkins, John, jun.	Pittsburgh,	do.
Work, John,	Cumberland co.	do.
Webster, John,	Wilmington,	D.
Wilson, James, 2 copies,	do.	do.
Wilson, William,	Princeton,	N. J.
Wesly, Richard,	do.	do.
Woolley, Abr. N.	Springfield,	do.
Williams, John,	Newark,	do.

Weddigen, John C.	Washington,	N. C.
Wallis, James,	Charlotte,	do.
Williams, Wm. C.	Chesterfield,	Va.
Wise, N.	Alexandria,	do.
Williamson, Thomas,	Richmond,	do.
Watkins, Henry Wm.	Powhatan co.	do.
Woolfolk, John G.	Bowling-Green,	do.
Waugh, Rev. Abner, 2 copies.	do.	do.
Waller, Absalom,	do.	do.
Warwick, Andrew,	Williamsburgh,	do.
White, William,	Louisa co.	do.
Wendel, David,	Cheeks Cross Roads,	T.
Wyly, Robert,	Greenville,	do.
Wyant, Christopher,	Vincennes,	N. T.

X.

Xaupi, ——,	Washington City,	C. T.

Y.

Yarrow, Thomas,	Christianna,	D.
Young, Thomas, jun.	Savannah,	Ga.

Z.

Zesline, Joseph,	Philadelphia,	Pa.
Zwiney, Hugh,	do.	do.

ERRATA TO THE SECOND VOLUME.

PAGE.	LINE.	
6	3	for à *read* â.
9	9	o-é *read* o-ê.
29	23	compléte *read* complète.
32	8	a *read* as.
34	27	There are however *read* There are.
	29	moins, plus *read* plus, le plus.
	36	two comparatives *read* two comparatives and two superlatives.
35	21	modes *read* mode.
44	7	that *read* those.
49	10	la tiennes *read* la tienne.
55	10	yourelf *read* yourself.
66	24	would *read* should.
79	19	Present Anterior Periodical and Present Posterior *read* Present Anterior and Present Anterior Periodical.
106	22	cœclum *read* cœlum.
132	5	habillê ? *read* habillé ?
133	21	se démetre *read* se démettre.
158	11	ill vend *read* il vend.
192	5	That I may *read* That I might.
231	5	mâitre *read* maître.
251	14	déssepoir *read* désespoir.
279	9	fachée *read* fâchée.
310	22	amée *read* année
325	37	roignaumes *read* royaumes.
331	4	should the Verb *read* should the Verbs.
375	17	mortifé *read* mortifié.
383	26	prescire *read* prescrire.
389	10	Il à *read* Il a
390	27	vîntez *read* vîntes.
	34	yieux *read* yeux.
391	5	temoins *read* témoins.
	25	trés *read* très.
393	19	incredules *read* incrédules.
394	25	dejeûnant *read* déjeûnant.
395	2	verité *read* vérité.
405	11	glorie *read* gloire.
411	8	Grand Prétre *read* Grand Prêtre.
416	1	gaité *read* gaieté.

1124
F7L83
1804
V.2